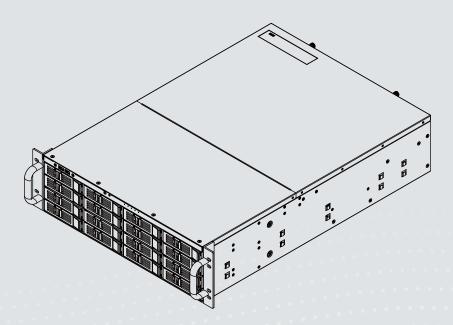


# NR9682 NR9782 Network Video Recorder User's Manual

Rack-mount Enclosure • 64-/128-channel Recording • 96TB Max. Capacity RAID storage • Full Integration with VIVOTEK Cameras



Rev. 1.0 for VAST rev. 1.13

## Table of Contents

Revision History	9
Chapter One Hardware Installation and Initial Configuration	11
Introduction	11
Special Features	11
Safety	
Installation Instructions	
Power Supply	
Environmental Specifications	
Grounding Requirements	
Physical Description	
Drive Bay Numbering Sequence	
Front View	
Rear View	
Display	
Chassis Dimensions	
Rack-mounting	21
Installing Hard Disk Drives	
Connecting Interfaces	
Initial Configuration	
RAID Basics	
Technical Specifications	63
VAST Server and Client Components	
Usage Scenario	
Technical Specifications	
VAST Server Functionality	
VAST LiveClient Functionality	
VAST Playback Functionality	
Minimum System Requirements	
VAST Software License	
Reminders for VAST Software License	73
VAST Installation	75
Installing the VAST Software (This is in case you need to re-install the software)	75
VAST Server	
Activating the VAST Server	
How to Configure the Server	
How to Stop/Reboot the Server	
VAST LiveClient Configuration	
Activating the VAST LiveClient and Logging in to a VAST Server	
VAST LiveClient User Interface	
Menu Bar	
Status Panel	
Help Panel	

Quick Access Bar	
Live Video Monitoring Window	
Hierarchical Management Tree	
Camera Control Panel	
Pan/Tilt/Zoom (PTZ) Control Panel	
Two Way Audio Control Panel	
Language Selection	
Alarm Window	
Alarm Filter	91
Alarm State	
Instant Playback	
Instant Replay	94
Audio Control	
How to Manage Devices	
Insert Cameras	
Seamless Recording	100
Enable SVC	
Streaming URL	
Insert NVR (Network Video Recorder)	
Insert a Video Server	110
Update Devices	
Delete Devices from the VAST Server	
Batch Insert Devices	
Camera Configuration	
View Live Videos	
Dual / Multiple Streams	
Fisheye Display Modes	
Refresh	
Streaming Server	
Output Camera List	
Get Public IP	
Camera Settings	
Remove Live Video from the Video Monitoring Window	
How to Change the VAST LiveClient Layout	
Changing the Layout of the Live Video Monitoring Window	
Switch Video Channels	
Configure Layout Mode	
Configure Layout Mode	
Rotating Video Pages	
Edit Layout	
Scheduled Layout Rotation	
Maximize/Minimize the Live Video Monitoring Window View Live Video on Dual Monitors	
Simultaneously Viewing up to 128 Channels	
Using different layouts on each monitor View Live Video with Multiple Monitors	
How to Manage Stations	
1 IUW IU IVIAIIAYE SIAIIUIIS	

Relay Settings	. 145
Insert Sub-stations	. 146
Delete Sub-stations	. 149
Update Stations	. 150
How to Manage User Accounts	. 151
The Default User Roles and Permissions of User Accounts	. 151
Manage a User Account	. 153
Add a New User Account - Basic Account	. 153
Add a New User Account - Windows AD Account	. 154
Permission of the User Account	
Delete the User Account	
How to Set up Association Management	
Association Management	
How to Set up Alarm Management	
Alarm Management	
How to Manage the Virtual Matrix	
The architecture of VAST Matrix	
Installing VAST Matrix Program	
Launching VAST Matrix	
Configuration	
View Settings	
About	
Exit	
VAST Matrix Management	
Matrix Management Settings	
Manage VAST Matrix through VAST LiveClient	
Matrix View Settings	
Search VIVOCam Switches	
How to Configure the Station General Settings	
Server Settings	
Log Settings	
How to Configure Station Network Settings	
Port Settings	
UPnP Settings	
Proxy Settings	
Web Access Settings	
How to Edit Recording Groups	
Recording Storage Settings	. 186
Default Storage Group Settings	. 187
Add New Recording Group(s)	. 189
Multiple Stream Recording	. 190
How to Edit Recording Schedules	. 192
Edit Schedule List	. 193
Add Schedules	. 193
Rename Schedules	. 193
Delete Schedules	. 193
Load/Save Schedule Templates	
Edit Camera List	. 195

Edit Time Frame List	. 196
Add New Time Frames	. 197
Recording Settings	. 198
The Concept of Repeat Frequency	. 200
Repeat Frequency: Daily Setting	. 201
Repeat Frequency: Weekly Setting (Day-based)	. 204
Repeat Frequency: Monthly Setting (Day-based)	. 207
Repeat Frequency: Yearly Setting (Day-based)	. 209
How to Manually Begin /Stop Recording	. 211
How to Edit Scheduled Backup Settings	. 212
Select Backup Source	. 212
Setup Backup Schedule	. 213
Select Backup Target	. 213
How to Configure Station Server Settings	. 214
DDNS Settings	. 214
Network Storage Server Settings	. 215
SMTP Settings	. 216
How to Use the Talk Panel	. 217
Add a Camera to the Talk Panel	. 217
Remove a Camera from the Talk Panel	. 219
How to Configure E-map Settings	. 220
Upload an E-map	. 220
User Interface of E-map Settings Page (View Mode)	. 221
Quick Access Bar	. 222
Status Panel	. 222
User Interface of E-map Settings Page (Edit Mode)	. 223
Device Management	. 224
Live View Dialog Settings	. 225
Open Live View Dialog	. 225
Send to Single View	. 225
E-map Link	. 226
How to Configure Client Settings	. 230
Snapshot Settings	. 230
Take a Snapshot	. 231
Recording Settings	. 232
Type 1: Record to EXE	. 232
Type 2: Record to 3GP	. 232
Type 3: Record to AVI	. 233
Built-in Media PlayerEXE	. 236
View Settings	. 238
Display Location	. 238
Date and Time Format	. 239
Video Display Mode	. 239
Font Settings	. 240
General Settings	. 241
System Settings	. 241
Alarm Settings	. 242
Rotation Settings	. 243

Display Settings	
Joystick Settings	
Enable Joystick	
Joystick Settings - Using VIVOTEK's AJ-001 & AJ-002	
Proxy Settings	
How to Use PiP (Picture-in-Picture)	
Enable PiP	
Global View	257
ROI (Region of Interest)	
Digital Zoom In	
Snapshot & Print Zoomed In Image	
PiP Settings	
Multi-touch Mode	
How to Configure Video Enhancement	
Basic Image Adjustment	
Defog	
Apply a Preset Defog Profile	
Create a New Defog Profile	
How to Search for a Device on the Hierarchical Management Tree	
How to Print a Video Image	
How to Lock LiveClient for Security Concerns	
How to Log out from the VAST Server	
How to Exit VAST LiveClient	
How to Configure a Logical Tree	
VAST Playback Configuration	
Activating VAST Playback and Logging in to a Server	
VAST Playback User Interface	
Menu Bar	
Status Panel	
Quick Access Bar	
Recorded Video Playback Window	
Language Selection	
Query Panel Browsing Page	
Query PanelTime Search Page	
Query PanelEvent Search Page	
Query PanelBookmark Search Page	
Query PanelAlarm Search Page	
Query PanelLog Viewer Page	
Video Clips List Window	
Playback Control Panel	
Rewind	
How to Playback Recorded Video	
Select a Recorded Video Clip	
Remove Recorded Video Clips from Video Cells	
Timeline Slider Bar and Histogram	
Zoom in / out of the Histogram	
Synchronous Playback	
Audio Control	

How to Change the Playback Layout	
Changing the Layout of the Recorded Video Playback Window	
Switch Video Channels	
Configure Layout Mode	
Maximize/Minimize the Recorded Video Playback Window	
View Recorded Video with Multiple Monitors	
How to Backup Recorded Video	
How to Search for a Video Clip in a Specific Period of time	
How to Add a Bookmark	
How to Search for Events	
Select Event Category	
Event Category- All Events	
Event Category- All Motion Events	
Event Category- All IVA events	
Event Category- All DI Events	
Event Category- Named DI Events	
Start Event Search Backup the Event Videos	
How to Search for a Bookmark	
How to Search Logs	
Select Log Category/Log Type/Log Level	
Search All Local Logs	
Search Login History	
Search Login Activities	
How to Configure Client Settings	
Snapshot Settings	
Export Settings	
View Settings	
Proxy Settings	
General Settings	
System Settings	
Display Settings	
How to Configure Video Enhancement	
How to Search for a Device on the Hierarchical Management Tree	
How to Print a Video Image	
How to Lock VAST Playback for Security Concerns How to Log out from the VAST Server	
How to Exit VAST Playback	
nport and Export Utility	
Export Utility	
Import Utility	
AST Service Control Tool	
ppendix A Failover Server Configuration	
Failover Configuration Process	
ppendix B Panoramic PTZ (P-PTZ) Configuration	
Enable Panoramic PTZ on VAST	

Panoramic PTZ - Event Trigger	342
Enable or Disable the Panoramic PTZ Functions	344
Appendix C ONVIF Support	345
Appendix D VCA Report	347
Appendix E Support for Digital I/O Modbus TCP Modules	358
Appendix F Database Merge Function	363
Appendix G Other Parameters	369

## **Revision History**

Rev. 1.0: Initial release. The description for the software functionality is based on VAST rev. 1.13.1.10.

#### **WARNING**:

- 1. Do not format or initialize the Disk 0: drive on your NVR. The Disk 0: drive contains the operating system. Doing so will disable the system.
- 2. No storage system is completely fail-safe. Damage to data might occur due to file system corruption, operating system malfunction, virus infection, HDD component failures, and so on. Therefore, it is highly recommended to regularly back up your data, and VIVOTEK disclaims responsibilities of data loss or recovery.
- 3. Always power off the system using the power down button on system desktop. Do not disconnect the power cord while the system is still operating. Doing so will result in data inconsistencies. The normal power-off procedure allows cached data to be written to disks.

## **Technology License Notice**



#### Notices from HEVC Advance:

THIS PRODUCT IS SOLD WITH A LIMITED LICENSE AND IS AUTHORIZED TO BE USED ONLY IN CONNECTION WITH HEVC CONTENT THAT MEETS EACH OF THE THREE FOLLOWING QUALIFICATIONS: (1) HEVC CONTENT ONLY FOR PERSONAL USE; (2) HEVC CONTENT THAT IS NOT OFFERED FOR SALE; AND (3) HEVC CONTENT THAT IS CREATED BY THE OWNER OF THE PRODUCT. THIS PRODUCT MAY NOT BE USED IN CONNECTION WITH HEVC ENCODED CONTENT CREATED BY A THIRD PARTY, WHICH THE USER HAS ORDERED OR PURCHASED FROM A THIRD PARTY, UNLESS THE USER IS SEPARATELY GRANTED RIGHTS TO USE THE PRODUCT WITH SUCH CONTENT BY A LICENSED SELLER OF THE CONTENT. YOUR USE OF THIS PRODUCT IN CONNECTION WITH HEVC ENCODED CONTENT IS DEEMED ACCEPTANCE OF THE LIMITED AUTHORITY TO USE AS NOTED ABOVE.

#### セキュリティ基準(新規則第34条の10)

「本製品は 電気通信事業者(移動通信会社、固定通信会社、インターネットプロバイダ等) の通信回線(公衆無線LANを含む) に直接接続することができません。本製品をインターネットに接続する場合は、必ずルータ等 を経由し接続してください。」

## **Read Before Use**

The use of surveillance devices may be prohibited by law in your country. The Network Camera is not only a high-performance web-ready camera but can also be part of a flexible surveillance system. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that the operation of such devices is legal before installing this unit for its intended use.

It is important to first verify that all contents received are complete according to the Package Contents listed below. Take note of the warnings in the Quick Installation Guide before the Network Camera is installed; then carefully read and follow the instructions in the Installation chapter to avoid damage due to faulty assembly and installation. This also ensures the product is used properly as intended.

The Network Camera is a network device and its use should be straightforward for those who have basic networking knowledge. It is designed for various applications including video sharing, general security/surveillance, etc. The Configuration chapter suggests ways to best utilize the Network Camera and ensure proper operations. For creative and professional developers, the URL Commands of the Network Camera section serves as a helpful reference to customizing existing homepages or integrating with the current web server.

## NOTE:

The operating system and management software are installed on a flash memory mounted on the main board. Except for the plug-ins for onscreen display, there is no need to install software.

## **Package Contents**

- NR9682 or NR9782
- Power cords
- Software CD
- Warranty Card
- Mouse
- Quick Installation Guide
- Screws and slide rails

## Symbols and Statements in this Document



**INFORMATION:** provides important messages or advices that might help prevent inconvenient or problem situations.

**NOTE**: Notices provide guidance or advices that are related to the functional integrity of the machine.

**Tips**: Tips are useful information that helps enhance or facilitae an installation, function, or process.

**WARNING!** or **IMPORTANT**: These statements indicate situations that can be dangerous or hazardous to the machine or you.

**Electrical Hazard**: This statement appears when high voltage electrical hazards might occur to an operator.

## Chapter One Hardware Installation and Initial Configuration

## Introduction

NR9682/NR9782 is the latest 64-/128-channel H.265, RAID-protected NVR from VIVOTEK, bringing stable and efficient system operation under a wide range of recording/network management/system settings. The unit supports all VIVOTEK camera models, including the latest 5-Megapixel and fisheye cameras. The support for RAID 1/5/6/10 provides data security in the event of disk drive failure.

The unit is equipped with two gigabit Ethernet RJ45 ports which provide network failover functionality to avoid the risk of recording loss. When one network line is disconnected, the system will shift to the other network automatically, providing continuous access for video data. Up to 16 HDDs can be installed in the NR9782 for a total storage capacity of up to 96TB (6TB max. each). The hot-swappable HDD trays are available in the front of the unit, with hot-swap functionality for easy replacement.

A VAST CMS server runs on the machine that manages surveillance recording and playback. The compatibility with the iViewer application allows for remote access to the NR9682/NR9782 on handheld devices. By integrating all of the components together using VIVOTEK's NR9682/NR9782, network cameras, VAST, and iViewer software, users can realize a fully-featured and robust next-generation surveillance system. This ingenious NVR also features the remote management capability with a full range of server/client structures and thus is capable for robust and diverse applications.

## **Special Features**

- Runs on embedded Windows
- 3U Rack Mount Design
- RAID 0, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, 60 in virtual drive storage configurations
- 16 x HDD Tray, for a max. capacity of 96TB
- 2 x Gigabit RJ45 Ethernet ports
- 8 (QG2,WG2: 6 x USB 3.0, 2 x USB 2.0; L: 4 x USB3.0, 4 x USB2.0)
- Size: (W x H x D) 435 x 132 x 540 mm (17.13" x 5.2" x 21.26")
- 128-CH Live View & 16-CH Synchronous Playback
- H.265/H.264/ MPEG-4
- PTZ Support
- Snapshot / Export Media
- PiP Video Control
- Bookmark Design
- Fast Configuration Backup / Restore
- Pre-installed VIVOTEK VAST Central Management Software\*
- Full Integration with VIVOTEK Network Cameras
- VIVOTEK iViewer Support (iOS/Android)

## Safety

- 1. Read these safety instructions carefully.
- 2. Keep this User Manual for later reference.
- 3. Disconnect this equipment from any AC outlet before cleaning. Use a damp cloth. Do not use liquid or spray detergents for cleaning.
- 4. For plug-in equipment, the power outlet socket must be located near the equip-ment and must be easily accessible.
- 5. Keep this equipment away from humidity.
- 6. Put this equipment on a reliable surface during installation. Dropping it or letting it fall may cause damage.
- 7. For rack-mount equipment, please firmly install the device with pallets or sliding rails in the rack.
- 8. Do not leave this equipment in an environment unconditioned where the storage temperature under 0° C (32° F) or above 40° C (104° F), it may damage the equipment.
- 9. The openings on the enclosure are for air convection. Protect the equipment from overheating. DO NOT COVER THE OPENINGS.
- 10. Make sure the voltage of the power source is correct before connecting the equipment to the power outlet.
- 11. Position the power cord so that people cannot step on it. Do not place anything over the power cord.
- 12. All cautions and warnings on the equipment should be noted.
- 13. If the equipment is not used for a long time, disconnect it from the power source to avoid damage by transient overvoltage.
- 14. Never pour any liquid into an opening. This may cause fire or electrical shock.
- 15. Never open the equipment. For safety reasons, the equipment should be opened only by qualified service personnel.
- 16. If one of the following situations arises, get the equipment checked by service personnel:
  - The power cord or plug is damaged.
  - Liquid has penetrated into the equipment.
  - The equipment has been exposed to moisture.
  - The equipment does not work well, or you cannot get it to work according to the user's manual.
  - The equipment has been dropped and damaged.
  - The equipment has obvious signs of breakage.
- 17. **CAUTION**: The computer is provided with a battery-powered real-time clock circuit. There is a danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacture. Discard used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- 18. This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interferencethat may cause undesired operation.

- 19. **CAUTION**: Always completely disconnect the power cord from your chassis whenever you work with the hardware. Do not make connections while the power is on. Sensitive electronic components can be damaged by sudden power surges.
- 20. **CAUTION**: Always ground yourself to remove any static charge before touching the motherboard, backplane, or add-on cards. Modern electronic devices are very sensitive to static electric charges. As a safety precaution, use a grounding wrist strap at all times. Place all electronic components on a static-dissipative surface or in a static-shielded bag when they are not in the chassis.
- 21. **CAUTION**: Any unverified component could cause unexpected damage. To ensure the correct installation, please always use the components (e.g., screws) provided with the accessory box.

## **Installation Instructions**



#### Warning:

Read the installation instructions before connecting the system to the power source.



#### Warning:

This product relies on the building's installation for short-circuit (overcurrent) protection. Ensure that the protective device is rated not greater than: 250V, 20 A.



#### Warning:

The system must be disconnected from all sources of power and the power cord.removed from the power supply module(s) before accessing the chassis interior to install or remove system components.



#### Warning:

Only trained and qualifiedpersonnel should be allowed to install, replace, or service this equipment.



#### Warning:

This unit is intended for installation in restricted access areas. A restricted access area can be accessed only through the use of a special tool, lock and key, or other means of security. (This warning does not apply to workstations).



#### Warning:

There is the danger of explosion if the battery is replaced incorrectly. Replace the battery only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.



#### Warning:

This unit might have more than one power supply connection. All connections must be removed to de-energize the unit.



#### Warning:

Hazardous voltage or energy is present on the backplane when the system is operating. Use caution when servicing.



## Warning:

Installation of the equipment must comply with local and national electrical codes.



#### Warning:

Ultimate disposal of this product should be handled according to all national laws and regulations.



#### Warning:

The fans might still be turning when you remove the fan assembly from the chassis. Keep fingers, screwdrivers, and other objects away from the openings in the fan assembly's housing.



#### Warning:

When installing the product, use the provided or designated connection cables, power cables and AC adaptors. Using any other cables and adaptors could cause a malfunction or a fire.Electrical Appliance and Material Safety Law prohibits the use of UL or CSA -certified cables (that have UL/CSA shown on the code) for any other electrical devices than products designated by the manufacturer only.

## **Power Supply**

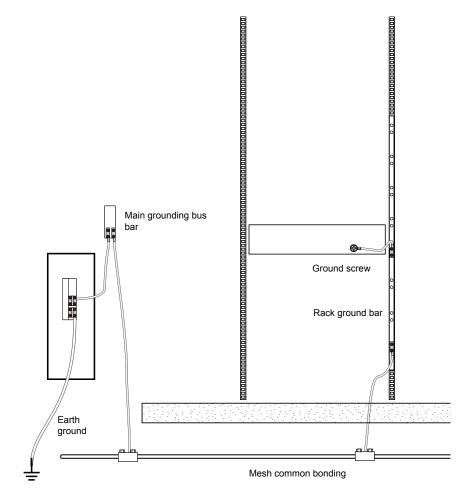
Watt	550W max. (80+ Gold, PFC) (1+1 Redundant 2U)
Input rating	100 ~ 240 Vac ~6.9A-2.8A, 50-60Hz
Output voltage	+5 VSB @ 2.5 A, +12 V @ 45A
Minimum load	+12V @ 0.5 A
Safety	UL/TUV/CCC

#### **Environmental Specifications**

Environment	Operating	Non-operating
Temperature	5 ~ 35°C (32 ~ 104°F)	40 ~ 70°C (-40 ~ 158°F)
Humidity	10 ~ 95% @ 40°C, non-condensing	10 ~ 95% @ 60°C, non-condensing
Vibration	0.5 G rms	2 G
Shock	10 G with 11 ms duration, half sine wave	
Safety	CE compliant	

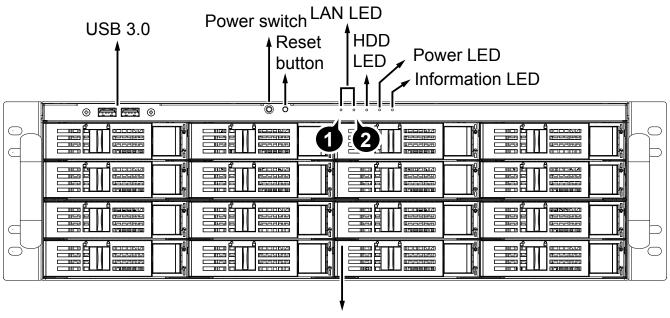
## **Grounding Requirements**

- 1. The enclosure is designed to be rack-mounted, in an equipment room which has limited human access.
- 2. In addition to the grounding via the power cords, make sure your equipment rack is properly grounded. If the equipment rack is not properly grounded, connect the ground wire to a gorunding bus bar, which is then connected to an earth ground.
- 3. Use a ground wire of a copper cross section at least 16AWG.



## **Physical Description**

## Front View



Hot-swappable 2.5"/3.5" HDD trays

## **Drive Bay Numbering Sequence**

	• = • •	© 0	0 0 0 0	
0				



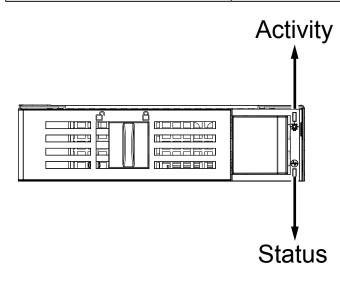
## Warning:

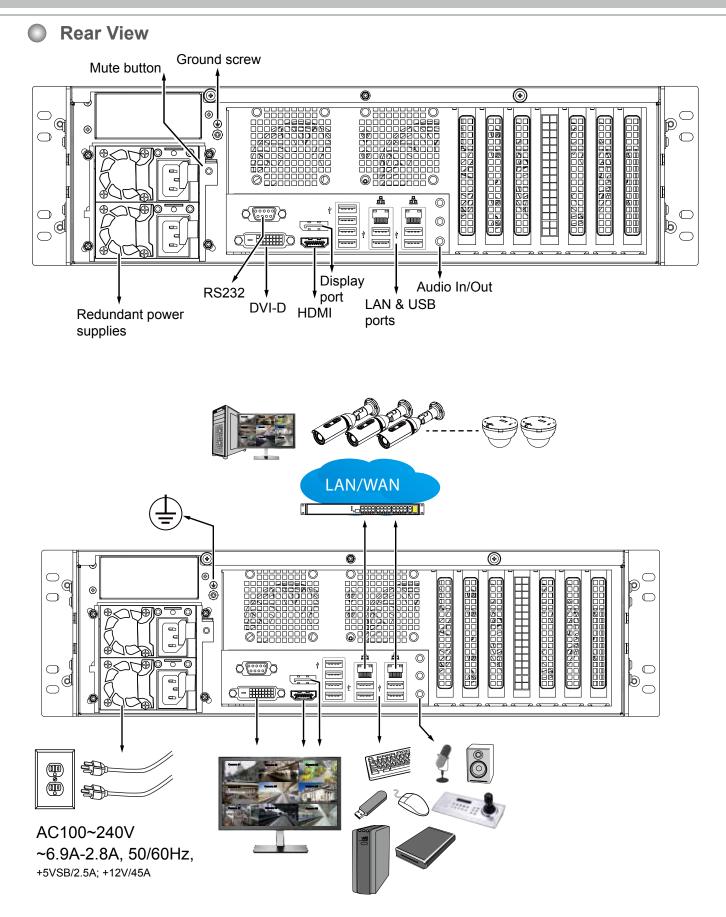
Knowing the correction positions of hard drives is very important. For example, if a hard drive fails in a RAID5 Virtual Drive, you can initialize a rebuild by locating and replacing the failed drive. If you replace the wrong drive, it means that you have 1 failed drive and another mistakenly failed drive. Having 2 failed drives in a RAID5 configuration renders all data inaccessible. All data in the RAID5 Virtual Drive will be lost.

Control Panel buttons and LEDs			
	Power switch	Press this switch to turn the system power on or off. Please use system shutdown or press this switch for few seconds to turn off the system ATX power.	
		The main power switch is used to apply or remove power from the power supplies to the server. Turning off system power using this button removes the main power but keeps standby power supplied to the system. You must unplug the system before servicing components inside the chassis.	
	Reset button	Press this button to reboot the system.	
	Power LED	Blue ON: Normal	Red N/A
01 02 66 66	LAN status LED	ON: Normal	N/A
		Blinking: transmitting data.	N/A
0	HDD LED*	Blinking: data access.	N/A
		OFF: idle	N/A
Î	Information: PEF occurred by motherboard's BMC	N/A	ON: System abnormal.

\* The HDD LED here only displays the status for those attached to the motherboard.

Front Hot-swappable Drive Tray LEDs		
	Contractivity LED: Green	Status LED: Amber
Drive not present	OFF	OFF
Drive present, no activity	ON	OFF
Drive present, activity	4Hz blinking	OFF
Locate (Identify)	OFF	4Hz blinking
Fail	OFF	ON
Rebuild	OFFF	1Hz blinking





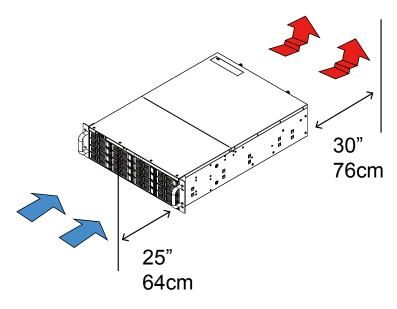
## **Display**

Interface	Resolution
HDMI	Supports max resolution HDMI 1.2 1920 x 1200 @ 60 Hz (Colay HDMI 2.0,4096 x 2160 @ 60 Hz, optional)
DVI-D	Supports max. resolution 1920 x 1200 @ 60 Hz
Display port	Supports max resolution 4096 x 2304 @ 60 Hz
eDP	Internal pin header, supports max. resolution 3840 x 2160 @ 60 Hz (on board)
VGA	Max resolution 1920 x 1200 @ 60 Hz (on board) (optional)
Triple display	eDP/ VGA + DP++ + HDMI, eDP/ VGA + HDMI + DVI-D, DP++ + eDP/ VGA + DVI-D, DVI-D + DP++ + HDMI
Dual display	DP++ + HDMI, DP++ + DVI-D, DP++ + eDP/ VGA, HDMI + DVI-D, HDMI + eDP/ VGA, eDP, VGA + DVI-D

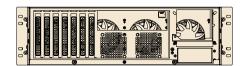
## 

It is important to leave a clearance of 76cm to the rear side of the chassis. The clearance is required to ensure an adequate airflow through the chassis to ventilate heat. A 64cm clearance is also required on the front of the chassis.

To ensure normal operation, maintain ambient airflow. Do not block the airflow around chassis such as placing the system in a closed cabinet.



## **Chassis Dimensions**



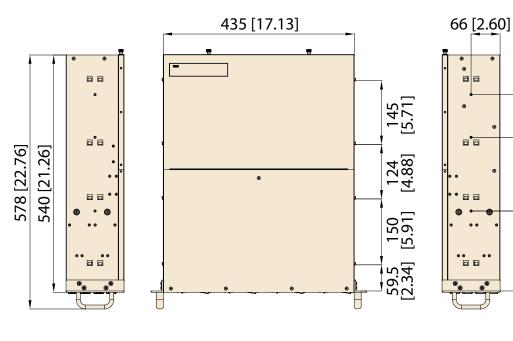
Unit: mm [inch]

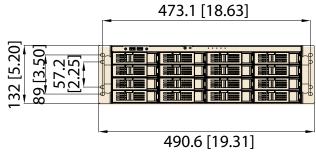
97.3 [3.83]

167.7 [6.60]

182 [7.17]

88





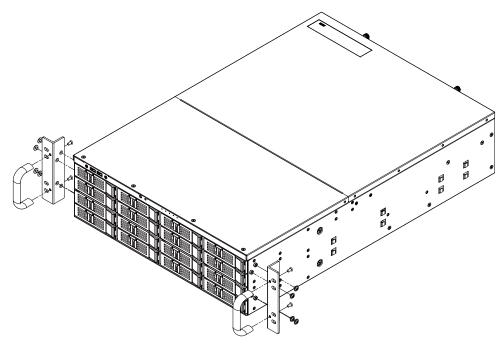
## **Rack-mounting**

## 

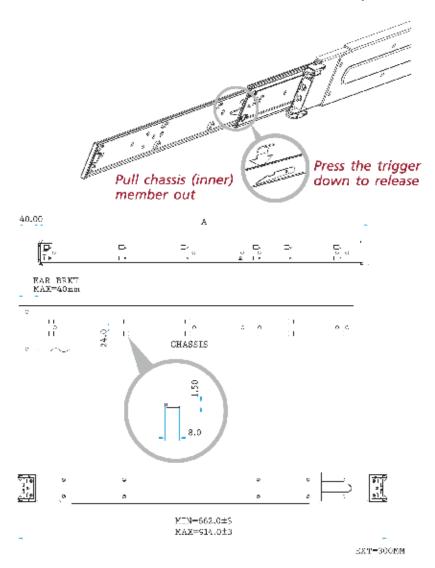
If you have either a round-holed or square-holed rack, install cage nuts or clip nuts to the desired positions on the rack posts.

The instructions below are based on the installation to a 4-post equipment rack.

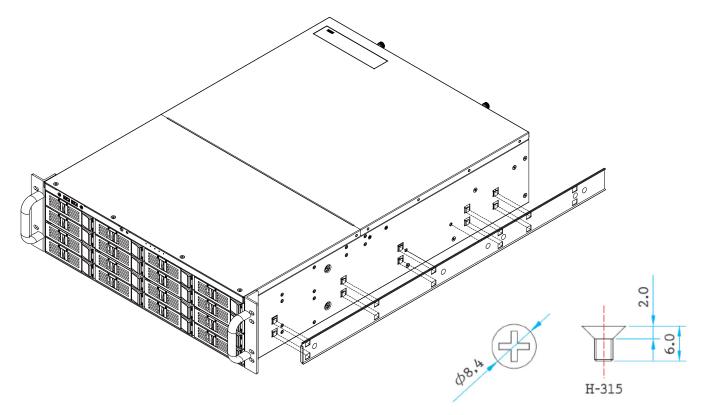
1. There is a pair of ears and handles in the accessory box. If you need to install them, please refer to the drawing below to fasten them to the front-right and front-left mounting ears using the provided screws.



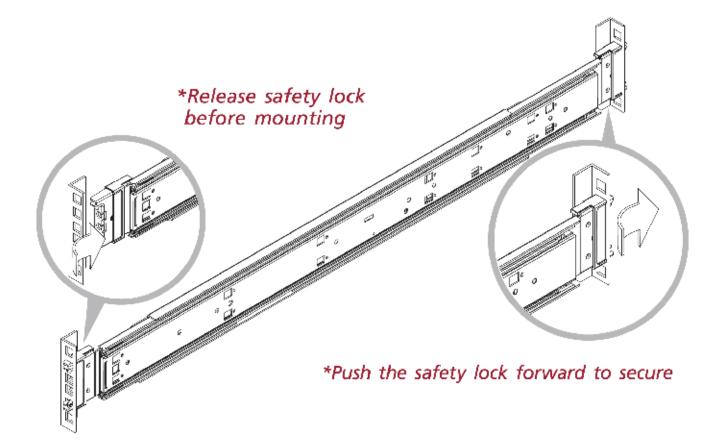
#### 2. Remove the inner rail from the slide rail assembly.



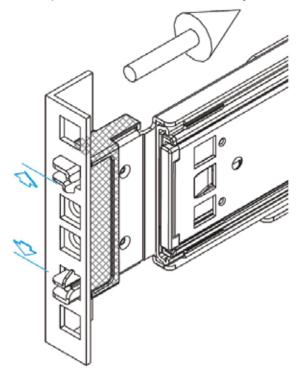
3. Secure the inner rails to the sides of the chassis using the included screws.



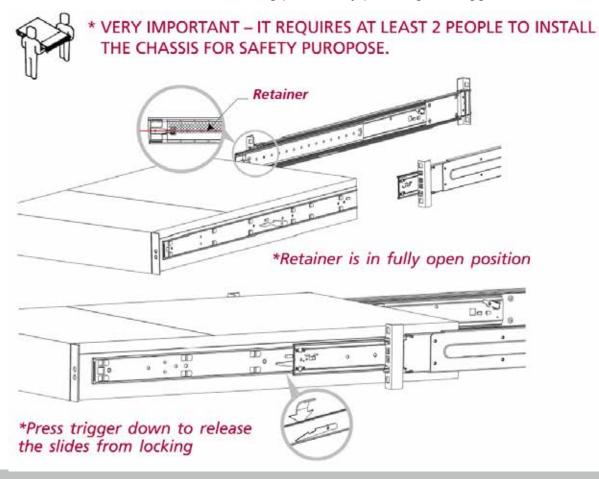
4. Insert the stag into the upper and lower square holes on the EIA rail from the back of the rail. Push the safety lock forward to secure the bracket.

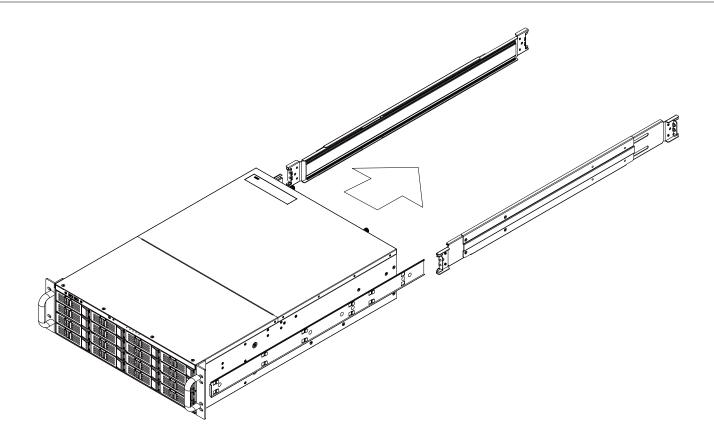


It is important to check if the safety lock is in the unlocked position before mounting the brackets.



5. Lift and insert the chassis into the rack cabinet as shown below. It is important to check if the ball bearing retainer is in the fully open position before installing the chassis or it might cause catastrophic damage to the chassis if the ball bearing retainer is not in the fully open position while mounting the chassis. While you are pushing the chassis into the cabinet, you will need to release the slide from the locking position by pressing the trigger down.

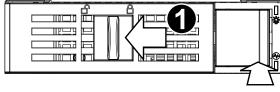




## **Installing Hard Disk Drives**

## 

- Refer to VIVOTEK's website for the hard disk compatibility information.
- Avoid touching the hard drive's circuit board or connector pins. Doing so can damage the hard drive by electro-static discharge.
- 1. Remove drive trays from the chassis. Push the bezel lock to the left, and then press the release tab. The tray lever will pop out.

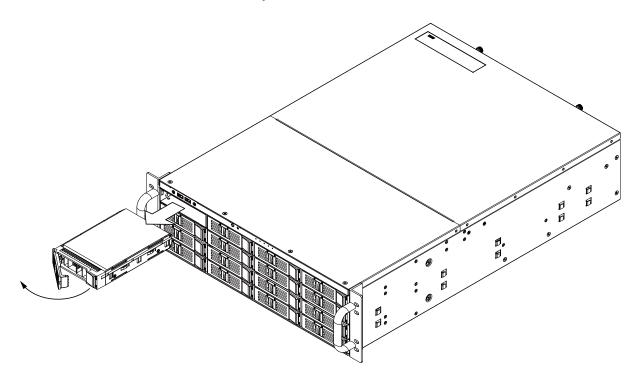




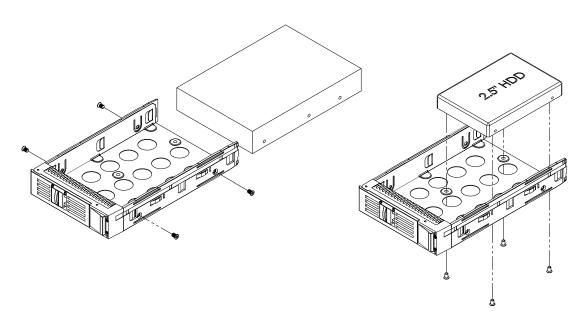
It is recommended to wear an anti-static wrist strap when handling hard drives.



2. Pull the lever to remove drive trays.



3. Install hard drives by driving screws from the sides. When done, gently install the drive trays into the chassis.

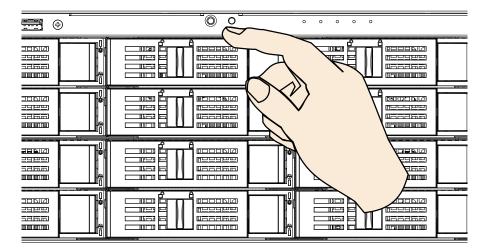


## **Connecting Interfaces**

Refer to page 18 for the interface connections.

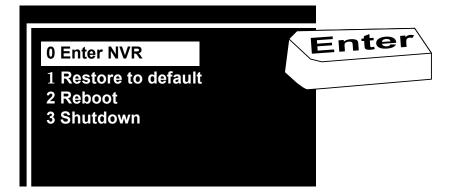
- 1. Make sure all cameras have been properly installed, either they are powered by 12V power lines or using one or several PoE switches or mid-spans. Refer to the cameras' documentation for details.
- 2. Connect all other interfaces to USB mouse/keyboard, one or two monitors, and audio input/ output devices.
- 3. Make sure you connect both power supplies to power mains.

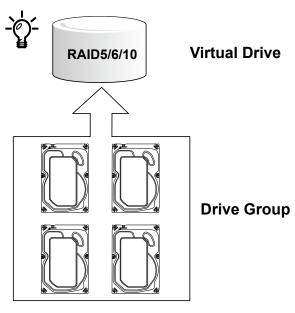
## **Initial Configuration**



1. Power up the system by pressing the power on button.

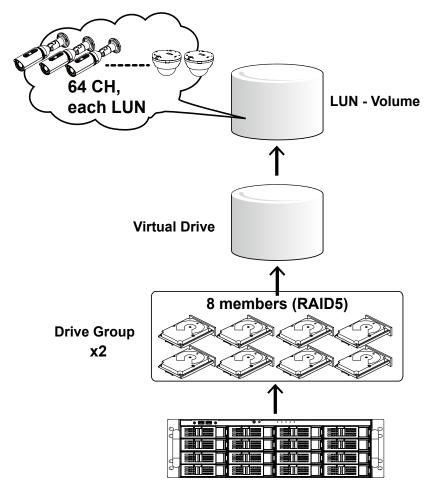
2. Skip the BIOS screens and select **Enter NVR** at the selection screen. The system will start. Wait for the start-up process to complete.





Our default recommendation is to combine 4 hard drives into 1 drive group. The capacities of these drives will be utilized to form 1 Virtual Drive. If all 16 drive bays are populated, you can create 4 Virtual Drives. A 4-member Virtual Drive can receive the video feeds from 32 cameras. You can also create two 8-member Virtual Drives to receive the video feeds from 64 cameras (CH, or channels.)

Recording will not take place unless you create a Virtual Drive first. Select RAID5 as the RAID level during the configuration process.



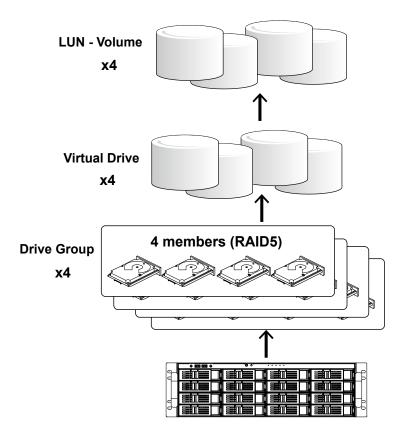
#### The default configuration for a configuration of 128 cameras should look like the following:

Physical & Logical	Configuration
components	
Hard drive	16
Virtual Drive	4, each has 4 members. Configured in RAID5.
	If using 6TB drives, the available capacity in each Virtual Drive will be, 4 x 6TB-1 x 6TB(parity drive)= 18TB.
Volume	4, each created from 1 Virtual Drive.

#### The camera configuration should look like this,

Physical & Logical	Configuration
components	
Cameras	128
Recording Group	4, each responds to 32 cameras, and each Recording Group is associated with 1 Virtual
	Drive volume.
Volume	4, each created from 1 Virtual Drive, and associated with 1 Recording Group

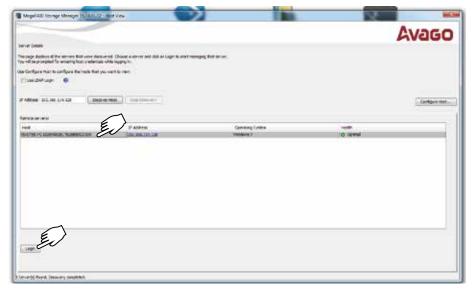
A Virtual Drive appears to the host system (Windows) as a logical disk partition. The logical parition, when formatted, becomes a disk volume.



1. The system will boot up to the system main screen. Double-click on the **RAID Config** shortcut to start the MegaRAID storage configuration utility.



2. Select the default server, namely, the Windows 7 server running on this machine. Click Login to begin your configuration.



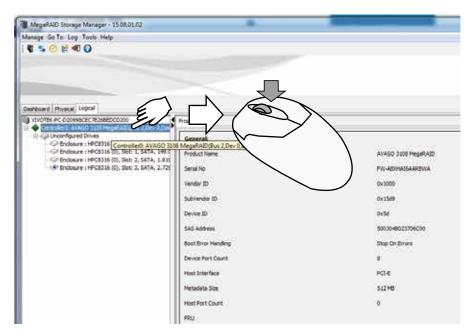
3. Enter vivotek/vivotek as the User Name and Password. Click Login to proceed.

🛢 Enter User Name & P	assword	×
	Avag	0
Server :	127.0.0.1 Use your Operating System Pername @ and password to login the Pername	
User Name: Password:	vivotek vivotek vivotek	
Login Mode:	Full Access	
	Login Cancel	

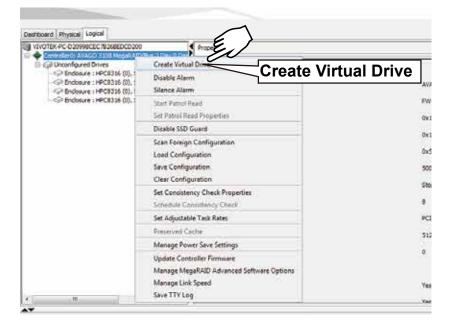
4. A Dashboard view will appear. Click the Logical tab.

Margail &	ID Sternije Mininger - 14	020103					
Manage Go	To Log Tools Help						
• • 0	840	1					
🗿 Controller	Protect Lagrant	Das 2,Der ()					
Properties			Usage		Background Coexators		
<ul> <li>Strituti</li> <li>Birclour</li> </ul>	ile 0 O che	54			firtual drive operations in progress: 3		
Badgian	ei 1		4994	Total capacity: 3.205 TB			
G/Drives:	4	4		Configured Capacity:	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Dhep	NOV D			0.00.400	Drive operations in progress: (		
🕽 Wituel D	webb 0		100	a.cso 18			
View service	er analle				thore, or sets		
-	Warned Sufferent Options		Autore		relp		
MegaRAID		Enabled	Create without drive		Harr, Nr. Later, PEDPL1		
MegaRAD I		Enabled	Create Cache Cade ** 155	D Cathing	How to create wheel drive?		
Hegel(AD)	LAIDS	Endied	Land tenformeter		How to mattle MeastACD Advanced Self-		
Manage Ma	ooff AD Ad avoid Softwa	na Optiona	Undets Arrents		Georg		
			Management				
D	Bror Level	Date / Tire		Description			
10000	[Information, 0] [Information, 0]	2018-01-09, 101			e server user: KIVO16K, Clent: 192.188.A.223. established since power wh: Time 20.35-61-69,		
44 505	[Information, 0]	31 seconds from			established since power un; Time 2020-02-09, roler operating temperature within normal range, I		

5. Left-click to select the AVAGO MegaRAID controller, and then right-click to display a command menu.



#### 6. Click on Create Virtual Drive.



7. The **Create Virtual Drive** wizard will start. Click to select the **Advanced** mode. Then click the Next button to proceed.

Create Virtual Drive - Choose mode	×
	Avago
This wizard will help you quickly create virtual drives.	
Choose how to create the virtual drive:	
Specify a number of settings and have the system pick drives for you. This is the easier virtual of the system pick drives for you. This is the easier	st way to create a
Choose additional settings and customize virtual drive creation. This option provides greater fl virtual drives for your specific requirements.	lexibility when creating
	El
	Cancel Next Help

8. Select a **RAID level**, and then select multiple disk drives as the members of your drive group. Left-click to select a disk drive, and click **Add** to add it to group. You do not need to select the Data protection option.

	Create Drive Group - Drive Group Settings	
	Create the drive group by specifying the RAID le RAID level:	security method.
RAID 5	RAID 5	This RAID level is suitable for multi-user environments(database or file system) with large IO size and high proportion of read activity.
Select	Drive security method:	
RAID 0	Select 👻	Drive security will make the virtual drive secure by applying encryption logic to underlying data in the drive.
RAID 1	Data protection:	and chying data in the aniver
RAID 5 RAID 6	Disable	Data Protection is a guard that detects corruption of data on media; thereby preventing system errors caused better the corruption (SDC).
RAID 00 - Spanned Drive Group		system cirols caused in a comption (abe).
RAID 10 - Spanned Drive Group	Select unconfigured drives:	Drive groups:
	Drive         Type            ► Endosure : HPC8316 (0 SATA         [149.05]            ► Endosure : HPC8316 (0 SATA         1.819 TB            ► Endosure : HPC8316 (0 SATA         2.729 TB	Add >> Add Hot Spare > Add Hot Spare Add Add Hot Spare Add Add Hot Spare Add Add Add Add Add Add Add Add Add Ad
	4 III >	< <remove iii<="" td=""></remove>
		Create Drive Group Create Span
		Cancel Back Next Help

Refer to the next section: **RAID Basics** on page 46, for details about RAID levels.

9. Click on the Drive Group 0 entry you have just configured. The **Create Drive Group** button will become available. Click Next to proceed.

	up by specifying the R	AID level and [	Drive security method.
AID level:		RAID 5	This RAID level is suitable for mult
	ı.		or file system) with large IO size a
rive security metho Select	<b>:</b>	-	Drive security will make the virtual dri
			underlying data in the drive.
ata protection: Disable			Data Protection is a guard that detects corruption
DISADIC		Ť	system errors caused by silent data corruption (SD
Select unconfigure	d drives:		Drive groups:
		Capa	Controller0: AVAGO 3108 MegaRAID(Bus 2,I 🔺
Drive	Туре	aapann	
	Туре	- coperin	Add >> Drive Group0 Endosure : HPC8316 (0), Slot: 0: SA
	Туре		Add Hot Spare > = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = =
Drive			Add Hot Spare >         Solution         Solution
	Туре	•	Add Hot Spare >
Drive		4	Add Hot Spare >         Solution         Solution

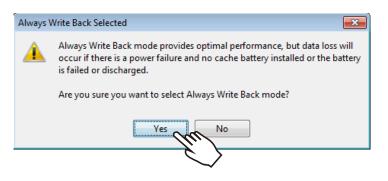
#### 9. Select the following key parameters:

Initialization State: **Fast Initialization**, Strip size: **64KB**, RAID policy: **No Read Ahead**, Write policy: **Always Write Back**.

These are important parameters to the disk array performance, and have to be correctly configured. Click **Create Virtual Drive**.

			Avago
Specify parameters f	for the new virtual drive.	Drive groups:	
Virtual drive name:	VD_0		O 3108 MegaRAID(Bus 1,Dev 0,Domain 0) RAID O Available Converts 2,729 IB
Capacity:	2.729 😳 Units: 178 🔹	Fast Init	tialization
Initialization state:	Past Initialization 🔹		
Strip sze:	64 KB 🔹	64 KB	
Read policy:	No Read Ahead 🔹 🚽	No R	ead Ahead
Write policy:	Aways Write Back 🔹	Alwa	ys Write Back
I/O policy:	Direct IO +		<b>,</b>
Access policy:	Read Write 👻	_	
Disk cache policy:	Disabled +	E	
Update Virtual D	Create Virtual Driv	Remove Virtual Drive	1

10. Click Yes to leave the Write Back concern message.



11. The wizard may prompt for another virtual drive. Multiple virtual drives can be created from a physical drive group. Repeat the process to create more 4-member Virtual Drives. When done, click to select the **Virtual Drive 0,VD\_0**, and then click Next to proceed.

		Avago
Specify parameters Wrtual drive name: Capacity: Initialization state: Strip size: Read policy: Write policy: UO policy: LO policy:	for the new virtual drive. VD_0 445.594 © Units: GB • Past Initialization • 64 KB • No Read Ahead • Aways Write Back • Direct IO • Read Write •	Drive groups: Controller0: AVAGO 3108 MegaRAID(Bus 2 Drive Group0: RAID 5: Available Capation (0) Drive Group0: RAID 5: Available Capation (0)
Disk cache policy:	Deabled	Remove Virbual Drive

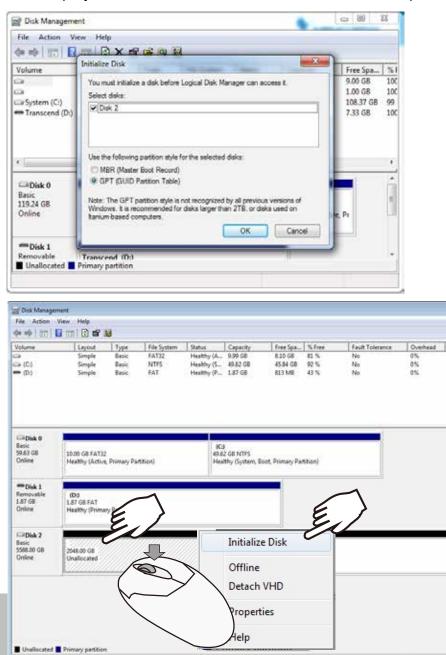
12. The Virtual Drive is instantly created. Click **OK**, and then click **Finish** to close the wizard. You can then terminate the MegaRAID utility.

Create Virtual Drive - Summary			
	Avago		
Review the summary and go back if you need to ma	ke corrections. The virtual drive(s) will be created when you click finish.		
Summary:			
Drive group name: PAID Level: Number of drives used: Drive security method: Data Frotection: Hot Spare Total capacity: Virtual drive 1 name: Capacity:	Drive Group0 BAID 5 4 No Encryption Disabled No 445.594 GB VD_0 445.594 GB		
	5	Create Virtual Drive - Summary	
	T. Cancel Back Printh Help	Review the summary and go back if you need to make correctors. The virtual drive(s) will be created Summary:	Vago
		Drive group name: RAID Level: Number of drives us Drive security method Data Protection: Hot Spare Total capacity: Virtual drive 1 nam Capacity: 445.554 GB	
		e tet Cancel Back	Freeh Hele

13. Double-click on the **Disk Management** shortcut on the desktop to open the utility.



14. The virtual drive you created should appear as a new disk partition. You need to initialize and format the partition before using the disk capacity. Left-click to select and then right-click to display the command menu. Click **Initialize Disk** to proceed.



15. Select **GPT** (GUID Partition Table), and then click **OK** to proceed. This window may automatically pop up when Disk Management is started.

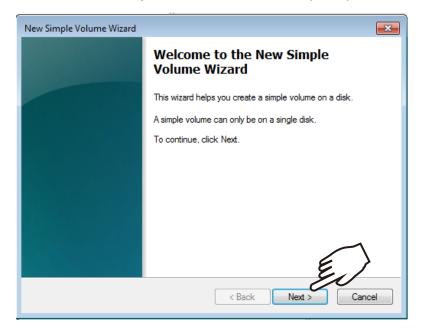
Initialize Disk	3
You must initialize a disk before Logical Disk Manager can access it.	
Select disks:	
Disk 2	,
	1
Use the ing partition style for the selected disks:	
	٦
GPT (GUID Partition Table)	
Note: The GPT partition style is not recognized by all previous versions of	
Windows. It is recommended for disks larger than 2TB, or disk on Itanium-based computers.	
OK Cancel	

\_\_\_\_\_

16. Once initialized, you can create a new volume. Right-click to display the **New Simple Volume** command. Click to proceed.

Basic 59.63 GB	10.00 GB FAT32	(C:)
Online	Healthy (Active, Primary Partition)	49.62 GB NTFS Healthy (System, Boot, Primary Partition)
Disk 1 Removable		
1.87 GB Online	(D:) 1.87 GB FAT Healthy (Primary Partition)	、
<b>Disk 2</b> Basic 5588.00 GB Online	2048.00 GB Unallocated	
		New Simple Volume
		New Spanned Volume
		New Striped Volume
		New Mirrored Volume
		New RAID-5 Volume
		New RAID-5 Volume Properties

17. The New Simple Volume Wizard will prompt. Click Next to proceed.



18. Leave the volume size unchanged. Click Next to proceed.

New Simple Volume Wizard	<b>×</b>
Specify Volume Size Choose a volume size that is between the r	naximum and minimum sizes.
Maximum disk space in MB: Minimum disk space in MB: Simple volume size in MB:	5721982 8 5721982
	< Back Next > Cancel

19. When prompted to assign a drive letter, click Next to proceed.

New Simple Volume Wizard	Anna Anna	X
Assign Drive Letter or Path For easier access, you can	) assign a drive letter or drive path to	your partition.
<ul> <li>Assign the following driv</li> <li>Mount in the following e</li> <li>Do not assign a drive left</li> </ul>	mpty NTFS folder: Browse	
	< Back	Next > Cancel

20. On the **Format Partition** page, select the **Allocation unit size** as **64KB**. When done, click Next to proceed.

Í	New Simple Volume Wizard
	Format Partition To store data on this partition, you must format it first.
	Choose whether you want to format this volume, and if so, what settings you want to use.
	Do not format this volume
	Format this volume with the following settings:
	File system: NTFS 💌
	Allocation unit size: Default
	Volume label: 512 1024
	Perform a quick format 2048
	Enable file and folder cor 8192
64	
	< Back Next > Cancel
	(hu)
	$\tilde{\boldsymbol{x}}$

#### 21. Click Finish to end the wizard.

New Simple Volume Wizard		×
	Completing the New Simple Volume Wizard	
	You have successfully completed the New Simple Volume Wizard. You selected the following settings: Volume type: Simple Volume Disk selected: Disk 2 Volume size: 5721982 MB Drive letter or path: E: File system: NTFS Allocation unit size: Default Volume label: New Volume Quick format: Yes To close this wizard, click Finish.	
	< Back Finish Can	cel

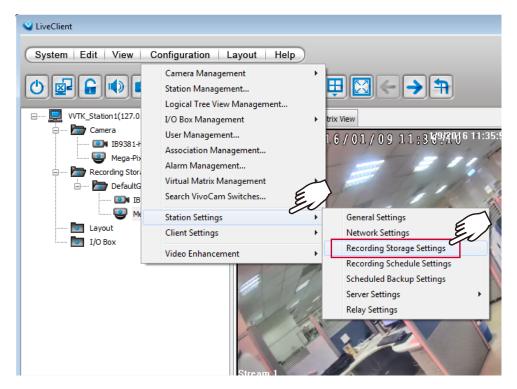
22. The formatting process will run in the background. When done, the new volume shall be indicated as a healthy new volume. Close the Disk Management window.

Online	Healthy (Active, Primary Partition) 49.02 GB NTES Healthy (Active, Primary Partition) Healthy (System, Boot, Primary Partition	
Disk 1 Removable 1.87 GB Online	(D:) 1.87 GB FAT Healthy (Primary Partition)	
Basic 5587.88 GB Online	5587.87 GB Formatting	
<b>Disk 1</b> Removable 1.87 GB Online	(D:) 1.87 GB FAT Healthy (Primary Partition)	
<b>Disk 2</b> Basic 5587.88 GB Online	New Volume (E:) 5587.87 GB NTFS Healthy (Primary Partition)	

23. Start VIVOTEK LiveClient utility by double-clicking its shortbut. Enter admin and admin as the User Name and default Password. You can change the password later in the utility. Click Log in to proceed.

VIVOTEK Cont	rol Center Disk Status	s Network Status	System Status
LiveClent	Playback	Service	Import / Export Utilty
Shepherd	File Manager	Keybo Address:	
Control	Disk Management	RAID C Password:	n: Basic Account admin admin admin
VIVOTEK Control Cer	<b>ster</b> Disk Status Net	Log in work Status System Statu	Cancel More >>
Linder	2 Visy Payback Service	Import / Export Utiley	6
Shephend	The Manager Keyboard	Lirgung:	
Control Da	Management RAIO Config		
Top row Desktop Shortcuts	Network Status: Disp	s the current storage plays the information	e volume status (system drive and RAID volumes). for the current network connections. em status, license information, and VAST service.
	Playback Starts	the VAST LiveClient the VAST Playback (	•
	Import/Export Allows Shepherd Use the	you to import or exp e Shepherd utility to	port VAST configurations. locate cameras within your network. is in system disk drive volumes.
	KeyboardToggleLanguageChangControlOpens	es the virtual keyboar ges the UI language. s the operating system	rd in case you do not have a physical keyboard.
	Managment	_	ge configuration utility.

24. Click Configuration > Station Settings > Recording Storage Settings.



25. Click on the **Add Local Path** button. Select the new local path displayed as D:/ or E:/ drive (your new volume). Click OK to proceed.

Since you cannot record video to the root directory, click **Add** to create a new folder, e.g., D:\ Recording.

Recording Storage Setting	for VVTK_Station1	19
Storage GroutGro	• • 💽 🏈 💌	
atts in Serie		
🗟 😹 🕺	8	
Recovery Storage Path		Storage Information
	Select Local Path	Total: GByte:
		GBytes
	⊕ WTK_\$tata ⊕ C1	GBytes
Delete recorded data older t	uan l	
ameras in Storage Group		
Available Cameras: Name	Adde	
199381-HT	192	
Mega-Poxel Network Camera	192	
	Add Delete Rer	are
	Path: Ei\	
	Type: 🥶 Storage Path 🔘 Recover	y Path
	Storage Information Total: 5587.87 GBytes	Free: 5587.61 GBytes
	Reserved: 558 CBytes	Tree: 2007.01 Voytes
		1
		Cose Cose
		OK Cancel Cose

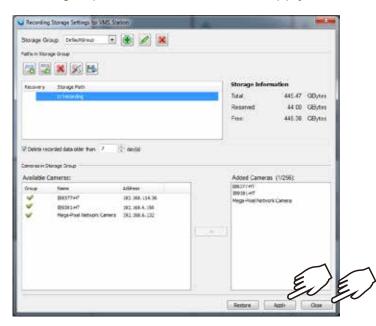
26. Enter a name for the new folder, e.g., Recording.

Select Local Path						23
UMS_Station						
Add	Delete	Add Ne Folder Na recording	me:	×		
Path: D:\ Type: @ Stora	ge Path 🔘 R	ecovery Path	Cancel			
Storage In	formation					
Total: Reserved:	445.47	GBytes	Free:	445.38	GBytes	

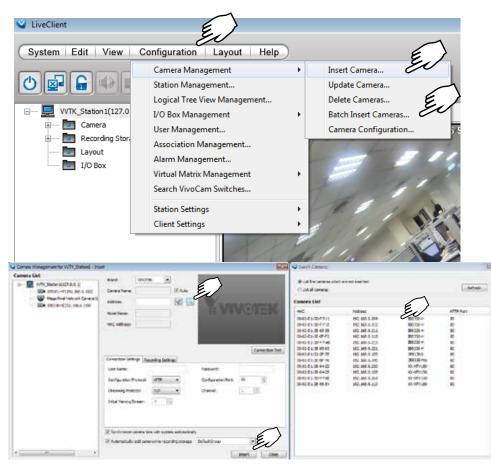
27. Select the new folder you just created and click  $\ensuremath{\text{OK}}$  button.

Select Local Path		$\sim$			×
Add	Delete	Rename			
Path: D:\reco	ording				
Type: 🔘 Stora	age Path 💿 Rec	overy Path			
-Storage In	formation				
Total:	445.47	GBytes	Free:	445.38	GBytes
Reserved:	44	GBytes			E
					OK Cancel

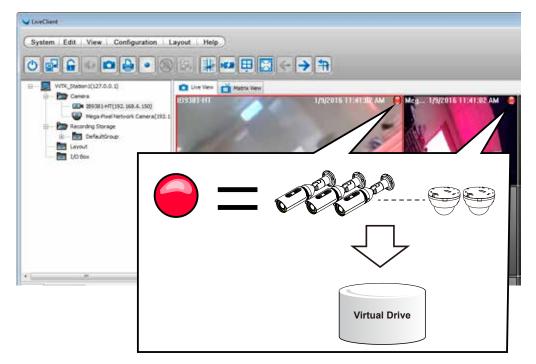
28. The selected **Storage path** will appear on the list along with its total, reserved, and Free storage spaces information. Click Apply.



29. Open the **Camera Management > Insert Camera** or **Batch Insert Cameras** window. Use the **Search** button to locate cameras in your local area network. Select and click **Insert**. Select and insert all cameras of your choice in your deployment, and then close the Camera Management window.



30. You will return to the **Live View** window. By default, once cameras have been inserted and the storage path is ready, the NVR starts recording the video streams. Note the red light icons on the view cells. If red icons appear on the view cells, recording is taking place.



31. You are done with the initial configuration. Refer to the rest of the manual for the configurable options in the VAST management software.



- 1. Cameras and the NVR must reside in the same subnet. Otherwise, the NVR will not be able to recruit them into a recording configuration.
- 2. It is recommended all network cameras use static IPs. If you let a DHCP server assign IPs to these cameras, IPs may be changed later and the NVR may not recognize them.

# **RAID Basics**

# MIMPORTANT:

For a RAID volume configuration, it is recommended you use hard drives of the same model featuring the same capacity and rotation speed. It is also preferred that these drives are running the same version of firmware.

A Redundant Array of Independent Disks is an array, or group, of multiple independent physical drives that provide high performance and fault tolerance. A RAID drive group improves I/O performance and reliability. The RAID drive group appears to the host computer as a single storage volume or as multiple virtual units. An I/O transaction is expedited because several drives can be accessed simultaneously.

A RAID drive group improves data storage reliability and fault tolerance compared to single drive storage. Data loss resulting from a drive failure can be prevented by reconstructing missing data from the remaining drives. The benefits of RAID come from the improvement of I/O performance and the increased reliability.

#### What are the Virtual drives?

Virtual drives are drive groups that are available to the operating systems. The storage space in a virrtual drive comes from all the members in the drive group.

The RAID functions available for virtual drives include:

- Hot spare drives.
- Drive group and virtual drive configurations.
- Initializing one or more virtual drives.
- Individual access to controllers, virtual drives, and disk drives.
- Failed drive rebuild.
- Verification of redundancy data in virtual drives using RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60.
- Reconstructing virtual drives after the RAID levels or adding a drive to a drive group.
- Indepently selecting a host controller to work for.

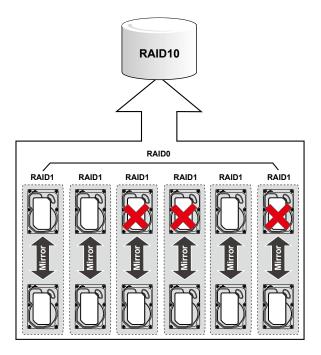
#### **RAID configuration components**

- Drive group: a group of physical drives. These drives will be managed in partitions known as virtual drives.
- Virtual drive: a partition in a drive group made of continguous data segments from the individual disk drives. A virtual drive can consist of the following components:
  - An entire drive group.
  - More than one entire drive group.
  - A part of drive group.
  - Parts of more than one drive group.
  - A combination of any two of the conditions above.

#### **RAID Fault Tolerance**

RAID Level	Number of Tolerable Drive Failures
0	No fault tolerance
1	1, each drive group
5	1
6	2
10	multiple, as long as each failure is in a separate drive group
50	1 in each drive group
60	2 in each drive group

For example, if disk failure occurs in different drive groups, a RAID10 configuration can tolerate multiple drive failures. In each RAID1 drive group, data is mirrored to a counterpart disk drive. Data remains intact if one disk drive should fail in each drive group.



#### **Consistency Check**

The consistency check operation verifies the correctness of the data in virtual drives that use RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. RAID0 does not provide data redundancy. In a system with parity, check consistency means calculating the data on one drive and comparing the results to the contents of the parity drive.

#### **Background Initialization**

Background initialization is a check for media errors on the drives when you create a virtual drive. It is an automatic operation that starts five minutes after you create a virtual drive. This check ensures that striped data segments are the same on all of the drives in the drive group.

Background initialization is similar to a consistency check. The difference between the two is that a background initialization is forced on new virtual drives and a consistency check is not.

New RAID 5 virtual drives and new RAID 6 virtual drives require a minimum number of drives for a background initialization to start. If fewer drives exist, the background initialization does not start. The background initialization needs to be started manually. The following number of drives are required:

New RAID 5 virtual drives must have at least five drives for background initialization to start.

New RAID 6 virtual drives must have at least seven drives for background initialization to start.

The default and recommended background initialization rate is 30 percent. Before you change the rebuild rate, you must stop the background initialization or the rate change will not affect the background initialization rate. After you stop background initialization and change the rebuild rate, the rate change takes effect when you restart background initialization.2.1.7Patrol Read

#### **Disk Striping**

Disk striping lets you write data across multiple drives instead of just one drive. Disk striping involves partitioning each drive storage space into stripes that can vary in size from a minimum of 64 KB to 1 MB for MegaRAID controllers and 64 KB for Integrated MegaRAID controllers. The LSISAS2108 controller allows stripe size from 8 KB to 1 MB. These stripes are interleaved in a repeated sequential manner. The combined storage space is composed of stripes from each drive. It is recommended that you keep stripe sizes the same across RAID drive groups.

For example, in a four-disk system using only disk striping (used in RAID level 0), segment 1 is written to disk 1, segment 2 is written to disk 2, and so on. Disk striping enhances performance because multiple drives are accessed simultaneously, but disk striping does not provide data redundancy.



Segment 1 Segment 5 Segment 9 Segment 2 Segment 6 Segment 10 Segment 3 Segment 7 Segment 11

Segment 4 Segment 8 Segment 12

#### Stripe Width

Stripe width is the number of drives involved in a drive group where striping is implemented. For example, a four-disk drive group with disk striping has a stripe width of four.

#### **Stripe Size**

The stripe size is the length of the interleaved data segments that the RAID controller writes across multiple drives, not including parity drives. For example, consider a stripe that contains 1 MB of drive space and has 64 KB of data residing on each drive in the stripe. In this case, the stripe size is 1 MB and the strip size is 64 KB.

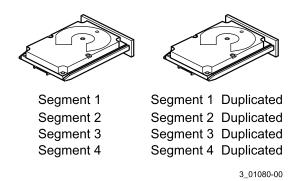
#### **Strip Size**

The strip size is the portion of a stripe that resides on a single drive.

#### **Disk Mirroring**

With disk mirroring (used in RAID 1 and RAID 10), data written to one drive is simultaneously written to another drive. The primary advantage of disk mirroring is that it provides 100 percent data redundancy. Because the contents of the disk are completely written to a second disk, data is not lost if one disk fails. In addition, both drives contain the same data at all times, so either disk can act as the operational disk. If one disk fails, the contents of the other disk can run the system and reconstruct the failed disk.

Disk mirroring provides 100 percent redundancy, but it is expensive because each drive in the system must be duplicated. The following figure shows an example of disk mirroring.

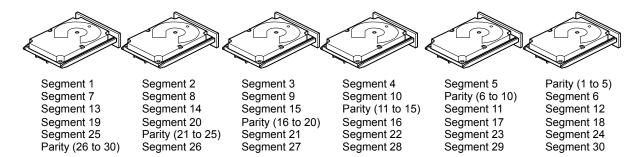


## Parity

Parity generates a set of redundancy data from two or more parent data sets. The redundancy data can be used to reconstruct one of the parent data sets in the event of a drive failure. Parity data does not fully duplicate the parent data sets, but parity generation can slow the write process. In a RAID drive group, this method is applied to entire drives or stripes across all of the drives in a drive group. The types of parity are described in the following table.

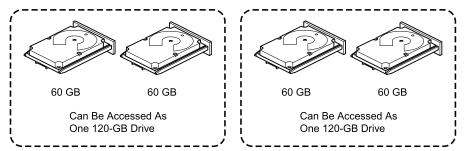
Parity Type	Description
Dedicated	The parity data on two or more drives is stored on an additional disk.
Distributed	The parity data is distributed across more than one drive in the system.

A RAID 5 drive group combines distributed parity with disk striping. If a single drive fails, it can be rebuilt from the parity and the data on the remaining drives. An example of a RAID 5 drive group is shown in the following figure. A RAID 5 drive group uses parity to provide redundancy for one drive failure without duplicating the contents of entire drives. A RAID 6 drive group also uses distributed parity and disk striping, but adds a second set of parity data so that it can survive up to two drive failures.



#### **Disk Spanning**

Disk spanning allows multiple drives to function like one big drive. Spanning overcomes lack of disk space and simplifies storage management by combining existing resources or adding relatively inexpensive resources. For example, four 20-GB drives can be combined to appear to the operating system as a single 80-GB drive. Spanning alone does not provide reliability or performance enhancements. Spanned virtual drives must have the same stripe size and must be contiguous. In the following figure, RAID 1 drive groups are turned into a RAID 10 drive group.



Spanning two contiguous RAID 0 virtual drives does not produce a new RAID level or add fault tolerance. It does increase the capacity of the virtual drive and improves performance by doubling the number of spindles.

Spanning for RAID 00, RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60 Drive Groups

The following table describes how to configure RAID 00, RAID 10, RAID 50, and RAID 60 drive groups by spanning. The virtual drives must have the same stripe size and the maximum number of spans is 8. The full drive capacity is used when you span virtual drives; you cannot specify a smaller drive capacity.

Level	Description
00	Configure a RAID 00 by spanning two or more contiguous RAID 0 virtual drives, up to the
	maximum number of supported devices for the controller.
10	Configure RAID 10 by spanning two or more contiguous RAID 1 virtual drives, up to
	the maximum number of supported devices for the controller. A RAID 10 drive group
	supports a maximum of 8 spans. You must use an even number of drives in each RAID
	virtual drive in the span. The RAID 1 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.
50	Configure a RAID 50 drive group by spanning two or more contiguous RAID 5 virtual
	drives. The RAID 5 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.
60	Configure a RAID 60 drive group by spanning two or more contiguous RAID 6 virtual
	drives. The RAID 6 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.

#### **Hot Spares**

A hot spare is an extra, unused drive that is part of the disk subsystem. It is usually in Standby mode, ready for service if a drive fails. Hot spares let you replace failed drives without system shutdown or user intervention. The MegaRAID SAS RAID controllers can implement automatic and transparent rebuilds of failed drives using hot spare drives, which provide a high degree of fault tolerance and zero downtime.

The RAID management software lets you specify drives as hot spares. When a hot spare is needed, the RAID controller assigns the hot spare that has a capacity closest to and at least as great as that of the failed drive to take the place of the failed drive. The failed drive is removed from the virtual drive and marked ready awaiting removal after the rebuild to a hot spare begins. You can make hot spares of the drives that are not in a RAID virtual drive.

You can use the RAID management software to designate the hot spare to have enclosure affinity, which means that if drive failures are present on a split backplane configuration, the hot spare will be used first on the backplane side in which it resides. If the hot spare is designated as having enclosure affinity, it tries to rebuild any failed drives on the backplane in which it resides before rebuilding any other drives on other backplanes.

The hot spare can be of two types:

- Global hot spare
- Dedicated hot spare

#### **Global Hot Spare**

Use a global hot spare drive to replace any failed drive in a redundant drive group as long as its capacity is equal to or larger than the coerced capacity of the failed drive. A global hot spare defined on any channel should be available to replace a failed drive on both channels.

#### **Dedicated Hot Spare**

Use a dedicated hot spare to replace a failed drive only in a selected drive group. One or more drives can be designated as a member of a spare drive pool. The most suitable drive from the pool is selected for failover. A dedicated hot spare is used before one from the global hot spare pool.

Hot spare drives can be located on any RAID channel. Standby hot spares (not being used in RAID drive group) are polled every 60 seconds at a minimum, and their status made available in the drive group management software. RAID controllers offer the ability to rebuild with a disk that is in a system but not initially set to be a hot spare.

Observe the following parameters when using hot spares:

- Hot spares are used only in drive groups with redundancy: RAID levels 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60.
- A hot spare connected to a specific RAID controller can be used to rebuild a drive that is connected only to the same controller.
- You must assign the hot spare to one or more drives through the controller BIOS or use drive group management software to place it in the hot spare pool.
- A hot spare must have free space equal to or greater than the drive it replaces. For example, to replace a 500-GB drive, the hot spare must be 500-GB or larger.

#### **Disk Rebuilds**

When a drive in a RAID drive group fails, you can rebuild the drive by re-creating the data that was stored on the drive before it failed. The RAID controller re-creates the data using the data stored on the other drives in the drive group. Rebuilding can be performed only in drive groups with data redundancy, which includes RAID 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60 drive groups.

The RAID controller uses hot spares to rebuild failed drives automatically and transparently, at user-defined rebuild rates. If a hot spare is available, the Rebuild operation can start automatically when a drive fails. If a hot spare is not available, the failed drive must be replaced with a new drive so that the data on the failed drive can be rebuilt.

The failed drive is removed from the virtual drive and marked ready awaiting removal when the Rebuild operation to a hot spare begins. If the system goes down during a Rebuild operation, the RAID controller automatically resumes the rebuild after the system reboots.

# 

When the Rebuild operation to a hot spare begins, the failed drive is often removed from the virtual drive before management applications detect the failed drive. When this removal occurs, the event logs show the drive rebuilding to the hot spare without showing the failed drive. The formerly failed drive will be marked as ready after a Rebuild operation begins to a hot spare. If a source drive fails during a rebuild to a hot spare, the Rebuild operation fails, and the failed source drive is marked as offline. In addition, the rebuilding hot spare drive is changed back to a hot spare. After a Rebuild operation fails because of a source drive failure, the dedicated hot spare is still dedicated and assigned to the correct drive group, and the global hot spare is still global.

An automatic drive Rebuild operation will not start if you replace a drive during a RAID-level migration. The Rebuild operation must be started manually after the expansion or migration procedure is complete. (RAID-level migration changes a virtual drive from one RAID level to another.)

#### Hot Swap

A hot swap is the manual replacement of a defective drive unit while the computer is still running. When a new drive has been installed, a Rebuild operation occurs automatically if these situation occurs:

- The newly inserted drive is the same capacity as or larger than the failed drive.
- The newly inserted drive is placed in the same drive bay as the failed drive it is replacing.

The RAID controller can be configured to detect the new drives and rebuild the contents of the drive automatically.

#### **Drive States**

A drive state is a property indicating the status of the drive. The drive states are described in the following table.

Parity Type	Description
Online	A drive that can be accessed by the RAID controller and is part of the virtual drive.
Unconfigured Good	A drive that is functioning normally but is not configured as a part of a virtual drive or as a
	hot spare.
Hot Spare	A drive that is powered up and ready for use as a spare in case an online drive fails.
Failed	A drive that was originally configured as Online or Hot Spare, but on which the firmware
	detects an unrecoverable error.
Rebuild	A drive to which data is being written to restore full redundancy for a virtual drive.
Unconfigured Bad	A drive on which the firmware detects an unrecoverable error; the drive was Unconfigured
	Good or the drive could not be initialized.
Missing	A drive that was Online but which has been removed from its location.
Offline	A drive that is part of a virtual drive but which has invalid data as far as the RAID
	configuration is concerned.
Shield State	An interim state of physical drive for diagnostic operations.
Copyback	A drive that has replaced the failed drive in the RAID configuration.

#### **Virtual Drive States**

Parity Type	Description
Online	The virtual drive operating condition is good. All configured drives are online.
Degraded	The virtual drive operating condition is not optimal. One of the configured drives has
	failed or is offline.
Partial Degraded	The operating condition in a RAID 6 virtual drive is not optimal. One of the configured
	drives has failed or is offline. A RAID 6 drive group can tolerate up to two drive failures.
Failed	The virtual drive has failed.
Offline	The virtual drive is not available to the RAID controller.

The virtual drive states are described in the following table.

#### **Beep Codes**

An alarm sounds on the MegaRAID controller when a virtual drive changes from an optimal state to another state, when a hot spare rebuilds, and for test purposes.

Parity Type	Virtual Drive State	Beep Code
RAID 0 virtual drive loses a virtual drive	Offline	3 seconds on and 1 second off
RAID 1 virtual drive loses a mirror drive	Degraded	1 second on and 1 second off
RAID 1 virtual drive loses both drives	Offline	3 seconds on and 1 second off
RAID 5 virtual drive loses one drive	Degraded	1 second on and 1 second off
RAID 5 virtual drive loses two or more	Offline	3 seconds on and 1 second off
drives		
RAID 6 virtual drive loses one drive	Partially degraded	1 second on and 1 second off
RAID 6 virtual drive loses two drives	Degraded	1 second on and 1 second off
RAID 6 virtual drive loses more than two	Offline	3 seconds on and 1 second off
drives		
A hot spare completes the Rebuild	B/A	1 second on and 3 seconds off
process and is brought into a drive group		
A copy back occurs after a Rebuild	Optimal	1 second on and 3 seconds off
operation completes		

#### **RAID Levels**

The RAID controller supports RAID levels 0, 00, 1, 5, 6, 10, 50, and 60. The supported RAID levels are summarized in the following section.

In addition, the RAID controller supports independent drives (configured as RAID 0 and RAID 00 drive groups) The following sections describe the RAID levels in detail.

Summary of RAID Levels

A RAID 0 drive group uses striping to provide high data throughput, especially for large files in an environment that does not require fault tolerance.

A RAID 1 drive group uses mirroring so that data written to one drive is simultaneously written to another drive. The RAID 1 drive group is good for small databases or other applications that require small capacity but complete data redundancy.

A RAID 5 drive group uses disk striping and parity data across all drives (distributed parity) to provide high data throughput, especially for small random access. A RAID 6 drive group uses distributed parity, with two independent parity blocks per stripe, and disk striping.

A RAID 6 virtual drive can survive the loss of any two drives without losing data. A RAID 6 drive group, which requires a minimum of three drives, is similar to a RAID 5 drive group. Blocks of data and parity information are written across all drives. The parity information is used to recover the data if one or two drives fail in the drive group.

A RAID 00 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of RAID 0 drive groups. A RAID 10 drive group, a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 1 drive groups, consists of striped data across mirrored spans.

A RAID 10 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of mirrored drives. A RAID 10 drive group allows a maximum of 8 spans. You must use an even number of drives in each RAID virtual drive in the span. The RAID 1 virtual drives must have the same stripe size. A RAID 10 drive group provides high data throughput and complete data redundancy but uses a larger number of spans.

A RAID 50 drive group, a combination of RAID 0 and RAID 5 drive groups, uses distributed parity and disk striping. A RAID 50 drive group is a spanned drive group in which data is striped across multiple RAID 5 drive groups. A RAID 50 drive group works best with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfers, and medium-to-large capacity.

# 

Having virtual drives of different RAID levels, such as RAID Level0 and RAID Level5, in the same drive group is not allowed. For example, if an existing RAID5 virtual drive is created out of partial space in an array, the next virtual drive in the array has to be RAID Level 5 only.

A RAID 60 drive group, a combination of RAID level 0 and RAID Level 6, uses distributed parity, with two independent parity blocks per stripe in each RAID set, and disk striping. A RAID 60 virtual drive can survive the loss of two drives in each of the RAID 6 sets without losing data. A RAID 60 drive group works best with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high data transfers, and medium-to-large capacity.

# 

The MegaSR controller supports the standard RAID levels – RAID0, RAID1, RAID5, and RAID10. The MegaSR controller comes in two variants, SCU and AHCI, both supporting a maximum of eight physical drives. A maximum of eight virtual drives can be created (using RAID0, RAID 1, RAID5, and RAID10 only) and controlled by the MegaSR controller. One virtual drive can be created on an array (a maximum of eight if no other virtual drives are already created on the MegaSR controller), or you can create eight arrays with one virtual drive each. However, on a RAID10 drive group, you can create only one virtual drive on a particular array.

#### **RAID 0 Drive Groups**

A RAID 0 drive group provides disk striping across all drives in the RAID drive group. A RAID0 drive group does not provide any data redundancy, but the RAID 0 drive group offers the best performance of any RAID level. The RAID 0 drive group breaks up data into smaller segments, and then stripes the data segments across each drive in the drive group. The size of each data segment is determined by the stripe size. A RAID 0 drive group offers high bandwidth.

By breaking up a large file into smaller segments, the RAID controller can use both SAS drives and SATA drives to read or write the file faster. A RAID 0 drive group involves no parity calculations to complicate the write operation. This situation makes the RAID 0 drive group ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance. The following table provides an overview of the RAID 0 drive group. The following figure provides a graphic example of a RAID 0 drive group.

# 

RAID level 0 is not fault tolerant. If a drive in a RAID 0 drive group fails, the entire virtual drive (all drives associated with the virtual drive) fails.

Uses	Provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Any environment that does not
	require fault tolerance.
Strong points	Provides increased data throughput for large files.
	No capacity loss penalty for parity.
Weak points	Does not provide fault tolerance or high bandwidth.All data is lost if any drive fails.
Drives	1 to 32



Segment 1 Segment 3 Segment 5 Segment 7

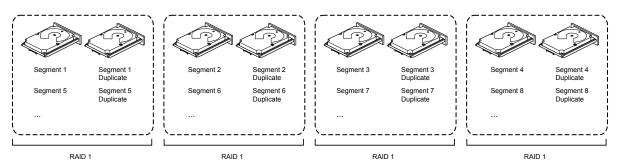


Segment 2 Segment 4 Segment 6 Segment 8

#### **RAID 1 Drive Groups**

In RAID 1 drive groups, the RAID controller duplicates all data from one drive to a second drive in the drive group. A RAID 1 drive group supports an even number of drives from 2 through 32 in a single span. The RAID1 drive group provides complete data redundancy, but at the cost of doubling the required data storage capacity. The following table provides an overview of a RAID1 drive group. The following figure provides a graphic example of a RAID1 drive group.

Uses	Use RAID 1 drive groups for small databases or any other environment that requires fault
	tolerance but small capacity.
Strong points	Provides complete data redundancy. A RAID 1 drive group is ideal for any application that requires fault tolerance and minimal capacity.
Weak points	Requires twice as many drives. Performance is impaired during drive rebuilds.
Drives	2 through 32 (must be an even number of drives)



#### **RAID 5 Drive Groups**

A RAID 5 drive group includes disk striping at the block level and parity. Parity is the data's property of being odd or even, and parity checking is used to detect errors in the data. In RAID5 drive groups, the parity information is written to all drives. A RAID5 drive group is best suited for networks that perform a lot of small input/output (I/O) transactions simultaneously. The following table provides an overview of a RAID5 drive group. The following figure provides a graphic example of a RAID5 drive group.

Uses	Provides high data throughput, especially for large files.
	Use RAID 5 drive groups for transaction processing applications because each drive can read and write independently.
	If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity drive to re-create all missing
	information. Use also for online customer service that requires fault tolerance. Use for any application that has high read request rates but random write request rates.
Strong points	Provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. Provides redundancy with lowest loss of capacity.
Weak points	Not well suited to tasks requiring lots of small writes or small block write operations. Suffers more impact if no cache is used.
	Drive performance is reduced if a drive is being rebuilt.
	Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID drive group overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.
Drives	3 through 32

Segment 15

Segment 21

Segment 27

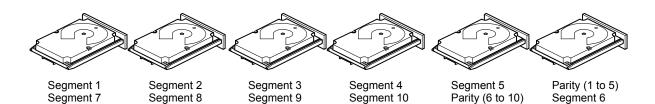
Parity (16 to 20)

Segment 14

Segment 20

Seament 26

Parity (21 to 25)



Parity (11 to 15)

Segment 16

Segment 22

Segment 28

Segment 11

Segment 17

Segment 23

Segment 29

Segment 12

Segment 18

Segment 24

Segment 30

#### **RAID 6 Drive Groups**

Segment 13

Segment 19

Segment 25

Parity (26 to 30)

A RAID6 drive group is similar to a RAID5 drive group (disk striping and parity), except that instead of one parity block per stripe, there are two. With two independent parity blocks, A RAID6 drive group can survive the loss of any two drives in a virtual drive without losing data. A RAID6 drive group provides a high level of data protection through the use of a second parity block in each stripe. Use a RAID6 drive group for data that requires a very high level of protection from loss.

In the case of a failure of one drive or two drives in a virtual drive, the RAID controller uses the parity blocks to re-create all of the missing information. If two drives in a RAID6 virtual drive fail, two drive rebuilds are required, one for each drive. These rebuilds do not occur at the same time. The controller rebuilds one failed drive, and then the other failed drive. The following table provides an overview of a RAID6 drive group.

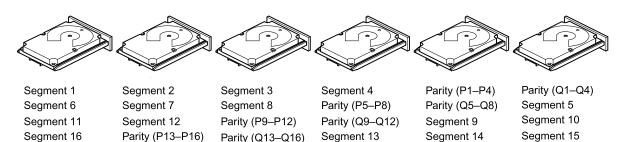
Uses	Use for any application that has high read request rates but low random or small block
	write rates.
Strong points	Provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. Can survive the loss of two drives or the loss of a drive while another drive is being rebuilt.Provides the highest level of protection against drive failures of all of the RAID levels.Performance is similar to that of a RAID5 drive group.
Weak points	Not well-suited to tasks requiring a lot of small and/or random write operations.A RAID 6 virtual drive must generate two sets of parity data for each write operation, which results in a significant decrease in performance during write operations.
	Drive performance is reduced during a drive Rebuild operation.Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.
	A RAID6 drive group costs more because of the extra capacity required by using two parity blocks per stripe.
Drives	3 through 32

The following figure shows a RAID6 drive group data layout. The second set of parity drives is denoted by Q. The P drives follow the RAID5 drive group parity scheme.

Segment 18

Segment 19

Segment 20



Segment 17

Note: Parity is distributed across all drives in the drive group.

Parity (Q17-Q20)

Parity (P17-P20)

#### **RAID 00 Drive Groups**

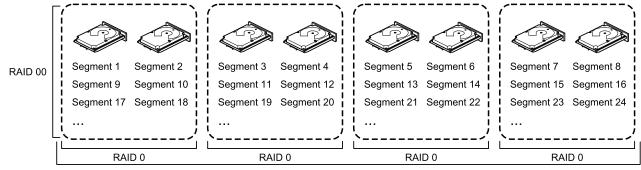
A RAID 00 drive group is a spanned drive group that creates a striped set from a series of RAID0 drive groups. A RAID00 drive group does not provide any data redundancy, but, along with the RAID0 drive group, does offer the best performance of any RAID level. A RAID00 drive group breaks up data into smaller segments and then stripes the data segments across each drive in the drive groups. The size of each data segment is determined by the stripe size. A RAID00 drive group offers high bandwidth.



RAID level 00 is not fault tolerant. If a drive in a RAID 0 drive group fails, the entire virtual drive (all drives associated with the virtual drive) fails.

By breaking up a large file into smaller segments, the controller can use both SAS drives and SATA drives to read or write the file faster. A RAID00 drive group involves no parity calculations to complicate the write operation. This situation makes the RAID00 drive group ideal for applications that require high bandwidth but do not require fault tolerance. The following table provides an overview of the RAID00 drive group. The following figure provides a graphic example of a RAID 00 drive group.

Uses	Provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Any environment that does not
	require fault tolerance.
Strong points	Provides increased data throughput for large files.
	No capacity loss penalty for parity.
Weak points	Does not provide fault tolerance or high bandwidth.
	All data lost if any drive fails.
Drives	2 through 256



RAID 0

#### RAID 10

A RAID10 drive group is a combination of RAID level 0 and RAID level 1, and it consists of stripes across mirrored drives. A RAID10 drive group breaks up data into smaller blocks and then mirrors the blocks of data to each RAID1 drive group. The first RAID1 drive in each drive group then duplicates its data to the second drive. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set. The RAID 1 virtual drives must have the same stripe size.

Spanning is used because one virtual drive is defined across more than one drive group. Virtual drives defined across multiple RAIDlevel 1 drive groups are referred to as RAID level 10, (1+0). Data is striped across drive groups to increase performance by enabling access to multiple drive groups simultaneously.

Each spanned RAID 10 virtual drive can tolerate multiple drive failures, as long as each failure is in a separate drive group. If drive failures occur, less than total drive capacity is available. Configure RAID 10 drive groups by spanning two contiguous RAID1 virtual drives, up to the maximum number of supported devices for the controller. A RAID10 drive group supports a maximum of 8spans, with a maximum of 32drives per span. You must use an even number of drives in each RAID10 virtual drive in the span.

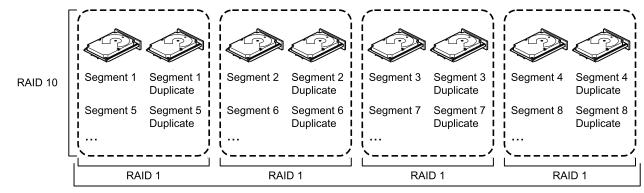
# 

Other factors, such as the type of controller, can restrict the number of drives supported by RAID 10 virtual drives.

Uses	Appropriate when used with data storage that needs 100 percent redundancy of mirrored drive groups and that also needs the enhanced I/O performance of RAID 0 (striped drive groups.)
	A RAID10 drive group works well for medium-sized databases or any environment that requires a higher degree of fault tolerance and moderate-to-medium capacity.
Ctrong points	
Strong points	Provides both high data transfer rates and complete data redundancy.
Weak points	Requires twice as many drives as all other RAID levels except in RAID 1 drive groups.
Drives	4 to 32 in multiples of 4 — The maximum number of drives supported by the controller
	(using an even number of drives in each RAID 10 virtual drive in the span).

The following table provides an overview of a RAID10 drive group.

In the following figure, virtual drive 0 is created by distributing data across four drive groups (drive groups 0 through3).



RAID 0

#### RAID 50

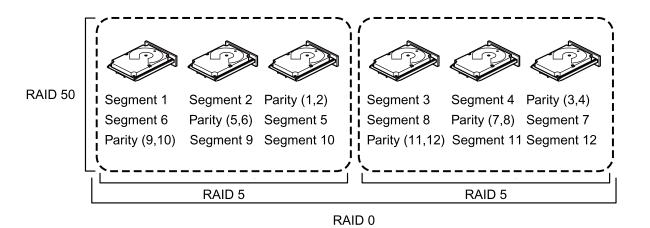
A RAID50 drive group provides the features of both RAID0 and RAID5 drive groups. A RAID50 drive group includes both distributed parity and drive striping across multiple drive groups. A RAID50 drive group is best implemented on two RAID5 drive groups with data striped across both drive groups.

A RAID50 drive group breaks up data into smaller blocks and then stripes the blocks of data to each RAID5 disk set. A RAID5 drive group breaks up data into smaller blocks, calculates parity by performing an exclusive OR operation on the blocks, and then performs write operations to the blocks of data and parity to each drive in the drive group. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set.

A RAID level 50 drive group can support up to eight spans and tolerate up to eight drive failures, though less than total drive capacity is available. Though multiple drive failures can be tolerated, only one drive failure can be tolerated in each RAID 5 level drive group.

The following table provides an overview of a RAID50 drive group.

Uses	Appropriate when used with data that requires high reliability, high request rates, high
	data transfer, and medium-to-large capacity.
	Also used when a virtual drive of greater than 32 drives is needed.
Strong points	Provides high data throughput, data redundancy, and very good performance.
Weak points	Requires two times to eight times as many parity drives as a RAID 5 drive group.
Drives	Eight spans of RAID 5 drive groups that contain 3 to 32 drives each (limited by the
	maximum number of devices supported by the controller)



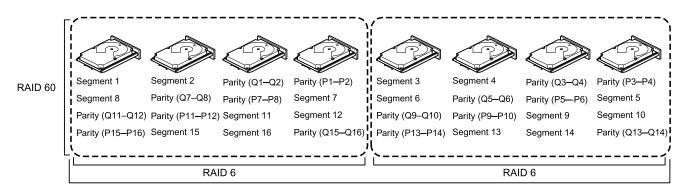
#### RAID 60

A RAID 60 drive group provides the features of both RAID 0 and RAID 6 drive groups, and includes both parity and disk striping across multiple drive groups. A RAID6 drive group supports two independent parity blocks per stripe. A RAID 60 virtual drive can survive the loss of two drives in each of the RAID6 drive group sets without losing data. A RAID60 drive group is best implemented on two RAID6 drive groups with data striped across both drive groups.

A RAID60 drive group breaks up data into smaller blocks and then stripes the blocks of data to each RAID6 disk set. A RAID6 drive group breaks up data into smaller blocks, calculates parity by performing an exclusive-OR operation on the blocks, and then performs write operations to the blocks of data and writes the parity to each drive in the drive group. The size of each block is determined by the stripe size parameter, which is set during the creation of the RAID set.

A RAID60 drive group can support up to 8spans and tolerate up to 16 drive failures, though less than total drive capacity is available. Two drive failures can be tolerated in each RAID 6 level drive group.

Uses	Provides a high level of data protection through the use of a second parity block in each stripe. Use a RAID60 drive group for data that requires a very high level of protection from loss.			
	In the case of a failure of one drive or two drives in a RAID set in a virtual drive, the RAID controller uses the parity blocks to re-create all of the missing information. If two drives in a RAID 6 set in a RAID60 virtual drive fail, two drive Rebuild operations are required, one for each drive. These Rebuild operations can occur at the same time.			
	Use for online customer service that requires fault tolerance. Use for any application that has high read request rates but low write request rates. Also used when a virtual drive of greater than 32 drives is needed.			
Strong points	Provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. Each RAID6 set can survive the loss of two drives or the loss of a drive while another drive is being rebuilt.Provides the highest level of protection against drive failures of all of the RAID levels.			
Weak points	Not well-suited for small block write or random write operations. A RAID 60 virtual drive must generate two sets of parity data for each write operation, which results in a significant decrease in performance during write operations. Drive performance is reduced during a drive Rebuild operation. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.			
	A RAID6 drive group costs more because of the extra capacity required by using two parity blocks per stripe.			
Drives	A minimum of 6.			



Note: Parity is distributed across all drives in the drive group.

RAID 0

# **Technical Specifications**

lodel	NR9681	Network Interface	10/100/1000Mbps Ethernet (RJ-45) x2
ystem S	Embedded Windows	Protocols	IPv4,TCP/IP, HTTP, HTTPS, UPnP, RTSP/RTP/RTCP, SMTP, FTP, DHCP, NTP, DNS, DDNS, IP Filter
PU	Intel Core i5	Power	,,,
lash	64G SATA DOM	Power Input	Redundant Power 100~220V AC
AM	8GB	Power Consumption	Max. 740 W
/atchdog ower Restoration	Hardware + Software	LED Indicator LED Indicator	Power, HDD, Net1, Net2, Overheat, Power fail
torage	System Restart Automatically after Power Recovery	Mechanic	Power, HDD, Netr, Netz, Overheat, Power fail
DD Devices	Hot-Swappable Tray x8	Form Factor	2U Rackmount
DD Max. Capacity	6TB x8	Operation Buttons	Power, Reset
isk Management	Create, Format and Remove Disk	Dimensions	89 (H) x 437 (W) x 648 (D) mm
ideo & Audio	RAID 0, 1, 5, 6, 10	Weight	27 kg (without HDD) 5'C ~ 35'C (41'F ~ 95'F)
ideo & Audio ideo Output	HDMI x1, Display Port x1, VGA x1, DVI x1	Operating Temperature Humidity	0 ~ 95%
	HDMI: 4096x2304	General	
esolution	DP: 3200×2000	Safety Certifications	CE, LVD, FCC, VCCI, C-Tick, UL
raphics Decoder	VGA/DVI: 1920x1200 Hardware decoding	Warranty	36 months
Taphies Decoder	H.265/H.264:	Client PC Requirements	Missess & Windows 0, 7 Mister VD
	2560x1920 @ 30 fps (2-CH)	Operating System	Microsoft Windows 8, 7, Vista, XP Microsoft Windows Server 2012, 2008, 2003, 2000
ecoding Capacity	1920x1080 @ 120 fps (8-CH) 1280x720 @ 240 fps (16-CH)	CPU	Intel Celeron or above
	1280x720 @ 480 fps (32-CH)	Memory	2 GB or above
	1280x720 @ 480 fps (64-CH)	Ethenet	10/100Mbps
amera Position	Change the viewcell position on the Live View screens	Display Resolution	1024x768 pixels or above
xternal Interface		Web Browser Software AP	Internet Explorer 11/10/9 (32 bit) Installation Wizard 2, Shepherd, VAST
SB Interface	USB 2.0 x4 USB 3.0 x2	Mobile/Tablet App	iViewer (iOS/Android)
	Microphone audio jack Input x1	Accessories	
udio	3.5 Line input audio jack x1	Others	Power Cord, Quick Installation Guide, 8x H.D.D. Tray, 1x USB
etwork	3.5 Line output audio jack x1		Mouse
oftware Information	•		
ecord		Camera Event	Motion, DI/O, Video Lost/Restore, PIR, Tampering, Temperat
laximum Channel	64	Camera Status	IR, Line Crossing Detection, Loitering Detection, Field Detect
ecord Throughput (MB)	512 Mbps		Connection Status, Recording Status, Recording Error Substation Connection Status
etwork Throughput (MB)	400 Mbps	Substation Storage Status	Substation Connection Status Storage Connection Status, Storage Capacity Status
udio Format	G.711, G.726, AMR, AAC	Station Status	License Status, Network Status, Virtual Memory Status
ideo Format	MJPEG, MPEG4, H.264 AVC, H.264 SVC, H.265		Email, Start Recording, Set DO, GSM Short Message, HTTP &
ideo Resolution	VGA, 1MP, 2MP, 3MP, 5MP & 9MP Camera	Action	Client Notification
ecording Time (sec.)	Pre-Record: 3 ~ 15 Post-Record: 10 ~ 60	Recording Time (sec.)	Max. 30
ecording Stream	Single	Backup	
	Continuous, Schedule, Manual, Event, Activity Adaptive	Manual	USB Dongle (FAT Format)
ecording Mode	Streaming		NAS (SMB & CIFS)
ecording Setting	Recycle (unit: Size or Day)	System	
ecording Path	Local Path or Network Path		Authentication: Basic Account / Windows AD Account User Account: 1024
ecord Video Format	3GP	User Management	User Account Time Limit: No limitation
iveView (Local Display)			User Level: Administrator / Power User / User / Operation / Guest
tream Application	Stream Selection & Auto Stream Size 64-Channel (with Dual Monitors)	Log	Operation, System and Event Log
	64-Channel (with Dual Monitors) Multi Layout Display: 1x1, 2x2, 1+5, 3x3, 1+12, 4x4, 5x5, 1+31,	Date&Time	Sync Server
veView Display	1P+2, 1P+6, 1P+8, 2V, 3V, 4V, 2V+3	Firmware	Manual update
	Single Layout Display, Full Screen Display, Sequential Display	Restore Default	Supported
	Drag & Drop, Remote I/O Control, PiP (Digital Zoom), Instant Replay, De-interlace, Video Display Mode (Aspect Ratio, Hide	Backup/Restore (Configuration)	Supported
	Borders, Keep Top/Down Borders), Fisheye Dewarp (Regular: 10,		Czech, English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Persian,
Ionitor Enhancement	1P, 1R, 103R, 4R; Wall Mount: 1P2R, 1P3R; Ceiling/Floor Mount:	Language	Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Simplified Chinese, Traditional
	2P, 4R Pro, 108R), Video Enhancement (Basic Mode: Brightness, Contrast, Saturation, Hue; Intelligent Mode: Defog, Rain, Snow,	Comoro Internetion	Chinese
	Fire / Smoke)	Camera Intergration	Manual Search
TZ Control	Panel Control & Mouse Click Control	Insert Camera Video (Media) Setting	Manuai, search Compression, Resolution, FPS, Video Quality
TZ Operation	Direction Control, Home, Zoom, Focus, Iris, Preset, Patrol	Audio Setting	Codec, Bitrate
	(Group), Pan, Stop, Speed	PTZ Control	Panel Control & Mouse Click Control
layback (Local Display)	16 Channels		Direction Control, Home, Zoom, Focus, Iris, Preset, Patrol
	16 Channels Multi Layout Display: Multi Layout Display: 1x1, 2x2, 1+5, 3x3,	PTZ Operation	(Group), Pan, Stop, Speed
layback Display	1+12, 4x4, 2V, 3V, 4V, 2V+3	Motion Detection	Supported
	Single Layout Display, Full Screen Display, Sequential Display	ONVIF Core Spec	Version 2.2 or above (By Project)
layback Control	Play, Rewind, Pause, Stop, Next/Previous Video Start, Next/ Previous Frame, 1/8X ~ 64X Speed Control, Bookmark	ONVIF Stream	Video (H.264, MPEG4 & MJPEG) & Audio (G.711, One Way)
	Previous Frame, 1/8X ~ 64X Speed Control, Bookmark Browsing, Date & Time (Fast), Event, Bookmark, Alarm, Log,	ONVIF Recording	Continuous, Schedule, Manual
ideo Search	Timeline, Timeline Scale	ONVIF Control	PTZ Control (Up, Down, Left, Right & Zoom In/Out)
	Drag & Dron, PiP (Digital Zoom), De-interlace, Video Display	ONVIF Discover	Discover the other brand camera through "Insert Camera & Batch Insert"
	Mode (Aspect Ratio, Hide Borders, Keep Top/Down Borders), Fisheye Dewarp (Regular: 10, 1P, 1R, 103R, 4R; Wall Mount:	Device Intergration	insert Camera & Baltin Insert
lonitor Enhancement	1P2R, 1P3R; Ceiling/Floor Mount: 2P, 4R Pro, 108R), Video	UPS	Windows UPS Compatible
	Enhancement (Basic Mode: Brightness, Contrast, Saturation,		VIVOTEK USB Joystick
aanshat	Hue; Intelligent Mode: Defog, Rain, Snow, Fire/Smoke)	Joystick	All Windows® Compatible USB Joystick
napshot ideo Clip Export	JPEG & BMP AVI, 3GP & EXE	I/O Box	Advantech ADAM-6000
iveView (Remote)	THIS SOLVER	Switch	VIVOTEK VivoCam PoE Switch (AW-GEV Series)
iveView Display	32 Channels Multi-Lawart display: Jyl. 2v2. 2v2. 4v4. 5v5. 1v5. 1v12. 1v21		
lonitor Enhancement	Multi Layout display: 1x1, 2x2, 3x3, 4x4, 5x5, 1+5, 1+12, 1+31 Drag & Drop, Image Freeze, Audio Control, Remote I/O Control,	Dimensions	
	Event Notification, Bookmark, Fisheye Dewarp (10, 1P, 1R)		
TZ Control	Panel Control		
TZ Operation napshot	Direction Control, Home, Zoom, Preset JPEG		
layback (Remote)		8 <u>9 m</u> m	648 mm
	1 Channel		<b>*</b>
layback Display	Multi Layout display: 1x1		
	Regular (Play, Pause, Stop), Speed Control, Timeline, Timeline		4
avback Control	Scale		
ayback Control			
layback Control Ionitor Enhancement	Drag & Drop, Audio Control, PiP Control, Fisheye Dewarp (10,		
lonitor Enhancement	Drag & Drop, Audio Control, PiP Control, Fisheye Dewarp (10, 1P, 1R)		437 mm
	Drag & Drop, Audio Control, PiP Control, Fisheye Dewarp (10,		

#### VIVOTEK INC.

All specifications are subject to change without notice. Copyright © VIVOTEK INC. All rights reserved. Ver. 6

6F, No.192, Lien-Cheng Rd., Chung-Ho, New Taipei City, 235, Taiwan, R.O.C. T: +886-2-82455282 F: +886-2-82455532 E: sales@vivotek.com W: www.vivotek.com

### **VAST Server and Client Components**

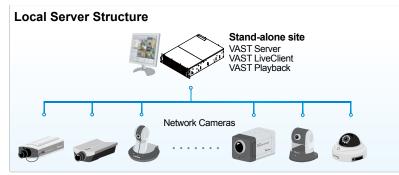
There are four components in VAST: one server component--VAST Server, three client components--VAST LiveClient, VAST Playback, and VAST Matrix.

**VAST Server** provides a centralized management site for video recording. **VAST LiveClient** is a client program for the user to login and modify the server's configuration, edit the server's recording storage, schedules and many other functions on the server; **VAST Playback** is another client program for the user to log in and browse the recorded video database and video clips related to specific events on the server.

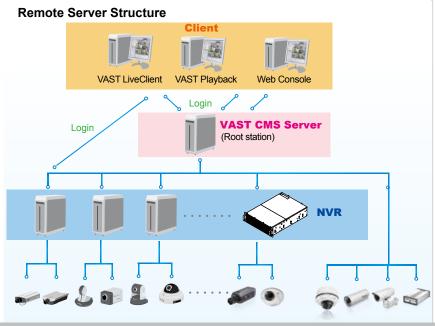
## **Usage Scenario**

The powerful management scalability of VAST makes it suitable for managing small- to large-scale structures.

For users that manage only a few cameras, we recommend installing the client and server components on the same computer. A host with all of the three components installed is recognized as a stand-alone site. All the functions can be simultaneously performed on one single site.



For users who manage large-scale surveillance deployments, please plan the hierarchical structure first. Then you can start to add cameras to each station and connect these sub-stations to the root station. The whole hierarchical management system is thus constructed.



Please refer to page 268 for Logical Tree configuration, which allows for a flexible and useoriented privilege control.

# **Technical Specifications**

Version	1.13
General	
Max. Number of Cameras*	Unlimited
Max. Number of Servers*	Unlimited
Max. Number of Clients	Unlimited
Support OS	Windows 10, 8, 7, Vista, XP Windows Server 2012, 2008, 2003, 2000
Support Web Browser	Internet Explorer 11/10/9
Mobile Support	iViewer (iOS/Android)
Virtual Matrix Support*	VAST Matrix
Devices Pack	.vdp File Update

\*Please refer to System Requirements Page (http://www.vivotek.com/vast/#system)

#### LiveView (Local Display)

· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Max. Channel	128-Channel (with Dual Monitors)
Layout	Multi Layout Display: 1x1, 2x2, 1+5, 3x3, 1+12, 4x4, 5x5, 1+31, 8x8, 1P+2, 1P+6, 1P+8, 2V, 3V, 4V, 2V+3 Single Layout Display, Full Screen Display, Sequential Display, Layout Rotate
Stream Application	Stream Selection & Auto Stream Size
View Application	Drag & Drop Remote I/O Control PiP (Digital Zoom) Instant Replay De-interlace Video Display Mode (Aspect Ratio, Hide Borders, Keep Top/Down Borders)
Fisheye Dewarp Mode	Fisheye Display Mode: Regular: 10, 1P, 1R, 103R, 4R Wall Mount: 1P2R, 1P3R Ceiling/Floor Mount: 2P, 4R Pro, 108R
Playback	
Max. Channel	16 Channels
Layout	Multi Layout Display: 1x1, 2x2, 1+5, 3x3, 1+12, 4x4, 2V, 3V, 4V, 2V+3 Single Layout Display, Full Screen Display, Sequential Display
Playback Mode	Asynchronous & Synchronous
Playback Control	Play, Rewind, Pause, Stop, Next/Previous Video Start, Next/Previous Frame, 1/8X ~ 64X Speed Control, Bookmark
Search Mode	Browsing, Date & Time (Fast), Event, Bookmark, Alarm, Log, Timeline, Timeline Scale
Video	
Video Format	MJPEG, MPEG4, H.264 AVC, H.264 SVC, H.265
Video Resolution	Up to 9 Megapixels
Video Enhancement	Basic Mode: Brightness, Contrast, Saturation, Hue Intelligent Mode: Defog, Rain, Snow, Fire/ Smoke
Audio	
Audio Format	G.711, G.726, AMR, AAC
Audio Capability	Two-way Audio

Audio Control	Mute, Broadcasting & Sound Play
Record	
Recording Time (sec.)	Pre-Record: 3-15, Post-Record: 10-60
Recording Stream Type	Unicast
Recording Stream	Single/Multiple
Recording Mode	Continuous, Schedule, Manual, Event, Activity Adaptive Streaming
Recording Setting	Recycle (Unit: Size or Day)
Recording File Format	3GP
External Storage Recording	NAS (SMB & CIFS)
Alarm Management	
Alarm Period (sec.)	Max. 30
Alarm Filter	Name, Time, Source, Event Type, State
Alarm Setting	LiveView Alarm Notification: Fixed & Popup Alert Sound
Schedule Type	Continuous, Schedule, Manual
Camera Event	Motion, DI/O, Video Lost/Restore, PIR, Tampering, Temperature, IR, PPTZ, Line Crossing Detection, Loitering Detection, Field Detection, Audio detection, SD Card life Expectancy Detection, Shock Detection, ONVIF Motion Event, ONVIF DI/ O, ONVIF Video Lost/Restore
Camera Status	Connection Status, Recording Status, Recording Error
Substation	Substation Connection Status, Substation DI/DO Trigger* * Support for VIVOTEK's ND Series NVR
Storage Status	Storage Connection Status, Storage Capacity Status
Station Status	License Status, Network Status, Virtual Memory Status
External Devices Event	DI/O (With I/O Box)
Action	Email, Start Recording, Move to preset location, Set DO, GSM Short Message, HTTP & Client notification
Alarm State for Management	New, Assigned, In Progress, Resolved, Closed, Later, Reject, Ignore
Alarm Result Export	.csv File
eMap	
Source	Import Picture
Device	Camera, External DI/O, Substation camera, Substation DI/DO* * Support for VIVOTEK's ND Series NVR
Marked	Add, Remove, Direction Control, PTZ Control & Indicator LiveView
Event Notification	Event Icon Light Flash, Show Live Streaming on E-map
PTZ	
PTZ/ePTZ Control	Panel Control & Mouse Click Control
PTZ/ePTZ Operation	Direction Control, Home, Zoom, Focus, Iris, Preset, Patrol (Group), Pan, Stop, Speed

## **Technical Specifications**

PTZ Operation Mode	Click to Move & Continuous Move	Basic Setting	User Name, Password & Camera Model Detection
Export			Configuration Protocol: HTTP, HTTPS
Print	Selection Windows & All Windows	Connection Setting	Streaming Protocol: TCP, UDP, HTTP, HTTPS
Snapshot	BMP & JPEG		
Export File	AVI, 3GP & EXE	Video Setting	Video Stream, Compression, Resolution, FPS, Video Quality
Backup		Audio Setting	Compression & Bitrate
Schedule	NAS (SMB & CIFS)	Remote Focus	Manual Focus Adjustment & Full Range
User Management			Scan
Authentication	Basic Account/Windows AD Account	NTP Setting	IP Address (NTP Server or VAST Server) & Updating Interval
User Level	Administrator, Power User, User, Operator & Guest	ONVIF Core Spec	Version 2.2 or above (by Project)
User Control	Permission, Accessible Cameras & Substations	ONVIF Stream	Video (H.264, MPEG4 & MJPEG) & Audio (G.711, One Way)
User Login Time Limitation	By Time & By Day	ONVIF Control	PTZ Control (Up, Down, Left, Right & Zoom In/Out)
User Login Schedule	Weekly Setting	ONVIF Event	Motion Event, DI/DO, Video Lost/Restore
System		ONVIF Discovery	Discover the other brand camera through Insert Camera & Batch Insert
Date & Time	Sync PC	VCA Solution	
Network	DDNS, SMTP, UPnP, Proxy, HTTPS	VCA Solution	
Multicast	Matrix Only	VCA for Surveillance	Motion Detection, Line Crossing
Language	Czech, English, Finnish, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Persian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Simplified	VCA for Business Intelligence	People Counting
Device Integration	Chinese, Traditional Chinese	VCA Event	Line Crossing Detection, Loitering Detection, Field Detection
	VIVOTEK LISP lovetick	*Only Support VIVOTEK C	ameras.
Joystick	VIVOTEK USB Joystick All Windows® Compatible USB Joystick	Advanced Features	
Switch	VIVOTEK AW-GEV Series (VivoCam PoE Switch)		Panoramic PTZ Seamless Recording
I/O Box	Advantech ADAM-6000 Series CHIYU CYT-133SC	VIVOTEK Exclusives	Standard VCA Integration (Line Crossing & Loitering & Field Detection) VCA Counting Solution
<b>Camera Integration</b>			5
Camera Insert	Manual & Search	Failover Redundancy	Support N x M Structure* * Only Support VAST Server
Video Source	VIVOTEK Cameras, ONVIF Cameras, RTSP	Virtual Machine Support	VMware, Parallel, Virtual Box,



All specifications are subject to change without notice. Copyright © VIVOTEK INC. All rights reserved. Ver. 34

6F, No.192, Lien-Cheng Rd., Chung-Ho, New Taipei City, 235, Taiwan, R.O.C. | T: +886-2-82455282 | F: +886-2-82455532 | E: sales@vivotek.com | W: www.vivotek.com

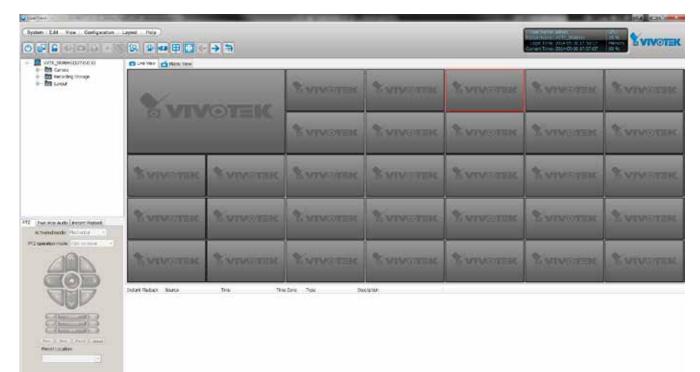
# **VAST Server Functionality**

- Centralized management site for all the logged in clients
- Maintain the configuration of the hierarchical management list
- Hundreds of video recording channels
- Store recorded data onto multiple networked or local hard disks
- Live video for the local/remote LiveClient users
- Retrieval of recorded video for the local/remote Playback users
- Zero latency database recovery
- Multiple stream recording

LiveClient is the management interface to your VAST server. The server-related settings are made via the VAST LiveClient utility. The convenient and intuitive user interface on VAST LiveClient provides access to camera, live monitoring, and recording configurations.

### **VAST LiveClient Functionality**

- Server function control
  - Hierarchical station management
  - User account management
  - Recording storage management
  - Recording schedule management
  - Recorded data backup
  - Event trigger management
- Flexible video live view layout
  - Dual screens for a maximum of 64 or more channels for simultaneous monitoring
  - 1x1, 2V, 1P+2, 3V, 2x2, 4V, 2V+3, 1+5, 1P+6, 3x3, 1P+8, 1+12, 4x4, 5x5, 8x8, 1+31 monitoring layouts (V stands for vertical layout)
  - 1P+2, 1P+6, and 1P+8 Panoramic PTZ layouts
  - Multiple video viewing pages
- Virtual Matrix for video wall display
- Intelligent PiP function
- E-map for overall management
- Network storage for recorded video
- Convenient switching among multiple monitors
- PTZ / E-PTZ operation panel for camera control
- Supports two way audio
- Instant playback for event recording
- Instant replay for immediate playback
- Supports joystick control
- Remote configuration for network cameras



# **VAST Playback Functionality**

- Browse the database of recorded video from the server
- Flexible video playback layout
  - Maximum 16 channels with simultaneous playback
  - 1x1, 2V, 3V, 2x2, 4V, 2V+3, 1+5, 3x3, 1+12, 4x4 video playback layouts
- Supports powerful playback functions
  - 1/8x, 1/4x, 1/2x slow-down playback
  - 2x, 4x, 8x, 16x, 32x, 64x video playback speed
- Intelligent PiP function
- Supports convenient evidence and data exporting
  - Export media files of recorded video
  - Supports snapshot and print out
- Supports convenient switch among multiple monitors
- Search engine:
  - Time search
  - Event search
  - Bookmark search
  - Alarm and Log search

Alarm search result export

- Playback while recording
- Support synchronous/ asynchronous playback



### **Minimum System Requirements**

Before installing the VAST software, please make sure your system meets the following recommended minimum system requirements.

If you would like to install ST7501 Server only, please follow the requirements as below:

Server			
Operating System	Windows Server 2000, 2003, 2008, 207 7, Windows 8	12 / Windows XP Professional, Windows	
Recording Channels (4Mbps per CH)	up to 64 CH (256Mbps throughput)	Up to 128CH (512Mbps throughput)	
CPU	3rd Generation Intel® Core™ i5 Processors or above	3rd Generation Intel® Core™ i7 Processors or above	
RAM	4GB or above - 64CH; 8GB or above -	128CH	
Network Interface Card	Ethernet, 1 Gbit recommended		
Graphics Adapter	DirectX 9 compatible 1GB graphics	card	
Hard Disk Type	Single recording group w/ one HDD SATA, SCSI, SAS (7200 rpm or faster)	Two recording group w/ two HDDs* in NTFS format	

\* Each recording group can receive recordings for 60 channels.

If you would like to install both the server and client programs, please follow the requirements as below:

#### LiveClient and Playback

Operating System		Windows Server 2000, 2003, 2008, 2012 / Windows XP Professional, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8			
Clients	720P,4Mbps, H.264*	8СН	16CH	32CH	
(Display	1080P,4Mbps, H.264**	4CH	10CH	18 CH	
Channels)	1080P,4Mbps, H.265	2CH	5CH	9CH	
CPU		3rd Generation Intel® Core™ i3 Processors	3rd Generation Intel® Core™ i5 Processors	3rd Generation Intel® Core™ i7 Processors	
RAM		2 GB or above	4GB or above	4GB or above	
Network Interface Card		Ethernet, 1Gbit recommended			
Graphics Adapter		DirectX 9 compatible 1GB graphics card			

\* Display requirements of the 3MP fisheye camera is equal to a 720P camera.

\*\* Display requirements of the 5MP fisheye camera is equal to a 1080P camera.

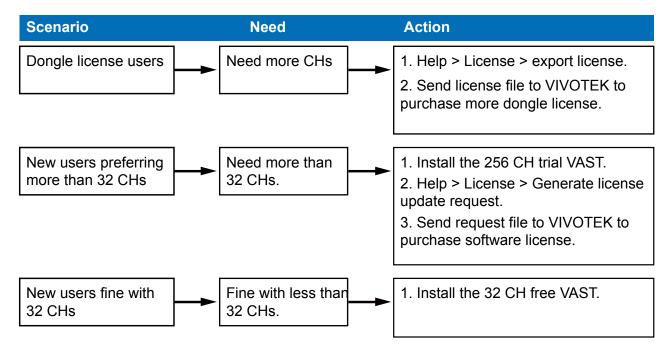
If installing Server and Client on the same PC, the overall loading on the PC is to be evaluated.



- Only users with Administrator privileges can install or use VAST on a Windows Vista system.
- The required hard disk space will depend on the video settings, the number of network cameras and recording group settings. Please add more hard disks if you want to extend the system.
   Below are approximate numbers for a week-long recording. The actual storage space required also depends on imaging parameters, e.g., a complex retail environment that involves many moving objects requires more pixel data to be transmitted over network than a simple environment such as a parking lot.
   32-CH, VGA, about 1 week recording: 750 GB
   64-CH, VGA, about 1 week recording: 2TB x 2
   64-CH, 2-megapixel, about 1 week recording: 2TB x 4

# VAST Software License

To activate the software, refer to the flow chart below:



The VAST software provides 32 free channels. Since revision 1.11, the VAST software is activated using a software license instead of the original hardware dongle.

For users running the previous dongle version, there is no need to upgrade their original license. If they need the license for more channels, They can export their license file, and purchase more dongle licenses.

For users who require more than 32 channels, they can install the 256 channel trial version first, and go to **Help** > **License** page, and click on **Generate License Update Request.** Send the request back to VIVOTEK to purchase more channel licenses.

System	Purchased 320	VIVOTEK Used D (Free: 17/32)	Other brand Used 1	Unused 319
				1
				Hide <<
	Purchased	VIVOTEK Used	Other brand Used	Unused
VVTK_Station1	20	0 (Free: 4/32)	0	20
VVTK.	300	0 (Free: 13/32)	1	299
6		. 81		

When you purchased and received the official software license, use the **Import License** function to activate the official license.

When importing purchased licenses, you can manally select which station/license file to update, or click the **Auto Dispatch** button and let system decide the distribution of license updates especially when there are substations under a managing VAST server.

Before the Auto Dispatch function is available, license has to be individually updated on every substations.

## **Reminders for VAST Software License**

#### Limitations:

1. The Batch import/export function applies when a managing VAST server needs to collect and update the licensing information from subordinate VAST substations and itself. An enterprise may have a central management server and several VAST instances running in branch offices. In that case, the substations will be listed on the device list, and may not be displayed on a hierarchical structure.

The Batch import/export function is accessed through the **Help** > **License** menu on LiveClient.

	Name	IP address	Version	Type	Path		
	VVTIC Station1	192.168.6.205	1.11.0.1	SWLkense			
- C	VV/TK	192.168.40.66	1.10.0.8	KeyDongle			
1	111	192.168.40.1	1.10.0.8	Trial			
Π.	000	192.168.40.37					

- 2. The batch download/import function only takes effect on a VAST instance running on server, not on the Linux-based NVR.
- 3. The trial channels on VAST substations will not be available for use on a managing VAST server (one that manages multiple substations).
- 4. If you access a VAST deployment via a web console, the license related information will not be available.
- 5. In this revision, an identical software license applies to both VIVOTEK and other-brand cameras (ONVIF). You do not need to activate two different kinds of software licenses.
- 6. The Batch export update of the current license profile is supported.
- 7. The licensing mechanism does not apply to machines running Virtualized OSes (VMWare, VirtualBox, Hyper-V, Parallels), either through an upgrade or generating software license on a new installation.
- 8. If VAST is removed and then re-installed, the number of licensed channels remains intact.
- 9. If users plan to integrate the software licenses from previous dongle licenses, problems may occur if users changed the exported license file name.

- 10. The VAST rev. 1.11 supports 32 free channels, and trial licenses for up to 256 channels. Note that the unused trial licenses in a VAST substation will not be available for a managing VAST server. The 32 free licenses will be available for a stand-alone VAST server only.
- 11. The software license verifies its availability on a machine by checking the computer's main components, e.g., GPU or memory. If a VAST server has several of its main components replaced, the software license may become invalid. Note that users can only change 2 components on a substation (server components - CPU/Memory/Graphics card/Network card/Main board).
- 12. For an older VAST installation containing a VAST substation licensed through the dongle, the 32 free channels will be automatically added to the total number of licensed channels. One substation comes with 32 free channels. The added number of licensed channels will become available for the managing VAST server.

## **VAST Installation**

# Installing the VAST Software (This is in case you need to re-install the software)

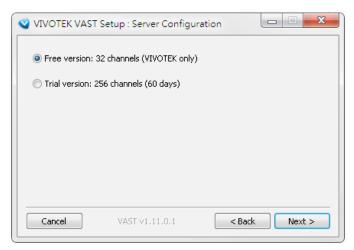
1. Run **VAST\_Setup.exe** on your computer. Select the displayed language. Click **I ACCEPT** the License Agreement and specify a location to install the program.

Installer Language	VIVOTEK VAST Setup: License Agreement
Please select the language of the installer	Please read this license agreement carefully before installing.
English   OK Cancel	End-User License Agreement
VIVOTEK VAST Setup: Installation Folder	OR CLICKING THE BUTTON MARKED "I AGREE" OR "YES" + Cancel VAST v1.11.0.1 I Agree
Space required: 528.3MB	
Space available: 560.8GB	
Cancel VAST v1.11.0.1 < Back Next >	

- 2. Select the items you want to install, then click **Next** to continue.
- If you want to install both VAST Server component and Client components, please follow the steps below to install the database.

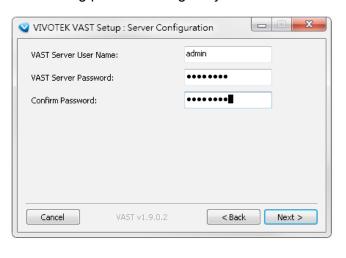
onent nents

- 3. You can install the free 32 CH version, or, select the Trial 256 CH version, then click **Next** to continue.
- The trial version will expire after 60 days. You can then contact VIVOTEK's sales representatives to purchase the official software license to continue using the software.



In the LiveClient window, you can go to **Help** > **License**, and click on **Generate License Update Request**. You can send the request file to VIVOTEK's sales representatives to facilitate the purchase process.

4. Assign a **username** and **password** for the VAST Server and click **Next** to continue. A strong password is recommended using a minimum of 8 characters, in upper/lower case, and special characters. Resetting passwords regularly is also recommended.





Please record the user name and password for login later.



Once you have created a user account for a VAST station, you can login to VAST Server from any computer over the network through the LiveClient and Playback utilities.

5. An SQL Lite database is automatically installed on your server. In order to avoid conflicts among different databases, we suggest you remove the original database from your computer.

Usually, you do not need to change the Station Listen Port and RTSP port for streaming video. If necessary, e.g., when the port has been occupied by other applications, change the port number.

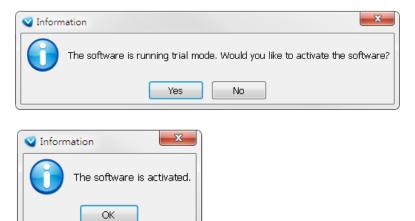
Specify a file recording path on your server. Multiple recording groups can be created, and if you have more than 32 channels, it is recommended to assign a recording path on a different hard drive or RAID volume disk other than your system drive. Click **Install** to continue the process.

VIVOTEK VAST Setup : Server Configuration 🛛 🗖 🖄			
Station Name:		VVTK_Station1	
Station Listen Port	:	3454	
RTSP Port:		4543	
Default Recording Path:		E:\recording	
Cancel	VAST v1.11.0.1	< Back	Install

The installation process should be completed within several minutes. Shortcuts will be created on your desktop. Double-click on the shortcut to start using the software.

VIVOTEK VAST S	etup: Installing			x
Installing the V	AST Server			
Output folder: C:\Progra Delete file: C:\Progra Delete file: C:\Progra Delete file: C:\Progra Output folder: C:\Pr Extract: instdrv.exe	ogram Files (x86)\VIVO1	EK Inc\VAST\Serv Inc\VAST\Server\ Inc\VAST\Server\ Inc\VAST\Server\ EK Inc\VAST\Tool	rer Trial.dat TrialHint.dat SubstationHi	•
Cancel	VAST v1.11.0.1	< Back	Close	

If you installed the trial version, you will be prompted to activate the trial license. Click **Yes** to start using the trial version.



## **VAST Server**

## Activating the VAST Server

VAST Server is a service program that will run automatically when your VAST station starts. Users can also deselect the Auto launch option at windows startup on the VAST Service Control program tray. The program tray icon can be located on Windows tool bar.

## How to Configure the Server

Please follow the steps below to configure the VAST Server:

- 1. Find a local/remote computer that has installed VAST LiveClient.
- 2. Activate VAST LiveClient and login to the target VAST Server.
- 3. Configure the server using the VAST LiveClient user interface.

## How to Stop/Reboot the Server

Please follow the steps below to stop/reboot the server:

1. Click on the VAST Service Control program tray icon in the toolbar.



2. There are 3 options: Start Service, Stop Service, and Restart Service. It's selectable by a right-click on the Service Control program tray icon.

Open VAST Service Control
Start Service
Stop Service
Restart Service
Exit

## VAST LiveClient Configuration

## Activating the VAST LiveClient and Logging in to a VAST Server

VAST LiveClient allows you to monitor live video from cameras managed by the VAST Server; it is also the main user interface for server function control.

After installing the VAST LiveClient program, please follow the steps below to activate VAST LiveClient:

- 1. Run the VAST LiveClient program.
- 2. A Login window will pop up. Enter the information as shown below:
  - If you want to login to a remote VAST Server, enter the IP Address, User Name, Password and the **Communication Port** of the target server correctly. Click **Login** to log in to the target server.
  - If you want to login to a local host that is running VAST Server, check the Login local station checkbox, then the local IP Address will be displayed automatically. Enter the User Name, Password, and Communication Port of the local server for login. Click Login to login to the target server.

🔍 VAST LiveClient 🛛 💦			VAST LiveClie	nt 🗾
Log in local station			🗷 Log in local sta	ation
Address:	192.168.6.117 👻		Address:	127.0.0.1
Authentication:	Basic Account		Authentication:	Basic Account
User Name:	admin		User Name:	admin
Password:	••••		Password:	•••••
Port:	3443 🚔 🔽 Use SSL		Port:	3443 🚔 🛿 Use SSL
Proxy Settings			Proxy Settings	]
Log in	Cancel Hide <<		Log in	Cancel Hide <<

Please refer to page 154 for how to enable and configure Windows AD accounts.

3. The VAST LiveClient monitoring window will prompt.

If your network environment needs	to set up proxy, click <b>More &gt;&gt;</b> to extend the login window, then click <b>Proxy</b> nter related information to link to your proxy server.
VAST LiveClient	🛛 🛛 🖓 Proxy Settings
Log in local station	Enable Proxy
Address: 192.168.6.117	
Hadress.	Addross

Address:	192.168.6.117 🔹	Address:	
Authentication:	Basic Account		
User Name:	admin	Port:	80
Password:	•	User Name:	
Port:	3443 🔮 🔽 Use SSL	Password:	
Proxy Settings			OK Cancel
Log in	Cancel Hide <<		

Available functions of the VAST LiveClient program will be enabled according to the role of your login account. For more details about the privileges of the user account, please refer to How to Manage User Accounts on page 151.

If you use LiveClient to access a remote VAST server, you can use the SSL login for secure connection.

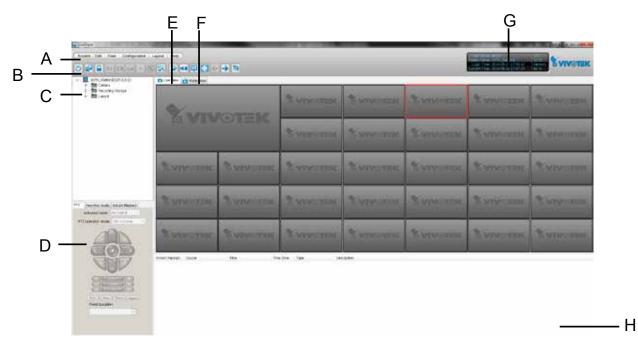
To prevent network layer attack, the management session between a VAST LiveClient and server can be encrypted using the HTTPS connection. HTTPS (Hypertext Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer) encrypts the traffic between web browsers and servers.

When starting the LiveClient, click the More button, and select the **Use SSL** checkbox.

VAST LiveClient				
Log in local station				
Address:	192.168.6.117 👻			
Authentication:	Basic Account 👻			
User Name:	admin			
Password:	•			
Log in	Cancel More >>			

💙 VAST LiveClie	ent 🛛 🖾			
Log in local station				
Address:	192.168.6.117 -			
Authentication:	Basic Account 👻			
User Name:	admin			
Password:	•			
Port:	3443 🚔 🗹 Use SSL			
Deres Cattings	л — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — —			
Proxy Settings				
Log in Cancel Hide <<				
Log in				

## **VAST LiveClient User Interface**



- A. Menu barB. Quick access barC. Hierarchical management treeD. Camera control panel (PTZ / Two way audio / Instant Playback control panel)E. Live view windowF. Matrix view windowG. Status panelH. Alarm window

#### Menu Bar

System Edit View Configuration Layout Help			
Menu Item	Drop-down Options		
System	Lock / Enable Click On Image (Disable Click On Image) / Language / Second View / E-map / Launch Playback / Logout / Exit		
Edit	Manually Begin Recording (Stop Manual Recording) / Snapshot / Print / Record to EXE (3GP, AVI) / Snapshot Zoomed Image / Print Zoomed Image / Find		
View	Logical Tree view/ Device Tree view/ PTZ Panel / Two Way Audio Panel / Instant Playback Panel / Alarm Window / Full Screen / Minimize / Matrix View		
Configuration	Camera Management (Insert Camera / Update Camera / Delete Cameras / Batch Insert Cameras / Camera Configuration) / Station Management / Logical Tree View management / IO Box Management / User Management / Association Management / Alarm Management / Virtual Matrix Management (Matrix Management / Matrix View Settings) / Station Settings (General Settings / Network Settings / Recording Storage Settings / Recording Schedule Settings / Scheduled Backup Settings / Server Settings / Relay Settings) / Client Settings (Snapshot Settings / Recording Settings / View Settings / General Settings / Joystick Settings / Proxy Settings / PiP Settings) / Video Enhancement (Basic Image Adjustment / Defog)		
Layout	Start Rotating (Stop Rotating) / Save to / Delete / Choose		
Help	About / License		

## **Status Panel**

User Name: admin	CPU
Station Name: VVTK_Station1	35 %
Login Time: 2014-04-22 10:23:09	Memory
Current Time: 2014-04-22 11:14:54	61 %

#### User Name

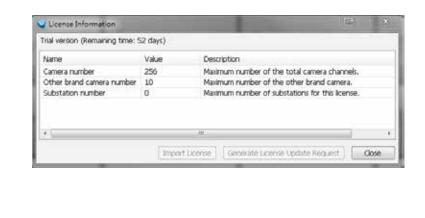
Station Name (IP Address) Login Time (yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss) Current Time (yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss)

## **Help Panel**

The Help panel provides software revision information and the access to the associated iViewer software in either the iOS or Android version. You can also click on the License button to review the number of cameras and manageable substations.

If necessary, you may also use the Import License button to activate the functionality you separately purchased or generate a license request.





#### **Device Pack Update**

A Device Pack consists of information of new VIVOTEK cameras or the updated information for previous models, such as various configurations including resolutions, FPS, DI/DO, etc. For example, some panels, such as the PTZ panel, may not be available for a new PTZ camera. Your VAST server might not recognize the features of the latest VIVOTEK cameras. With the Device Pack, you can configure and implement the latest VIVOTEK models without the need to upgrade the entire VAST software to acquire the associated information. Please visit: http://www.vivotek.com/web/product/productdetail.aspx?Model=VAST. For configurations not specified in the device pack, you can still open a web console with individual cameras to change their configuration.

You can consult VIVOTEK's technical support for the latest Device Pack [CSV files (\*.csv)], and use the Update... button in the Help window to replenish camera information. The update information will be displayed, and the update process is completed almost immediately.

Old version: 1.0.2 New version: 1.0.3		evice Pack Update	•	×
	Ready for update.	Old version:	1.0.2	
Ready for undate		New version:	1.0.3	
Ready for update.		Ready for update	<b>.</b>	

C		▙●▓▆▓₩
lcon	Function	Description
٢	Exit	Exit the system
	Logout	Log out from the current station
	Lock	Click to Lock the system for security concerns (
	Volume	Adjust the audio volume of the current video (
	Snapshot	Capture pictures from the focus live video cell
	Print	Print out the pictures of focus live view window or all live video cells
•	Record to Media	Record media in EXE/3GP/AVI format (
	Alert Sound	Play sound when an event triggers
<b>B</b> ,	Switch Screen	Switch the current window to another screen
*	Adjust SVC Level	Dynamically adjust the SVC control over frame rates
152	Remove All Connections	Remove all live videos from the live view window
₿	Layout	Change the layout of the live view window
X	Full Screen	Maximize the live video cell
<b>←</b>	Page Up	Switch to the previous live view page
>	Page Down	Switch to the next live view page
1	Start / Stop Rotating	Start or stop live view layout rotating
. Or		

### **Quick Access Bar**

Some buttons will be disabled if the selected devices do not support the corresponding functions.

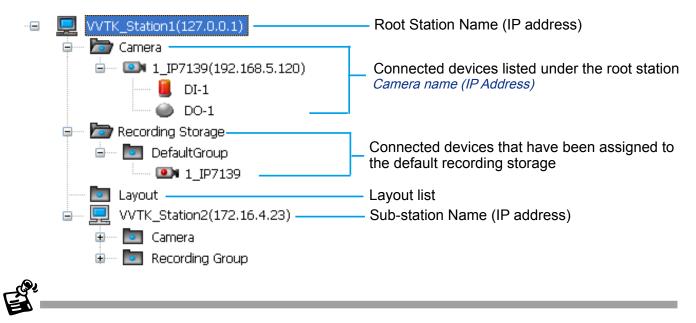
## Live Video Monitoring Window

The "VIVOTEK" logo is displayed where no camera has been assigned to a video cell. The red frame ( ) represents the current selection.



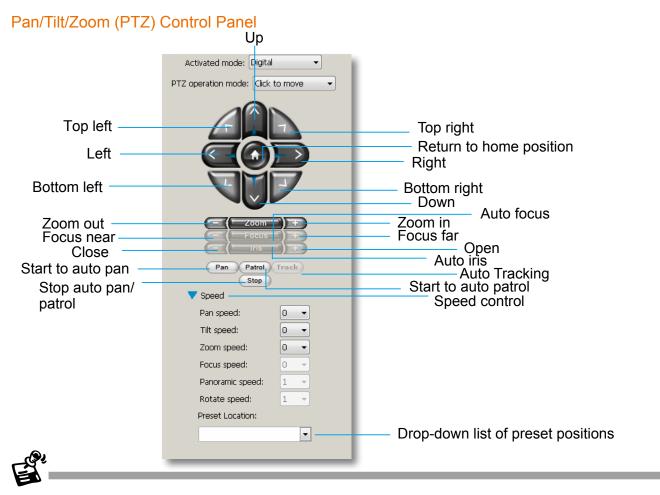
Video Cell -

## **Hierarchical Management Tree**



By default, the I/O device connection status display is disabled. You can turn up the display by visiting Configuration > Client settings > General settings > Keep detecting camera DI/DO status.

Icon	Description
<u> </u>	A station (The host that's installed with VAST Server)
	A station (The host that's installed with ST7501 Server)
💷 / 💷	VIVOTEK fixed network camera (or ONVIF cameras) Red dot signifies that the camera is recording.
墨 / 墨	VIVOTEK PTZ network camera Red dot signifies that the camera is recording.
i 💽 🖉	VIVOTEK dome network camera Red dot signifies that the camera is recording.
😍 ر 🌏	VIVOTEK fisheye network camera Red dot indicates that the camera is recording.
🔜 ا 🔜	VIVOTEK video server Red dot signifies that the video server is recording.
📕 ı 🛄	Digital input on / off
🥌 ı 🌰	Digital output on / off
	A layout of the live monitoring window
<b>X</b>	A station that's not able to be connected currently.
<b>&gt;</b>	A device that's not able to be connected currently.



### **Camera Control Panel**

- There are two types of PTZ control: Digital (E-PTZ for megapixel cameras) and Mechanical (PTZ cameras or fixed cameras with camera control via RS-485). If the connected cameras support PTZ/E-PTZ function, the PTZ option(s) will appear on the drop-down list. For detailed camera control settings, please refer to the user's manual that came with VIVOTEK network camera.
- Click System > Enable Click On Image to use the mouse for the control of the PTZ and E-PTZ functions in the video cells for linked cameras. An icon will appear in the video cell as shown below.

System Edit	View C	1_FD8161
Loc <u>k</u> Enable Click On Im Language	Ctrl+L age	8
Second ⊻iew <u>E</u> -Map Launch <u>P</u> layback Logou <u>t</u> Exit		

• You can control the PTZ function through joystick as well. For more information regarding to the joystick configuration, please refer to instructions on page 246.

2010/08/03 AM 11:25:23

VIVOTEK's latest SD8xxx speed dome series supports the **Continuous Move** control. The **"Click to move"** enables one movement by every mouse click on the PTZ buttons.

When Continuous Move is enabled from the PTZ panel, you can click and hold down the mouse button on an arrow key to command the camera to continue moving to that direction. The move will stop when you release the mouse button. Also, if the pan/tilt/zoom/focus speed is configurable for a PTZ camera, you can use the **Speed** button to display the speed options: pan, tilt, zoom, focus, panoramic, and rotate speeds.

For fisheye cameras, two more options will be available: Panoramic speed and Rotate speed. These two options apply to the onscreen control for the Panoramic and Regional views.



In addition to the PTZ panel, the following hot key combinations are also available:

Ctrl + NumPad (PTZ control)			
Up	Ctrl + 8		
Left	Ctrl + 4		
Home	Ctrl + 5		
Right	Ctrl + 6		
Down	Ctrl + 2		
Focus (Far - Near)	Ctrl + 1	Ctrl + 3	
Zoom (Out - In)	Ctrl + 7	Ctrl + 9	
Pan	Ctrl + /		
Stop	Ctrl + *		
Patrol	Ctrl + -		

Preset locations (pre- configured by users)	Ctrl + 0~9 (number keys above the alphabetic keys)
Full screen	Ctrl + F
Single view	Ctrl + V
Previous layout page	Alt + PageUP
Next layout page	Alt + PageDown
First layout page	Alt + Home
Last layout page	Alt + End
Snapshot	Ctrl + S
Stop alarm	Ctrl + A
Mute audio from current	Ctrl + M
stream	
Start/ Stop rotation	Ctrl + O

#### Two Way Audio Control Panel

The two way audio function allows the user to remotely communicate with people nearby the network camera.

	Talk Panel	Selected device that can use the two way audio function
Click to talk ——	Click to play sound from the came	era Remove all cameras from the Talk Panel
	Client Settings Sound File :	Select sound from the file list
	C:\Program Files\Vivotek Inc\S1	<ul> <li>Click to play the selected sound on the client's side</li> </ul>
e.	Click to adjust volume	

- For detailed information about **How to Use the Talk Panel**, please refer to page 217.
- Only cameras that come with the two way audio function can be added to the Talk Panel.

#### Language Selection

VAST currently supports multi-lingual user interfaces including: English, Česky, Deutsch, Español, Farsi, Français, Italiano, 日本語, Português, Русский, 簡体中文, 繁體中文. If you want to select another language for the interface, please click **System > Language** on the menu bar to select the desired language. Please note that if you want to change the language option, a message will prompt to remind you to restart the system.

vstem Edit View Co	infiguration Layout H
Lock Enable Click On Image	
Language Second View E-Map Launch Playback Launch VCA Report Log out Exit	◆ Cesky Deutsch ✓ English Español Juj Juagi Français baliano 日本語 Português Pyccosek 常年大 繁禧中六 Uier Defined



*If you want to use "User Defined" language, please prepare images and language strings, and upload the files to the following folders:* 

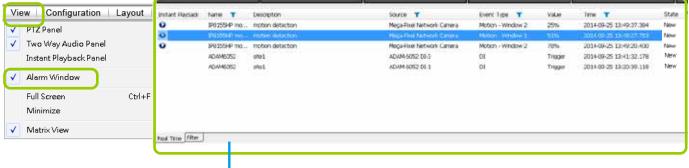
...\VAST\Client\LiveClient\language\zz\_UD (language string) ...\VAST\Client\LiveClient\limage (images)

#### **Alarm Window**



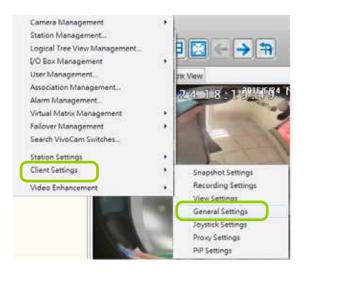
- Only the alarm-related messages will be displayed in this window. An Alarm is a configuration consisting of triggers and reactions set to activate during a specific period of time. The Alarm-related settings is configured in **Configuration > Alarm management**. See page 162 for more information.
- For the event messages of the overall system operation, please refer to the Playback > Log viewer.
- If a VAST server is reset, the Alarms will disappear from the Alarm window. You can go to the Playback utility and use the **Alarm search** function to retrieve the past events.

Click **View > Alarm Window** to open a window showing the real-time information for event triggers. If you want to hide this window, deselect this option on the menu bar.



Event Window

The default Alarm window is set to be fixed on the bottom of the LiveClient. If you want to change the Alarm window as a popup page, please open the **Configuration > Client Settings > General Settings** window to switch the display modes.



General Settings	
System Settings	
Automatically log in after logging in to operating s	ystem
🛄 Automatically display in full screen after login	
🕼 Auto add newly-inserted camera to video cell	
Retrieve RTSP stream on specified port: 4543	141
Connect substation streaming via relay	
Keep detecting DI/DO status	
Sort camera by name	
Alarm Settings	
Enable ive alarm notification	
Enable alert sound(s)	
Z Enable E-Map popup window	
Alarm window mode: # Fixed	
D Popup	
Rotation Settings	
Enable rotation after login	
Rotate the page every 10	ond(s) (3 ~ 999)
Display Settings	
Maximum number of view cells 64 -	
🖓 Enable auto stream see: Quality first 🔹	
Enable de-interlace function	
Enable Instant Replay on video cell	
Default replay length: 30 seconds -	
Local streaming buffer time: 0 [‡] miliseco	nd(s) (0 ~ 10000)

The Event Type field in the Alarm window shows the event category and another field Value displays the percentage of motion in the detection window. You can go to the Configuration setting page of the connected device to set the percentage.



#### Alarm Filter

On the Alarm panel, a list of alarms will be displayed. Click on the attributes with a funnel icon.

Instant Playback	Name 🝸	Description	Source 🔻	Event Type 🏾 🍸	Value	Time 🝸	State 🝸
0	SD DI		SD8161 DI-2	DI	Trigger	2015-07-31 11:50:36.426	New
<b>O</b>	SD DI		SD8161 DI-2	DI	Trigger	2015-07-31 11:50:24.722	New
<b>O</b>	SD DI		SD8161 DI-2	DI	Trigger	2015-07-31 11:50:13.750	New

The Alarm Filter window will prompt. Use the Name, Time selector, and the State checkboxes in the Source and Event Type panes to specify what kinds of alarms will be displayed.

💙 Alarm Filter	Station of the second	×
General Name:	Source	Event Type Category Gamera Events
State       New     Assigned       In Progress     Resolved       Closed     Later       Reject     Ignore	e Camera	Camera Status     Substation Connection St     Storage Status     Status     Station Status     External Device Events
Time Start Time: 2015/ 7/31 ▼ 10:56:32 ↓ End Time: 2015/ 7/31 ▼ 11:56:32 ↓		
		• III •
		Apply Cancel

For example, you can set up a filter to display the alarms with a name associated with a specific camera, such as "bullet on the corridor." The name of the alarm is configured in **Configuration** > **Alarm** management on page 162.

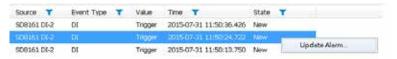
💙 New Alarm			×
General >>	Trigger >> Action	n >> Schedule	>> Detail
✓ Enable this a ✓ Enable live r			
Name:			
Description:		*	
Trigger Period:	5 (sec) 0 —	30	
	Back	lext Finish	Cancel

Use the Filter tab at the bottom of the Alarm window to display a different sorted result.

0		IP8155HP mo	motion detection
0		IP8152V-3	ddddd
Real Time	Filter		

#### Alarm State

Left-click to select an alarm, and then right-click to display the **Update Alarm** button.



You can change the alarm state from the pull-down menu. For example, if someone has already been sent to check out the situation, for example, an intruder broke in through a window, you can select the Assigned status. A 1024 bytes decription can be added into the alarm Note for

Alarm Information	٨	Jarm Handling	
Name: *50.00 Description: Source: *508161.05-2 Event Type: *00 Value: *Trigger Time: *2015-07-31.11:50:36.426		tatie: New   New  De Progress  Resolved  Cosed  Later  Reject  Bgnore	
	*	Update	Gore

future reference.

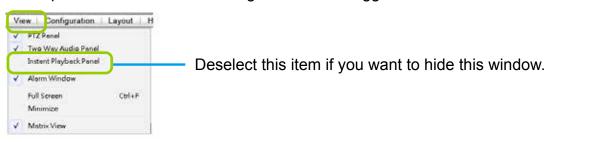
If an alarm is proved as a false alarm, the alarm can be designated as Ignore or Resolved, and so on.

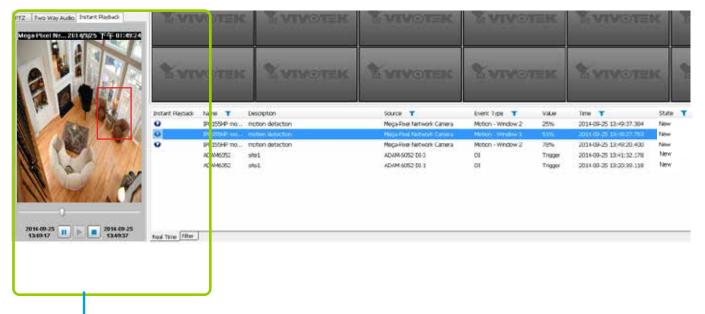
The different alarm states can also be used as the filtering conditions in the Alarm filter. Single or multiple states can be selected in the filter. For example, to display the Resolved alarms only, use the Resolved state as the filter.

92 - User's Manual

## **Instant Playback**

Check **View > Instant Playback** to open the window on the panel. The entries listed in the Event panel are the short recordings made from triggered events.





Instant Playback Window with a slide bar, play, pause, and stop function

The recorded media that was triggered by an event will be indicated with a playable 👽 icon.

You can **double-click** an event on the list to playback the recorded video. Each event contains a video clip of 20 seconds in length. (The default recording data of an event is 20 seconds. For more information about event recording, please refer to page 188.)

#### **Instant Replay**

If a camera is currently recording to the VAST server, then a Replay button will be available at the lower left corner of its view cell. This allows you to immediately retrieve the video recording in the past few seconds or minutes.

The Instant Replay function enables you to quickly retrieve videos of what has just happened (20 seconds to 15 minutes ago), without the need to open the Playback utility for the past videos.

#### **Prerequisites for Instant Replay:**

- 1. The function is enabled by default, only available on a LiveClient installed on a PC.
- 2. There must be recorded videos of the immediate past. If the video streams from a camera were not recorded, you can not retrieve videos using the Instant Replay function.

### 

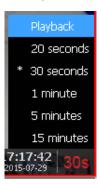
- 1. When using the Instant Replay function and you change the stream number on a video cell, the Instant Replay will be interrupted.
- 2. The Instant Replay will also be interrupted when the time comes for a rotation of Live View pages. For example, if you have multiple Live View pages and you set up a rotation of these pages by every 10 seconds, page swap (rotation) still has a higher priority even if you are viewing the Instant Replay.

#### How to Use:

- 1. On a selected view cell, mouse over to the lower left corner. A Replay icon will appear.
- 2. Click on it to display the Replay control bar. Click on the play button.



3. The default queue length is 30 seconds. You can click on the number on the right to change the queue length.



The Playback option allows you to directly open the Playback utility. A maximized single view window will open. In this single view, previous recording will be played, but, unlike the smaller Instant playback pane, the playback will continue until manually stopped.

This playback mode is not memorized as the norm the next time you use the Instant Replay function.

The queue length configuration stays with the view cell, and it will not go unless you remove and insert the camera again. 4. To stop the Replay and return to the Live View, click on the Return to Live button.



5. On a Replay view cell, you can apply the same Snapshot, Print, Single view and Full screen control as those on a normal view cell. You can also right-click to display the Display Mode and Video Enhancement functions.

Click and drag the playhead to skip or move to a different point in time on the playback.

An active Replay view cell is indicated by the Replay text indicator and the time of occurrence of the current playback. Replay



To change the default Replay settings, open the Configuration > Client Settings > General Settings menu.

Enable auto stream size:	Quality first	•	
🔲 Enable de-interlace funct	tion		
🗹 Enable Instant Replay on	i video cell		
Default replay length:	30 seconds	•	
Local streaming buffer time	e: 0	millisecond(s)	(0 ~ 10000)

## **Audio Control**

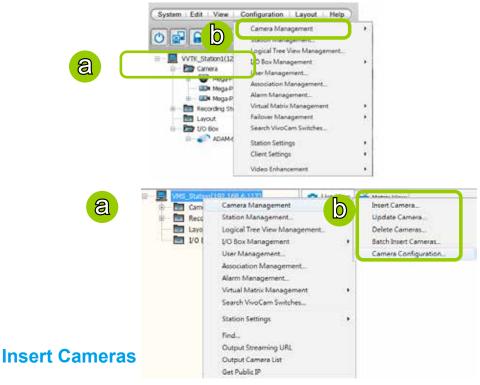


The audio function will be enabled if the device is equipped with an internal or external microphone. For detailed audio control settings, please refer to page 138.

## How to Manage Devices

Please follow the steps below to open the Camera Management window:

- a. Select the station from the hierarchical management tree.
- b. Click **Configuration > Camera Management** on the menu bar (or **right-click** the station, then select **Camera Management**).
- c. Then you can choose to insert, update, delete, or batch insert cameras.



Please follow the steps below to add devices to a station:

- a. Click Configuration > Camera Management > Insert Camera on the menu bar (or right-click the device/station, then select Camera Management > Insert Camera).
- b. The **Camera Management Insert** window will pop up. The device tree managed by the station will be displayed in the left Camera List window.
- c. Enter the **Camera Name**, **IP address** (or you can enter an **IP address** and check **Auto** to get a camera name automatically) and configure the **Connection Settings**.
  - If the camera is on the LAN, you can click Search Camera to detect all VIVOTEK network cameras on the LAN. A Camera List window will pop up and show a list of detected cameras on the LAN. On the top of Camera List window, you can select "List the cameras which are not inserted" or "List all cameras". The items listed below will then change accordingly. You can click Mac, IP Address, Model, HTTP port to sort the items. Then select a camera from the list to insert to the station.
  - The streaming protocol determines how the live video stream is sent from the camera to the local computer. Please refer to the note on the next page for a detailed description of each transmission protocol. Specify the recommended live monitoring stream for the device. If you want to change the live viewing stream, please refer to the next page to update the camera settings. Or you can **right-click** the desired cell, then select a desired stream. Please refer to Dual / Multiple Streams on page 124 for a detailed illustration.
  - Click Detect Model to detect the device. The Model Name and MAC Address of the device will automatically be displayed in the respective fields if the connection is successful.
- d. If you want to make sure you are connected to the target device, click **Connection Test** to preview the live video from the device.

Camera Management for VVTK_Station1	Insert	Concession of the local division of the loca	
Camera Management for VVTK_Station1 Camera List  Comera List  VVTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)  C	Brand: VIVOTEK   Module: -	✓ Auto	23 下午 04:48:01
	User Name: Configuration Protocol: HTTP Streaming Protocol: TCP Initial C Stream: 1		1
	earch Cameras List the cameras which are not inser List all cameras		nsert Close
	mera List AC Address D-02-D1-15-78-40 192.168 D-02-D1-81-73-03 192.168		HTTP Port 80 80

- If you want to use "HTTPS Port", please enable the HTTPs settings on the configuration page of the Network Camera first.
- The characteristics of each protocol are shown in the following table:

Protocol	Description
UDP	UDP uses a simple transmission model without implicit hand-shaking dialogues for guaranteeing reliability, ordering, or data integrity. Thus, UDP provides an unreliable service and data grams may arrive out of order, appear duplicated, or go missing without notice. This protocol allows for almost real-time audio and video streams. However, network packets may be lost due to network burst traffic and images may be obscured. Activate UDP connection when occasions require time-sensitive responses and video quality is less important.
ТСР	TCP provides the service of exchanging data reliably directly between two network hosts, whereas IP handles addressing and routing message across one or more networks. In particular, TCP provides reliable, ordered delivery of a stream of bytes from a program on one computer to another program on another computer. This protocol guarantees the delivery of streaming data and thus provides better video quality. The downside with this protocol is that the real-time effect is worse than that with UDP for a narrower bandwidth.
HTTP	HTTP is a networking protocol for distributed, collaborative, hypermedia information systems. It's the foundation of data communication for the World Wide Web. This protocol allows for the same quality as TCP and the users need not open a specific port for streaming under some network environment. Users inside a firewall can utilize this protocol to allow streaming data through.
HTTPS	This protocol enables authentication and encrypted communication over SSL (Secure Socket Layer), which protects streaming data transmission over the Internet on higer security level.

#### e. Configure Recording Settings:

Connection Settings	Recording Settings	
-Basic Settings		
Recording Stream:	1	Enable seamless recording
Pre-event Time:	10 🚔 seconds(3-15)	
Post-event Time:	10 🚔 seconds(10-60)	
Activity Adaptive	e Stream	

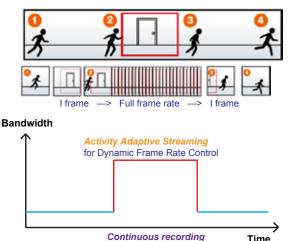
- Recording Stream: By default, the stream source of the recording stream is stream 1, if you want to change it later on, please refer to the previous page to update the camera settings (Update Camera).
- Pre-event time: Enter a number to decide how much time to record before an event is triggered.
- Post-event time: Enter a number to decide the duration of recording after an event is triggered.

Connection Setting Recording Settings	Pre-event time Post-event time
Recording Stream: 1	pre- 10 sec. 10 sec.
Pre-event Time: seconds(3-15)	Trigger Activation
Post-event Time: 10 🚔 seconds(10-60)	
Activity Adaptive Stream	
Active	

For example: If both the Pre-event time and Post-event time are set to 10 seconds, a total of 20 seconds of video will be recorded if an event is triggered. This function is supported by the buffer area on a VAST server.

Note the following with the associated configuration:

- The Pre-/Post-event time configuration only applies to event recording.
- The Activity Adaptive Stream (a.k.a., AAS) only applies to the Continuous Recording.



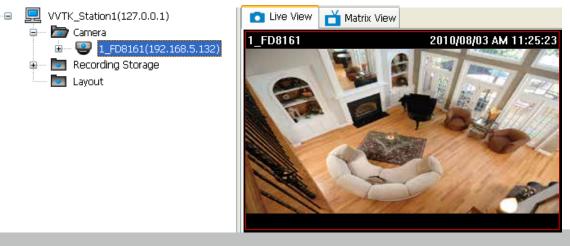
Time

Activity Adaptive Stream (active if possible): Check this item to enable activity adaptive stream recording. For cameras that come with multiple streams features, users can make use of activity adaptive streaming for dynamic frame control.

If you check Activate Activity Adaptive Stream, the VAST server will record full-frame-rate video only when an event is triggered on the camera; otherwise, it will only request the I frame data during normal monitoring, thus effectively save lots of bandwidths and storage.

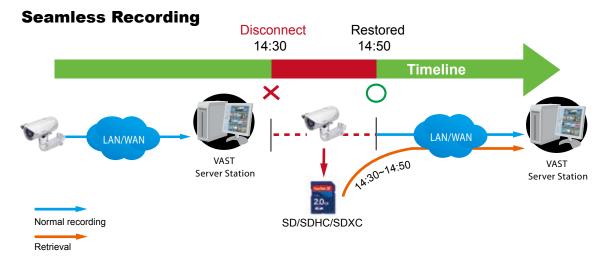
Camera Management for VVTK_Station1 - I	nsert	11		-			
Camera List	Brand:	VIVOTE	:K 💌	]	02:42:	40)	3 下午 04:48:01
h	Module:	-	Ŧ	]	Pause	Clear	
g	Camera Name:			📝 Auto	ed Eack		
Ĭ	Address:	192.168	8.6.175	V Q		THE SHIT	. 140
	Model Name:	IP8162		]			
	MAC Address:	0002D1	157B40	]			
							Connection Test
	Connection Set	tings Re	cording Si	ettings			
	User Name:				Password:		
	Configuration F	rotocol:	HTTP	•	Configuration	Port: 8	30
	Streaming Prot	ocol:	ТСР	•	Channel:	[	1
	Initial Viewing S	Stream:	1	* *			
ſ	Automatically	add came	era into re	ecording st	orage DefaultG	roup	
					h	Inser	t Close

- f. The device will automatically be assigned to the default recording group. Deselect the item if you want to cancel this setting.
- g. You can deselect the "Auto" checkbox behind the **Camera Name** entry, and manually enter a name of your choice, such as "East alley bullet." This name will be used as the folder name for the recorded video files. An index number will still be appended to the folder name. Note that if this name is changed when the recording is taking place, the configuration change will not take effect until the next day.
- h. When all settings are completed, click **Insert** to add the device to the station. The device will be displayed under the Camera List on the left.
- i. To insert additional devices to the station, repeat the above steps.
- j. When completed, click **Close** to exit the camera management window.
- k. Back to the main window, you will find the newly-inserted devices displayed under the station and the live video in the video cell.



#### **Seamless Recording**

Seamless Recording safeguards critical videos in the occurences of network disconnection. In the event of temporary disconnection, video is stored in individual cameras' SD/SDHC/ SDXC card; and once the connection is restored, a VAST server can automatically resumes the recording. More remarkable is that, a VAST server can simultaneously retrieve the time-tagged videos that were temporarily stored on SD/SDHC/SDXC cards. For information about the latest firmware/software revisions that support this feature, please contact your sales representatives or technical support.



The video data retrieved from SD/SDHC/SDXC card also include event-triggered recordings such as pre- or post-event footages, if events were detected during the network outage.

The Seamless Recording feature is enabled when inserting, updating, or batch inserting cameras in the Camera Management window. The firmware/hadware compatibility of this feature is automatically detected, i.e., this feature is not available when a non-compliant camera is attached. If a compatible camera is attached, a checkbox will be available as shown below.

Enable seamless record	ding	⁻ਊ́⁻ Tips:		
Camera Management for VVTK_Station1 Camera Ust	- Tasent  Camera Name: Address: Model Name: MAC Address:	button on page if the	e Detect mo the Insert C e Seamless I checkbox	Camera
	Connection Settings Recording Settings Basic Settings Recording Stream: 1  Recording Stream: 1 Recording S	Brand: Camera Name: Address: Model Name: MAC Address:	VIVOTEK • 192.168.6.207 MS8391-EV 00028391C319	] Auto ] 😯 🔍 ]
	Post-event Time: 10 🗇 seconds(10-60) Activity Adaptive Stream Active if possible Min. Pre-ovent Time: 3 seconds(2-5) PAutomatically add camera into recording storage DefaultGroup			



- When the SD/SDHC/SDXC card storage space is full, cameras will stop recording. When the network conneciton between VAST server and cameras is restored, videos in the SD card will be transmitted back to the VAST server. Note that the videos that were not recorded during the time when the network was disconnected will not be transmitted.
- If the videos on the cameras belong to those that are about to be erased within 24 hours (e.g., for the lack of storage space on a VAST server), those videos will not be retrieved.

#### Limitations:

- Retrieving video fragments from a camera can momentarily double the throughput of normal video streaming.
- Video streams recorded using the MJPEG codec is not supported by Seamless recording.
- Seamless recording can only take place from a camera with 1 video stream recorded to a maximum of 3 VAST servers.

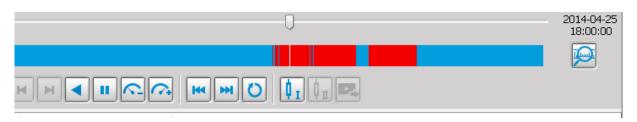
#### **Onscreen Elements for Seamless Recording:**

- The associated icons will appear in the Liveview, popup window on e-Map, and the Matrix view. The status icon appears on the upper right of the view cell.
- Below is the description of the Seamless recording statuses and the indicative icons. Normally the video fragments will be retrieved first, and then the event log:

<b>(</b> )	Currently not recording video from camera, but is retrieving data from camera due to
~	previous disconnection.
$\bigcirc$	Currently not recording video from camera, but is retrieving event log.
۲	Currently recording video to system as well as retrieving data.
0	Currently recording video to system as well as retrieving event log.

After a period of time, the gaps of recording (those blue lines or blocks representing network interruptions during the recording) should be gradually stitched up. It is, however, system integrators' responsibility to build a reliable network. Additional bandwidth should also be available for retrieving fragmented recordings from the camera side.

The VAST checks for the need for retrieving fragmented videos by every one minute. If the retrieval failed due to some network faults, the server will re-try the retrieval tasks later on.



In the Playback utility, you can select the tabbed window on top of the device tree to select "**Seamless Recording Status**." If, after a cable disconnection, you can select to check if the Seamless recording has duly performed a recovery.

$ \land $	-							1-11-2-1020
Layout C	<b>A</b>					The Party Name of Street, or other	10 State	
E						Department of Defail	Curdeor Cornel	
1414 Index Carren	itat inf	tem Zone	Desceptor	Statut	Requests of Acovers	Last Recevery		
	09m 240,74047112223 301,740671	410.00	21 ko .	line for	-1	3107400471730341		
		E de la de	ne cres in in entra	Int for the for the for the for the for the former of t	<sup>1</sup> <u>No. Cons. in </u>	In the two is the intervent of the two is the intervent of the two is two is the two is two		The law is a second with the second secon

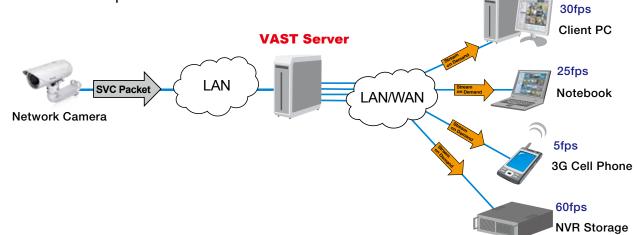
Note that when a cable is disconnected, the Seamless Recording Status may not immediately display a disconnection event. The timeout for a disconnection is 1 minute, and the VAST server and camera will take some time handling the disconnection and re-connection. Even you notice the disconnection on live view, the Seamless Recording Status may take longer than 1 minute to display the current status.

Status	Description
Camera is Disconnected	The connection between server and camera has not been restored.
Standby	Standing by for recovery.
Recovering	Recovering recording data from camera.
Revover failed	Recovery errors occurred, and recovery failed.
Recover successfully	Recovery success.
No Need to Recover	No Need to Recover.

UI Elements	
Item	Description
Start time	Beginning of a disconnection.
End time	The end of a disconnection.
Time Zone	Time zone of the disconnection event.
Description	Length of the disconnection.
Status	The handling status for the disconnection event.
Frequency of Recovery	The attempts made to recover data.
Last Recovery	The time the last attempt was made to recover.

#### **Enable SVC**

If the camera to-be-added supports the latest SVC (Scalable Video Coding) feature, select the SVC checkbox to enable the related control. The SVC feature enables streaming of videos for multiple clients from one single set of layered IP packets. Designed for saving bandwidth and CPU load on client stations, the frame rate of a video stream appearing through a view cell can be individually adjusted. This feature applies when an administrator experiences unstable video streaming due to the lack of network bandwidth, less-than-ideal hardware, or during an occurrence of network problems.



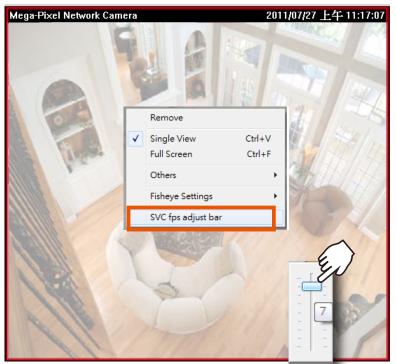
The VAST server (rev. 1.6.1 and later) automatically negotiates with a camera and determines whether a network camera comes with the SVC feature.

To configure the SVC-related feature:

1. When inserting a new camera into your configuration, select the streaming option, usually the stream #1.

Camera Configuration			
Camera List	Video Audio Remote Focus	NTP Settings Panoramic PTZ	
International Statistics (127.0. International Statistics) International	FOV:	Fisheye mode (MAX 15fps)	
🦰 🥁 Mega-Pixel Netwo Mega-Pixel Netwo	Video stream:	Stream 1 🔹	
28x Zoom Speed	Codec type:	H.264	
Mega-Pixel Netwo	Frame size:	MPEG-4 H.264 SVC	
	Maximum frame rate:	JPEĢ	
	Video quality:	Constant bit rate	
4	Copy settings to:	Save Close	

2. Right-click on the view cell of an SVC-enabled camera. Select SVC fps adjust bar.



3. A slide bar will appear above the view cell. Click and drag the slide bar. A numeric indicator will display the current selection. See below for the frame rates represented by the numeric indicator.

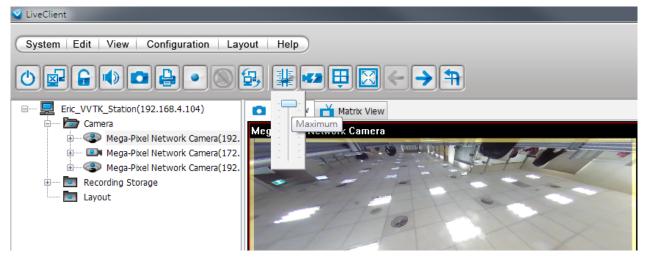
Indicator	Frames per second (fps)	
Maximum	30	
7	26	
6	22	
5	18	
4	12	
3	8	
2	4	
1	1	
Minimum	1/4	



#### NOTE:

The SVC feature only applies to H.264 and MJPEG streams. It is not applicable to MPEG-4 streams. Please refer to Configuration -> Media -> Video for individaul stream settings.

If you have multiple SVC-enabled cameras, you can enable a collective setting via the **Adjust SVC level** button on the tool bar. The frame rate selected here will then apply to all view cells on the VAST LiveClient console.



Please note that the SVC related setting can not take effect while the LiveClient station is running the Layout Rotation. Stop the layout rotation before configuring the SVC function.

While you save your bandwidth for live viewing, you can still record full-frame-rate video by changing the recording setting. For example, you can enable resource-saving SVC on stream #1 and configure stream #2 to be recorded with full details, in terms of frame size, frame rate, and video quality.

Camera Management for EricVAST_Station1	1 - Insert
Camera List	Camera Name: Auto Address: 192.168.4.134 Auto Model Name: IP8352 MAC Address: 0002D1117A3D
	Connection Settings Recording Settings          Basic Settings         Recording Stream:       2         Pre-event Time:       10 $\stackrel{\frown}{\times}$ seconds(3-15)         Post-event Time:       10 $\stackrel{\frown}{\times}$ seconds(10-60)
	Activity Adaptive Stream Active if possible Min. Pre-event Time: 3 seconds(2-5)
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Automatically add camera into recording storage     DefaultGroup     Insert     Close

#### **Streaming URL**

You can enter a camera's IP address to add a camera's RTSP streaming for live view and recording, and playback.

To insert a camera using the URL-like command,

1. Select the camera Brand as "URL."

Camera List	N 15 12-142	
0 - E VH5_Station(127.0.0.1)	Brand: UR, •	
-	Camera Name: 😥 Auto	
	Address: 192.168.4.124 😴 🔼	
	Model Name:	
	URL: Ive.sdp	
	6	Connection Te
	Connection Settings Recording Settings	1110/01/02/02
	User Name: Paseword:	
	Configuration Protocol: HTTP + Configuration Ports 554	<u>n</u>
		51.
	Streaming Protocol: TCP	
	I Automatically add camera into recording storage DefaultGroup	
	Inset	Cose
		Cese

- 2. Enter the camera's IP address.
- 3. Enter the camera's MAC address as printed on the camera label, or one found by the Shepherd utility.
- 4. Enter "554" in the Configuration port.
- 5. Enter "live.sdp" in the URL field, as this is part of the original RTSP streaming command: "rtsp://172.18.204.58:554/live.sdp". If streaming stream #2, enter live2.sdp.

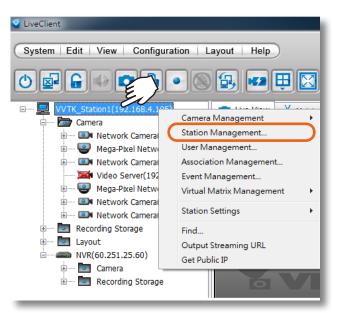
Note that the free 32 channel licenses does not apply when inserting a camera using the URL command. Only the live view, recording, and playback functions are supported if thus connected. All other functions are not supported, such as auto streaming size or changing to another video stream. Camera DI/DO is also not supported.

## Insert NVR (Network Video Recorder)

 Before you can include an NVR system into your current configuration, you should enable the corresponding configuration on a web management console with the NVR system. In Configuration > System > VAST, click on the Enabled checkbox and enter a password for authentication.

	-	×
¢		
-	HTTP Port:	80
<b>A</b>	HTTPS Port:	443
	RTSP port:	554
÷1	CMS & Wiewer:	Allow access
•		This password is only for CMS connection. Niewer login account is the same as NVR.
8		Port: 3454 CMS password:
		Confirm password:
DONS		
Service		
		D.
en.		Apply

2. Return to your VAST management screen. Left-click to select your VAST station on the navigation panel, and then right-click to display and select "Station Management..."



3. The Station Management window will prompt. Enter the **Address**, **Password**, and check if the **Communication Port** match that you set for the NVR. Click on the **List Sub-Station Hierarchy** button.

Station Management for VVTK_Station1	
Station Management for VVTK_Station1          Station Tree for VVTK_Station1	Address: 60.251.25.60 Password: ••• Communication Port: 3454  List Sub-Station Hierarchy Insert Search Hierarchical mathematical ment tree
Delete	Update Close

After a brief delay, the NVR server will be listed in the column. You may also use the **Search** button to locate similar devices if they are reacheable in your local area network.

4. You can then click the **Insert** button to add the NVR server to your configuration. When done, click the **Close** button.

Station Management for VVTK_Station1		
Station Tree for VVTK_Station1	Address: Password:	60.251.25.60
	Communication Port:	3454
Station Management Insert Station Elapsed tin	Hierarchical manageme 25 ne: 0:00:02 Cancel	nt tree 5.60)
Delete		Update Close

5. The NVR will appear in the navigation panel along with its subordinate cameras.

LiveClient								
System   Edit   View   Configuration   L								
□····· 💂 VVTK_Station1(192.168.4.105)								
🖃 🔤 Camera								
International Interna								
표 🐨 🤓 Mega-Pixel Network Camera(192								
Image: Metwork Camera(192.168.4.104								
Video Server(192.168.4.115)								
🖃 🔤 Recording Storage								
🗄 🚥 DefaultGroup								
Layout								
□····· ■ NVR(60.251.25.60)								
🗄 🔽 Camera								
🗄 ····· 🔤 Recording Storage								

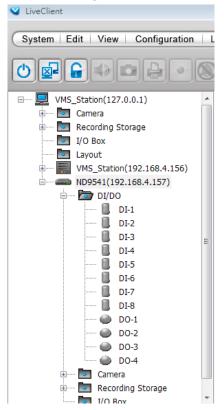
To enable the detection of NVR DI/DO signales,

1. Enter Configuration > Client Settings > General Settings. Select "Keep detecting DI/DO status."

Note that you should restart the VAST console for the configuration to take effect.

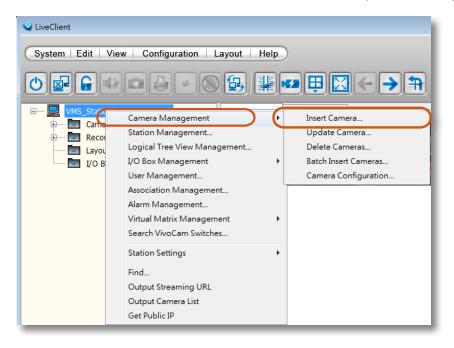
Seneral Settings		
System Settings		
Automatically log in after logging in to op	perating system	
PAutomatically display in full screen after k	ogin	
Ruto add newly-inserted camera to vide	o cell	
Retrieve RTSP stream on specified port:	4543	2 (A) (1) (1) (A) (1) (1) (A) (1)
Connect substation streaming via relay		
V Keep detecting DI/DO status		
Sort camera by name		
Alarm Settings		
2 Enable live alarm notification		
Enable alert sound(s)		
Enable E-Map popup window		
Alarm window mode: @ Fixed		
C Popup		
Rotation Settings		
Enable rotation after login		
Rotate the page every 10	second(s)	(3 ~ 999)
Display Settings		
Maximum number of view cells 64 •		
I Enable auto stream size: Quality first	-	
E Enable de-interlace function		
Enable Instant Replay on video cell		
Default replay length: 30 seconds 🔹		
Local streaming buffer time: 0	milisecond(s)	(0 ~ 10000)
	- AV	( Arrest )
	OK	Cancel

The NVR's DIs and DOs will be listed on the device tree. Note that the DI/DO status is not supported by NVRs running an embedded VAST software.



## **Insert a Video Server**

1. Left-click on your VAST station, and then right-click to display the **Camera Management** command. Let your cursor stay on the command for a second and then move to the **Insert Camera** command. Click on the command to open its configuration window.



2. See below for the steps to insert a Video Server along with its subordinate cameras.

Camera Management for VVTK_Station1 - 3	Insert
Camera List	Camera Name: 2 Auto Address: 192.168.4.115 2 Auto Model Name: VS8401 MAC Address: 00ABCDABCDEF MAC Address: 00ABCDABCDEF
	Connection Settings User Name: root Password: Configuration Protocol: HTTP - Configuration Port: 80 - Streaming Protocol: TCP - Channel: 1 - Initial Viewing Stream: 1 - Market
<	6 Insert Close

- 2-1. You can deselect the **Auto** checkbox to enter a name for the Video Server. If set to Auto and your video server already has a name, that name will be displayed in your device list.
- 2-2. Enter the **Address** of the video server or use the **Search** sutton to open a Search window.
- 2-3. If you enter its address and it is found after you click on the **Detect Model** Subtron, its **Model Name** and **MAC Address** will be listed.
- 2-4. Before you click the Detect button, you should enter the **User Name** and **Password** for access to the video server. You should also confirm the **Configuration Protocol**, **Configuration Port**, **Streaming Protocol**, and the rest of the networking parameters.
- 2-5. You may select or deselect the checkbox in front of the recording storage option or use the pulldown menu to select the default group or a pre-configured storage group.
- You might use the **Connection Test** button to verify if the stream comes from the device you prefer.
- 2-6. Click **Insert** to include the video server to your configuration.

The Video Server should now be listed on the Camera List.

You can also use the **Search** button to poll the local area network for VIVOTEK's devices. You can select to list all cameras or list those that have not been included in your current configuration. Click on a device, and its detailed information will immediately appear in the **Camera Management** 

window on the left. For recording settings, please refer to page 98 as previously described.

	e not inserted		Constant of
al cameras	1		Refresh
		0	
ra List	E	9	
	Address	1000 C (1)	HTTP Port
8-CD-AB-CD-EF	192,168.4.122	V\$8401	80
B-CD-AB-CD-EF	Address E	Model VISCIO1	HTTP Port

# **Update Devices**

Please follow the steps below to update a device via Camera Management window:

- a. Click **Configuration > Camera Management > Update Camera** on the menu bar (or **right-click** the device/station, then select **Camera Management > Update Camera**).
- b. The **Camera Management Update** window will pop up. The device tree managed by the station will be displayed in the left Camera List window.
- c. Select a device from the list you want to update. Its related information will automatically be displayed in the corresponding fields in the Camera Management window. Then you can modify **Connection Settings** and **Recording Settings** of the device.
- d. After modifying the settings, you can click **Connection Test** to preview the live video from the device.
- e. When all settings are completed, click **Update** to enable the settings.

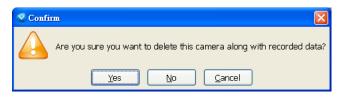
	tion1(127.0.0.1)
	Delete Refresh
	Camera Settings
	□ Camera Management  Insert Camera Update Camera Update Camera
	Output Streaming URL     Opdate Camera     Opdate Camera     Delete Cameras
	Mega- Mega- Mega- Camera Configuration
	Undate 🔤 🔤 🗮 🗮
Camera Management for VVTK_Station1 -	
Camera List	Brand: VIVOTEK 20x Zoom 2014/5/30 上午 11:30:36
C 20x Zoom Mega-Pixel Spe	Module:
Mega-Pixel Network Came	Camera Name: 20x Zoom Mega-f
	Address: 192.168.6.143
	Model Name: SD8363E
	MAC Address: 0002D12150FB
	Speed dome
	Connection Settings Recording Settings
	Connection Settings Recording Settings User Name: Password:
	Configuration Protocol: HTTP  Configuration Port: 80
	Streaming Protocol: UDP  Channel: 1
	Initial Viewing Stream: 1
۰	

# **Delete Devices from the VAST Server**

Delete a device:

**Right-click** the device on the device tree, then select **Delete.** A dialog box will pop up. Click **Yes** to delete the device along with the recorded data; click **No** to delete the device but retain the recorded data; click **Cancel** to cancel the delete action.





- Delete more than one device at a time:
- a. Click **Configuration > Camera Management > Delete Cameras** on the menu bar (or **right-click** the device/station, then select **Camera Management > Delete Cameras**).
- b. The Delete Cameras window will pop up.
- c. Select the devices you want to delete from the list, then click Delete.
- d. A dialog box will pop up. Click **Yes** to delete the device along with the recorded data; click **No** to delete the device but retain the recorded data; click **Cancel** to cancel the delete action.
- e. When completed, click **Close** to exit the **Delete Cameras** window and return to the main window. The deleted device will disappear from the station.





No

Yes

Cancel

# **Batch Insert Devices**

Batch insert is a very useful function that allows user to search, filter, and import a row of devices that are in the same LAN to a VAST station. The basic settings can also be applied to those inserted devices simultaneously, e.g., a common user name and password.

Please follow the steps below to batch insert devices to a station:

- a. Click **Configuration > Camera Management > Batch Insert Cameras** on the menu bar (or **rightclick** the station, then select **Camera Management > Batch Insert Camera**).
- b. The **Batch Insert Cameras** window will pop up. Then click **Search** to open the Search Camera window.
- c. On top of the Camera List window, you can select "List the cameras which are not inserted" or "List all cameras". The items listed below will then change accordingly. You may select ONVIF-compliant cameras as well using the Brand selector.
- d. Use the 4 Filters to narrow down the range of the wanted cameras from the list.
  - IP Range: Type in a range of IP address to narrow down the list; the filter automatically applies after you fill in a correct IP range.

C Bran	Import From File by Address earch Cameras d: VIVOTEK - List the cameras white ist all cameras	ort Model	MAC	Edit Connection Setting Edit Video Settings Status	-	ton Search Specify Address Import From File
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	Specify Address bu Import From File bu Address earch Cameras d: VIVOTEK • List the cameras white List the cameras white List all cameras	ort Model	MAC	Edit Recording Setting Edit Video Settings Status	s -> Insert but	Search Specify Address
Connection Setting User Name:	Import From File but Address earch Cameras d: VIVOTEK • .ist the cameras white .ist all cameras	ort Model	MAC	Edit Video Settings Status		Search Specify Address
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	Address earch Cameras d: VIVOTEK • List the cameras white List all cameras	Port Model	ed	Status		Search Specify Address
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	earch Cameras d: VIVOTEK • List the cameras which List all cameras	ch are not inserte	ed	or#g1#75g - 1		Search Specify Address
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	earch Cameras d: VIVOTEK • List the cameras which List all cameras	ch are not inserte	ed	or#g1#75g - 1		Specify Address
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	d: VIVOTEK			R		
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	d: VIVOTEK			R		
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	d: VIVOTEK			R		VIVOTEK
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	d: VIVOTEK			R		VIVOTEK
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	ist the cameras whit ist all cameras			R	lefresh	VIVOTEK
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	List all cameras			R	efresh	
Camera Name: Connection Setting User Name:	Set following f	filters to narrow d	lown the rand	R	tefresh	
Connection Setting User Name:	Jet Ioliowing I	filters to narrow d	lown the rand			
Connection Setting User Name:	Jet Ioliowing I	filters to narrow d	lown the rand			
User Name:	📃 Address Rar			ge of searched cameras.		
		nge:		~		
Configuration Prot	🗖 Address wit	th prefix:				
	Model with	profiv:				
Streaming Protoco						
Initial Viewing Stre	MAC with p	orefix:				
	# Address	Port	Brand	Model	Rece	ording Storage
	1 192.168.6		SD8363E			the cameras to the recording
	2 192.168.6	5.101 80	FE8173	00-02-D1-81-73-0		-
	3 192.168.6	5.219 80	IP8332	00-02-D1-19-2D-(	02 Defa	aultGroup (3/256 CH) 🔹
						Insert Close

■ IP with prefix: Type in the prefix of the IP address to narrow down the list.

Search Cameras								
	the cameras which are no all cameras	t inserted		<u>R</u> efresh				
-Filters -	Set following filters to r	arrow dov	wn the range					
	☑ Address with prefix:	192.168	3.5.132					
	Mo <u>d</u> el with prefix:							
	<u>M</u> AC with prefix:							
#	Address	Port	Model	MAC				
□ 1	192.168.5.132	80	FD8161	00-02-D1-FD-81-15				

Model with prefix: The user can type in the prefix of the model name or the complete model name of the cameras to narrow down the list.

😴 Search	🛛 Search Cameras 🛛 🔀								
⊂List th ⊙List all	e cameras which are not cameras	: inserted				<u>R</u> efresh			
Filters									
	Set following filters to n	arrow dow	n the ran	ge of sear	rched cameras				
	Address Ra <u>n</u> ge:			~					
	Address with prefix:	192.168	.5.132						
	Model with prefix:	FD8161							
	▲ MAC with prefix:								
#	Address	Port	Model	M	AC				
□ 1	192.168.5.132	80	FD8161	00	-02-D1-FD-81-	-15			

MAC with prefix: You can type in the prefix of the MAC address of the cameras to narrow down the list.

😴 Search	🕈 Search Cameras 🛛 🔀							
	the cameras which are not all cameras	inserted			<u>R</u> efresh			
-Filters -								
	Set following filters to n	arrow dow	n the range o	f searched came	eras.			
	Address Ra <u>ng</u> e:		~					
	Address with prefix:	192,168	.5.132					
	Model with prefix:	FD8161						
	MAC with prefix:	00-02-D	1-FD					
#	Address	Port	Model	MAC				
□ 1	192.168.5.132	80	FD8161	00-02-D1-FD-	81-15			

e. When the list is filtered, you can select the cameras one by one or check **Select All** to add them to the batch insert list. Then click **OK** to finish searching.

Filté	RS .						
		Set following filters to n Address Range:				f searched cameras. 192.168.5	
		Address with prefix:					
		MAC with prefix:					
	1	Address	Port	Model		MAC	
1 2 2	1 2 3	192.168.5.131 192.168.5.132 192.168.5.119	80 80 80	F06133 F08161 (F8132		00-02-01-08-95-3 00-02-01-F0-81-1 00-02-01-32-C3-5	5

f. The selected cameras will be shown on the batch insert camera list with the camera information and the connection status. When you click on a camera, a live view will show up on the right side for you to identify the cameras on the list. If you want to remove a camera from the list, click the trash can icon to delete it.

1	🛛 Ba	tch Inse	ert Cameras				_			_	
ſ	Ins	tructi	on								
				Search button				Edit Conne	tion Settings		
				Specify Address ł	outton	-> Import	: into List ->	Edit Record	ng Settings	-> Ins	ert button
ŀ	æ			Import From File	button			Edit Video :	Settings		
	f								-	b	
ľ		#	Name	Address	Port	Model	MAC	Sta	tus	n	Search
	î,	1	20x Zoom	192.168.6.143	80	SD83	00-02-D1-21	-50-FB OK			
		2	-	192.168.6.101	80	FE8173					Specify Address
	1	3	Mega-Pixe	192.168.6.219	80	IP8332	00-02-D1-19	-2D-02 OK			Import From File
	Q					111				4	
		era Nam	ne: Mega-Pixe	Network Camera							
	Cor	nection	n Settings Rec	ording Settings							
l	Us	er Nam	e:			Passw	ord:				
l	Co	nfigura	tion Protocol:	HTTP -		Config	juration Port:	80	* *		
L	Sti	eaming	g Protocol:	TCP 🔻		Chann	iel:	1			
	Ini	tial Viev	wing Stream:	1							
			-								Recording Storage
											Add the cameras to the recording storage:
									Apply 1		DefaultGroup (3/256 CH)
											(none)
											DefaultGroup (3/256 CH)
										H	Insert Close
-											

- g. At the bottom of the window, there is a field for you to alter the camera settings including Connection Settings and Recording Settings. You can apply the new settings to each camera on the list, or click **Apply to All** to apply the same configurations to all the cameras. For more information about Connection Settings and Recording Settings, please refer to Insert Device on page 96 for detailed information.
- h. Specify host: If you want to add a camera to the list, click Specify Address to directly add a wanted camera. Click Add after filling in the correct information. The camera will be added to the list of the Batch Insert Camera window.
- i. By default, all inserted devices will be applied to the default recording group. Deselect the **Add** checkbox if you do not want to assign the selected devices to the default recording group.
- j. Click Insert when all the settings are done. Cameras will be added.

Specify Address			
<u>A</u> ddress:	192.168.5.131		
Configuration Protocol:	НТТР		
Configuratio <u>n</u> Port:	80		
<u>U</u> ser Name:			
<u>P</u> assword:			
Add			

روي			

When you modify the camera settings, and when the connection information (User Name, Password, Configuration Protocol, Configuration Port, and Streaming Protocol) does not match the current network environment, the camera will be disconnected and the status of the camera will become "Camera cannot be found" as shown below.

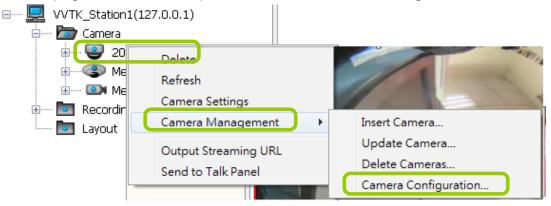
💙 Batch Insert Cameras		and the second	<ul> <li>A second s</li></ul>	
Instruction				
	Search button		Edit Connection Settings	
	Specify Address button	-> Import into List ->	Edit Recording Settings -> In	sert button
	Import From File button		Edit Video Settings	
# Name	Address Port	Model MAC	Status	Search
	192.168.5.132 443	FD8161 00-02-D1-FD		Specify Address
	192.168.5.131443192.168.5.119443	FD8133 00-02-D1-0B IP8132 00-02-D1-32	in a second constant of the first of the fir	
	192.100.0.119	10132 00 02 01 32	camera cannot be round.	Import From File
Camera Name:				
Connection Settings Rec	cording Settings			
User Name:		Password:		
Configuration Protocol:	HTTP -	Configuration Port:	80	
Streaming Protocol:	TCP 🔻	Channel:	1	
Initial Viewing Stream:	1			
				Recording Storage
				Add the cameras to the recording storage:
			Apply to All	DefaultGroup (3/256 CH)
				Insert Close



You can enter a User name and Password and use the Apply to All button to apply this combination to all selected cameras. This way, you do not need to change the user name and password for every individual cameras.

## **Camera Configuration**

The Camera Configuration function group provides immediate access to the video streaming and other settings without the need to open a web console. The function group is accessed by selecting a camera on the device tree, and right-click to select **Camera Management > Camera** Configuration. If you have new VIVOTEK cameras and the VAST server can not recognize their features, see page 84 for how to update camera information using the Device Pack update.



#### FOV (Field of View)

The FOV configuration is available for 5 megapixel cameras (such as IP8372 and IP8172P), which allows you to crop a portion of the image captured by the sensor. The FOV setting applies in the scenario where you do not need all of the video a camera can capture. For example, when shooting a parking lot where the upper half of the image is the sky. Cropping a field of view can help save bandwidth and reduce the requirements for storage space.

Camera Configuration				
Camera List	Video Audio Remote Focus	NTP Settings Panoramic PT2		
UVTK_Station1(127.0.	FOV:	Fisheye mode (MAX 15fps)	-	
Mega-Pixel Netwo Mega-Pixel Netwo	Video stream:	1080P Full HD (MAX 30tps) Stream 1	-	
<ul> <li>Can test test(19)</li> <li>Mega-Pixel Network</li> </ul>	Codec type:	SVC	•	ropping Setting
	Frame size:	760x760	•	obland carried
	Maximum frame rate:	15 fps	•	
	Video quality;	Constant bit rate 🔹 🗧 6 Mbps	-	
	Video quality;	Constant bit rate  • 6 Mbps	•	
	Video quality;	Constant bit rate • 6 Mbps	•	
	Video quality;	Constant bit rate • 6 Mbps		
	Video quality;	Constant bit rate • 6 Mbps	-	
	Video quality:	Constant bit rate • 6 Mbps		
	Video quality:	Constant bit rate • 6 Mbps		A CONTRACTOR
2 m j +	Video quality:	Constant bit rate   6 Mbps  - Save Clo		

#### Video mode

For cameras having resource limitations such as having a lower frame rate when supporting dual streams, or lower frame rate when using the Rotation mode, its video mode is automatically displayed in the Video window.

Close

Save

#### Video

This tabbed window privides access to the selection of the live view stream, its compression codec, frame size, max. frame rate, and video quality. Note that the **Constant Bit Rate** methodology can be used to ensure that the size of video stream does not exceed a preferred threshold, regardless of the complexity or the changes of pixels in the image. You should use a maximum of 1080P as **frame size** and 6Mbps as **constant bit rate** for video streams managed by this system.

Camera Configuration		
amera List	Video Audio Remote Focus NTP Setti	ings Panoramic PT7
⊡·····	Video stream:	Stream 1
Mega-Pixel Network		Joccan 2
····· 💷 Mega-Pixel Network	Codec type:	SVC
····· 🔀 Mega-Pixel Network	Frame size:	1056x1056
Mega-Pixel Network		1056x1056
Mega-Pixel Network	Maximum frame rate:	15 fps
	Video quality:	Constant bit rate
< <u> </u>	Copy settings to:	▼ Save Close

If your camera supports the **Smart Stream** function, the related options will be available with the Video quality. Note that only the **Auto mode** option will be available.

Auto: When set to Auto, only the moving objects and the areas around them will be displayed with the Foreground quality. The rest of the screen will be displayed with the Background (lower)

quality.

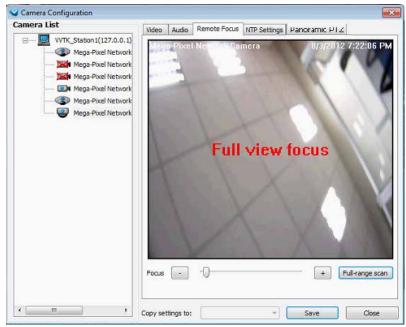
Camera Configuration			×
Camera List	Video Audio Remote Focus	s NTP Settings Panoramic PTZ	
UVTK_Station1(127.0.	Video stream:	Stream 1	•
Mega-Pixel Netwo	Codec type:	H.264	-
Mega-Pixel Netwo	Frame size:	1920x1080	•
	Maximum frame rate:	30 fps	•
	Video quality:	Smart stream (auto r 💌	
	Fixe	ed quality iood art stream (auto mode)	-
		Background quality: Medium	•
		Maximum bit rate: 40Mbps	-
۰ III ا	Copy settings to:		Ŧ
		Save	Ilose

## Audio

If audio feed is preferred, configure the audio codec type, sampling bit rate, and operating mode in here.

#### Remote Focus

For cameras supporting the remote focus feature, such as the FD8362E that comes with a motorized lens, this window provides finetune buttons and full-range scan fucntion to help reach the best image focus.



#### NTP Settings

If cameras' real time clocks are set to be synchronized with a time server, enter the NTP server's address or domain name and specify an Updating interval. If you select the "Synchronize camera time with system automatically" checkbox during the initial setup, the NTP server IP will be the VAST server's IP.

amera List =- 🛄 VVTK_Station1(127.0.	Video Audo Remote Focus	NTP Settings Panoramic PTZ	K.
Maga-Pixel Netwo Maga-Pixel Netwo Maga-Pixel Netwo	NTP server: Updating interval:	192.168.6.135 One day	

Always remember to **Save** your configuration before leaving this window. You can also use the "**Copy** settings to" button below to duplicate your current settings to adjacent cameras.

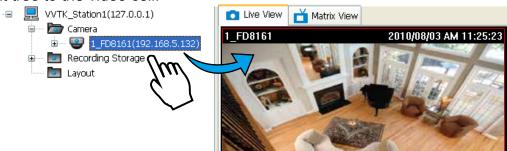
## Panoramic PTZ

Please refer to **Appendix B** Panoramic PTZ configuration on page 339 or the Panoramic PTZ Installation Guide for more information.

Camera Configuration	
Camera List	Video Audio Remote Focus NTP Settings Panoramic PTZ
VVTK_Station1(127.0.	✓ Enable panoramic PTZ
Mega-Pixel Network Camera(	Enable auto tracking
4	Copy settings to: Save Close

## **View Live Videos**

The server will automatically add a newly-inserted device to the video cell for live viewing. You also can **double-click** the target device or **drag-and-drop** the target device from the hierarchical management tree to the video cell.



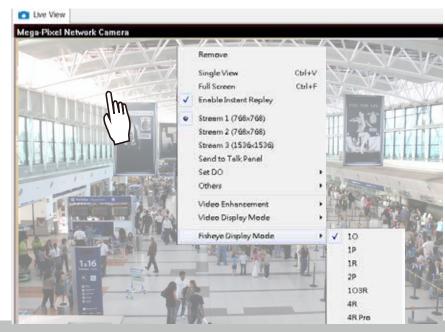
#### Dual / Multiple Streams

For dual-stream devices, you can **right-click** on the focused cell to select stream 1 or stream 2. For multiple-stream devices, you can select from stream 1 ~ stream 4.



### **Fisheye Display Modes**

By default, a circular view is displayed when a fisheye camera is successfully connected. To display Regional, Panoramic, or the combination of different views, **right-click** on a fisheye camera's live view to display the associated commands. The display modes available are: 10 (Original), 1P (Panoramic), 1R (Regional), 2P (2 Panoramic), 1O3R (1 Original & 3 Regional), 4R (Quad Regional), 1O8R (1 Original & 8 Regional), and 4R Pro (4 Proactive) modes.



Fisheye Display Modes: below are conceptual drawings for different display modes.

**10** (Single Original) Display mode:

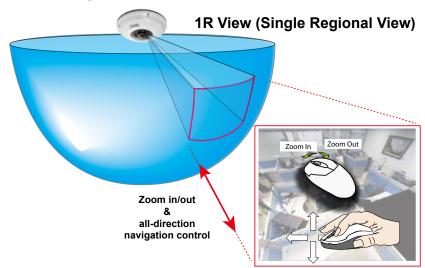
An **Original** oval view covers the hemisphere taken by the fisheye lens.

## 10 View (Original View)

180° Hemispheric

**1R** (Single Regional) Display mode:

A **Regional** view crops a portion of the hemisphere as a region of interest. You can zoom in or out or move the view area elsewhere from on the regional view.



A Regional view is dewarped, by correcting images from the distorted oval view to a rectangular and visually proportional image.

**1P** (Single **Panoramic**) Display mode:

With image correction algorithms in firmware, the hemispheric image is transformed into a rectilinear stripe in the 1P display mode. Viewers can use the PTZ panel or simply use mouse control to quickly move through the 360° panoramic view.

Note that the 1P view is apt for an overview, the Zoom in/out function does not apply in this mode.



1P (Panoramic) Mode Screen Control

2P (2 Panoramic) Display mode:

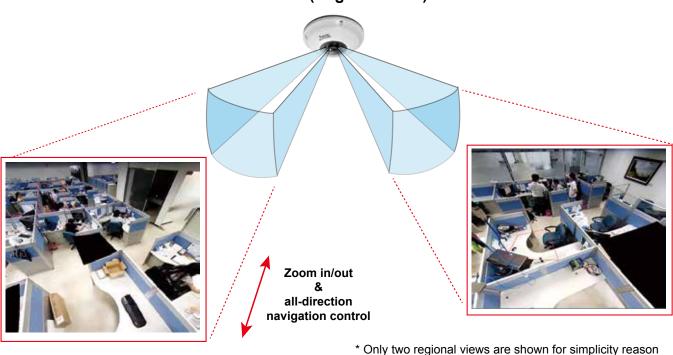
Two dewarped rectangular views are placed one on top of another each showing 180 degree of panoramic view. The 2P view looks like the upper view shows the front of hemisphere, and the lower view the rear half of the hemisphere.

### 2P (Panoramic) Mode Screen Control



**103R** (One Original & 3 Regional) Display mode:

Fisheye cameras also support the display of multiple regional views taken from within the same hemisphere, and they can be displayed with or without an Original view in its view cell.



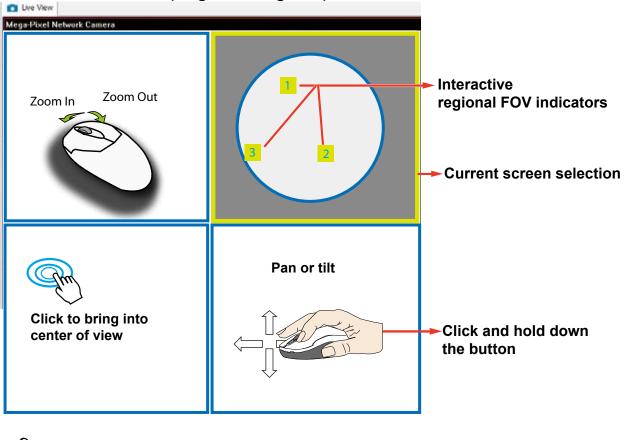
### **3R View (Regional View)**

### PTZ Mouse Control

The "Mount type" setting also determines the display modes available to your display modes. Please refer to fisheye camera's User Manual for more information.

A highly versatile mouse control is implemented with fisheye cameras. The same control takes effect on a browser management session, on the LiveClient utility, and even on a video playback screen. See the drawing below for how it works.

You can click and hold down the left mouse button to quickly swipe through the field of view, change the view angle, or use the mouse wheel to zoom in/out on a region of interest. However, the PTZ mouse control is only available in the **"R" (Regional) mode**. In the **Panoramic mode**, you can only scroll horizontally across the 180° or 360° panoramic view.



## 103R (Original & Regional) Mode Screen Control

The various display modes require the support of D3D technologies by your display card on the LiveClient or Playback station. Most off-the-shelf display cards today support this feature.

The onscreen mouse control is very agile. Therefore, use the PTZ panel for more delicate moves in a field of view. **Pan** and **Patrol** moves are also supported if you have configured preset PTZ positions in the camera's firmware. Note that the Pan move takes place in the Panoramic and Regional views, while the Patrol function through preset positions applies only in the Regional views.

Below are the conceptual drawings for other display modes. The available display modes can different with different mount types:

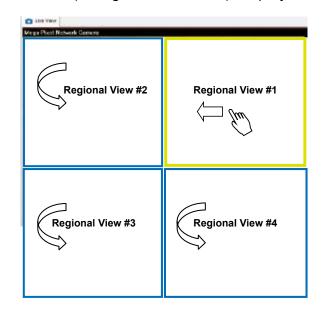
Regular: 10, 1P, 1R, 103R, 4R.

Wall mount: 1P2R, 1P3R.

For more information, you can refer to fisheye camera's user documents.

4R (Quad Regional) Display mode:

💼 Low Vern Wege Fixed Network Conserv	
Regional View #2	Regional View #1
Regional View #3	Regional View #4



**108R** (One Original & 8 Regional) Display mode:

Mega-Pixel Network Camera		1/09/01 05:41:35
Regional View #3	Regional View #2	Regional View #1
Regional View #4	Original View	Regional View #8
Regional View #5	Regional View #6	Regional View #7

4RPro (4 Regional Proactive) Display mode:

#### Refresh

Right-click the device, then click Refresh, the camera information will be refreshed from the server.

- 🔜 VVTK_Station1(127.	0.0.1)	
B- Dia Recording Sto.	Delete Refresh Camera Settings	
Layout	Camera Management	×
	Output Streaming URL Send to Talk Panel	
	send to Talk Panel	

#### **Streaming Server**

**Right-click** the station or the device and click **Output Streaming URL**. A .txt file with streaming URL will pop up. Then you can use this URL to link to the live streaming through QuickTime Player.

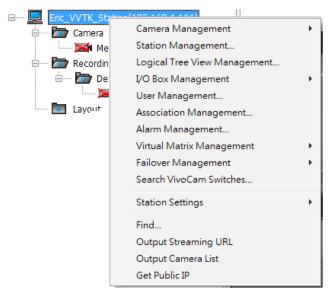
	Camera Management Station Management Logical Tree View Management L/D Box Management. User Management. Association Management Alarm Monagement Virtual Matrix Management Failover Management Search VivoCam Switches Station Settings Find	•	Image: Station of the station of th	Delete Refresh Camera Settings Camera Management Output Streaming URL Send to Talk Panel
6	Output Streaming URL	-		
	Get Public IP			

#### Output Camera List

This command produces a text file containing cameras' brand name, IP address, and HTTP port information. The camera list file can later be used for Batch Insert function, Import from File.

#### Get Public IP

If your access to Internet is via PPPoE, this function will display the public IP provided by your service provider. If your access to Internet is via a router, please consult your network administrator or consult your ISP for a valid public IP.



## **Camera Settings**

Left-click to select a camera, Right-click, and then click Camera Settings to open a brower's session to the camera.

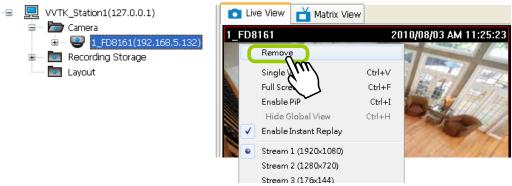


You must have an IE browser rev. 7.0 or above for opening a management session.

Herne	>System
System	System Host name: Wiveless Metwork Camera
Security	Hostname     Wireless fetwork camers     Turn of the LED indicator
Network	System Time
DONS	IF Keep current date and time.
Audio and indec	C Synchronize with computer time
Mation detection	C Manual C Automatic
Carnera control	
Maintenance	Di and DO Digital input. The active state is LOW
[ Advanced mode ]	Digital output The active state is Grounded
	28.0

# **Remove Live Video from the Video Monitoring Window**

There are two ways to remove a live video from the video cell: Method 1. **Right-click** the video cell and select **Remove**.



Method 2. Drag-and-drop the live view from the video cell to the hierarchical management tree window.



If you want to remove all live videos from the video cells, please click 🕢 on the menu bar.



# How to Change the VAST LiveClient Layout

# Changing the Layout of the Live Video Monitoring Window

VIVOTEK VAST LiveClient supports up to 32-CH simultaneous video viewing on a single monitor and allows you to change the layout of the live video monitoring window based on the number of inserted devices.

## Switch Video Channels

To move a video channel to another empty video cell, drag-and-drop the view to the target video cell.



To switch two different channels, **drag-and-drop** one view to the other, then the two different channels will be switched to the opposite.



## Configure Layout Mode

Click the **Layout** button 🗐 on the quick access bar. Select a desired layout mode, and the layout window will be changed accordingly. Below we illustrate 15 types of layout modes and the corresponding page numbers:

			88	ҝѯ҇҇ѾҀ→Ҭ
	Layout mode	Description	No. of Video page	_
	1 x 1		32	1
	2V		16	
P-PTZ modes	1P+2		20	More than 1 video page;
F-FIZ modes —	3V		11	rotation function is enabled
	2 x 2		8	
	4V		8	
	2V+3		7	
	1 + 5	E-E	4	
_	1P+6	E	8	
	3 x 3		3	
	1P+8		6	
	1 + 12		2	
	4 x 4		2	
	5 x 5		1	Only 1 video page; rotation function is disabled
	1 + 31		1	

### Configure Layout Mode

Click the **Layout** button 🗐 on the quick access bar. Select a desired layout mode, and the layout window will be changed accordingly. Below we illustrate 11 types of layout modes and the corresponding page numbers:

The 1P+2, 1P+6, and 1P+8 layouts apply exclusively to the Panoramic PTZ configurations. Please refer to page 325, **Appendix B Panoramic PTZ Configuration**, for details.

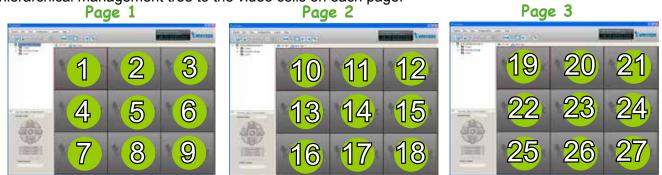
Normally, a Panoramic PTZ layout will consist of 1 fisheye Original view, 1 speed dome field of view, and 1 fisheye Panoramic view as shown below. Note that the interactive click-on-image control only takes place on the Original and the Panoramic views.



Some layout modes (1x1, 2V, 3V, 2x2, 4V, 2V+3, 1+5, 3x3, 1+12, 4x4) will spread all video channels into several pages. Some cameras support the video Rotation function for scenarios such as a tall, long corridor or the inside of a vehicle. The Rotation configuration is made through a web console with such cameras.

VIVOTEK	Home	Client settings Configuration Language
System	Media > Image	
Media	General settings Image settings Exposure - Video Settings	Privacy mask
Image	Video title	
Video Audio	Show timestamp and video title in video an Position of timestamp and video title on image	( and )
Network	Timestamp and video title font-size:	Small
Security	Color:	B/W Color
РТΖ	Power line frequency: Video orientation:	<ul> <li>50 Hz</li> <li>60 Hz</li> <li>Flip</li> <li>Mirror</li> </ul>
Event		Rotate 90 Degrees
Applications		
Recording		Save
Local storage		

For example, under the 3x3 layout mode, you can switch among the pages by clicking shares and shares on the quick access bar. To arrange the content of each page, manually **drag-and-drop** cameras from the hierarchical management tree to the video cells on each page.



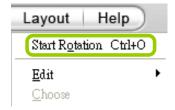
## **Rotating Video Pages**



For layout modes that contain more than one page, the LiveClient provides the rotating function for displaying all video pages in turn.

- To enable this function, click not the Quick Access Bar, which will become Stop Rotating, and the video pages will start to rotate so that the user does not have to click to move to the next page.
- To disable this function, click 🚯 **Stop Rotating**, which will become 🗃 on the Quick Access Bar.

You can also click Layout > Start to Rotate/Stop Rotating to enable/disable this function.



The default rotating time interval is 6 seconds. If you want to edit rotation settings, please refer to **Rotation Settings** on page 241.

### Edit Layout

Please follow the steps below to save a layout:

a. Arrange a layout mode and drag devices to their desired video cells.

b. Click Layout > Edit > Save to > New on the menu bar. A Layout Name dialog box will pop up.

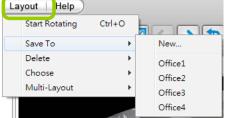
Layout H	elp	<table-cell> Save Layout 🛛 🛛 🔀</table-cell>
Start Rotation	Ctrl+0	Layout Name:
<u>E</u> dit	▶ <u>S</u> ave To ▶ <u>N</u> ew	layout 1
<u>C</u> hoose	Delete	
		OK Cancel

c. Enter a name for the the layout, then click **OK** to enable the setting.

- d. Back to the monitoring window, the new layout will be displayed under the hierarchical management tree as shown below. You can save up to 10 layouts.
- e. To change to another layout, **double-click** the layout options on the hierarchical management tree, or click **Layout > Choose** on the menu bar to select a desired layout.



If you want to edit an existing layout, arrange a layout mode and drag devices to the desired video cells, then click Layout > Edit > Save to > New to save as a new layout or an existing layout to replace with the new one.

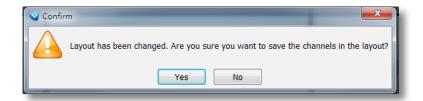


If you want to delete an existing layout, right-click the layout item on the hierarchical management tree or click Layout > Edit > Delete on the menu bar to delete it.

□····· 🔜 VMS_Station(127.0.0.1)	La	yout Help	
🗈 Camera		Start Rotating	Ctrl+O
I/O Box		Save To	•
🖕 🚾 Layout		Delete	•
Office1		Choose	+
Office2		Multi-Layout	•
Office3	$\top$		
Ums_Stat Delete			
ND9541(192.168.4.157)			

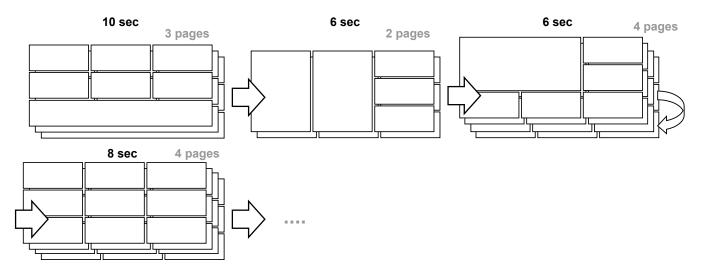
Office1 Office2 Office3 Office4

Whenever you close the LiveClient or Playback programs and changes in screen layout have been made, you will be prompted to save your current configuration.



#### Scheduled Layout Rotation

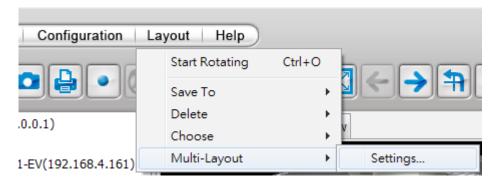
In a configuration consisting of a large number of cameras, you can configure different layouts containing view cells of different characteristics, e.g., a V view for a vertical, corridor scene, or a P view for panoramic glimpse of the scene. With these layouts, you can configure an automated layout rotation. Each layout will be displayed in turn, for a configurable dwell time.



A time frame can be configured for each layout rotation. For example, one rotation may take place during the office hours, while another will take place during the off-office hours. Configuring a time frame for the layout rotation is optional. If not preferred, you can select the "Always" time frame template.

#### To configure a Scheduled Layout Rotation,

- 1. The precondition is that you should have multiple layouts created for your application needs.
- 2. Click on Layout > Multi-layout > Settings.



3. Click on the **Add** button to create a new scheduled layout rotation. Enter a name for the layout rotation. Avoid using these non-alphanumeric characters: (<>&'''). -.

Multi-Layout Settings					12
uti-Layout:	- 🛞 🖉 🛪				
ime Frame List					
		U	ad Terriph	de Save a	a Tertplate
Time Frame		Rule			
e (	Muti-Layou Muti-layout name Delet	* 🖾		Ve	bean
					C. Annes
ayout List Avalable byouts:	OK	Cancel			
Layout		Name Dv	rell Time	Division	
					1

Click on the **Edit** *I* button to change the name of the configuration. Click on the **Delete** subtton to remove an existing configuration.

The max. number of multi-layout configurations is 128. Up to 256 individual layouts can pair with a time frame.

Note that you can not edit a multi-layout configuration while it is performing a rotation.

4. Click on the **Add** button on the Time Frame pane to create a time frame. You can manually enter the Start and End time, or drag the time frame for the span of time you prefer. When done, click on the **Add** button to create the time frame.

You can use the **Load Template** button to select a pre-configured template, such as the Officehour, OffOfficehourinWorkday, Weekend, or Workday template. Make adjustments to the span of time. You can save your current time frame as a tempate for later use.

If necessary, select the days within a week, or the effective range for the time frame.

C Multi-Layout Settings	<u>п</u>
Nuts-Layout: Layout-rotation 🔹 🛞 🖉	×
Time Frame	[ Sand Temples ] [ Provide Temples ]
Time Frame Name: Time frame for Layout Rotation1. Repeat Frequency: Weekly Setting (Day-based) Weekly Setting (Day-based)	Load Template Save as Template Save
Set time segments in a 24-hour day. Multiple segment 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Start Time: 00 4 00 4 End Time: 18 4 30 4	s are alowed. 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 10 19 20 21 22 23 Add Delate
Repeat on: Sunday Monday Tuesday F	SWednesday Thursday Priday Saturday
Start: 2017/ 9/ 8 • End:	2017/ 9/ 8 • Never Stop
Repeat every 1 🚖 Week(s)	

Click **Save** to complete the time frame configuration.

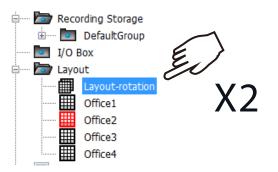
5. Select the layouts that will be included in the Layout Rotation.

When done, click on the **Dwell Time** and **Division** field to edit their appearance and behavior on the live view.

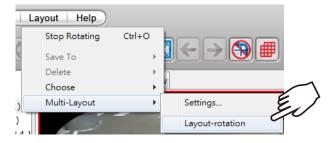
Time Frame     Bule       timeframe     Daly Setting       Time frame for Layout Rotation1     Weekly Setting (Day-based)       +	Multi-Layout Settings		-			
Load Templote Save as Templote Trime Frame Rule timeframe Daily Setting Trime frame for Layout Rotation1 Weekly Setting (Day-based)	ulti-Layout: Layout-rotati	on 🔹 🏶 🖉 💈	×			
Time Frame     Bule       timeframe     Daily Setting       Time frame for Layout Rotation1     Weekly Setting (Day-based)       +     Image: Setting (Day-based)       -     Image: Seting (Day-based)    <	ime Frame List					
timeframe Davy Setting Time frame for Layout Rotation1 Weekly Setting (Day-based) * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *				Load Temp	ate Save	as Template
Time frame for Layout Rotation1     Weekly Setting (Day-based)       *     *       Add     Edt       Add     Edt       Object     Up       Object     Up       Office1     Office1       Office2     Office3       Office3     Select al	Time Frame		Rule			
Add Edit Delete  Add Edit Delete  Available byouts:						
Add     Edit     Delete       up     Down       ayout List       Added tayouts:       Layout     Mame     Dwell Time     Division       Office1     4     4x4       Office2     0     0     0       Office3     5     1x1       Office4     2X     3V       Office4     5     1P42       Select al     3x3     1P46       Sys5						
ayout List Available byouts:  Layout Office1 Office2 Office3 Office3 Office4 Select al	(4)]-					
Available byouts: Layout Office1 Office2 Office3 Office4 Office4 Select al Added byouts: Added byouts: Name Dwell Time Owell Time Owell Time Owell Time Owell Time Office1 4 494 Office3 Select al Select al Added byouts: Name Owell Time Owell Time Office1 4 Office3 Select al Cance Sol	Add Edit	Delete			1 ila	Down
Office2         Office3         Office3         5           Office3         Office3         5         1x1           Office4         >>         Office3         5           Office4         5         2V         3v           2v24v3         3v4         1v5           Select al         3v3         1v4         1v4		Dente				Donini.
□ Office3 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Available byouts: Layout		10000000000			
Office4         >>         Office3         5         1X1           Office4         5         1P+2         3V         3V           2X2         4V         14         2V+3         14           Select al         1P+6         3x3         1P+8         14+12           5x5         5x5         5x5         Cance         5x5	Available byouts:		Name Office1	Dwell Time	Division	
2V+3 1+5 Delect al DP+6 3x3 1P+8 1+12 Cance 5x5	Available layouts:		Name Office1 Office2	Dwell Time	Division 4x4 4x4 -	
1P+8 1+12 disc 3x5	Available byouts:		Name Office1 Office2 Office3	Dwell Time	Division 4x4 4x4 1x1 2V 1P+2 3V 2x2	
3x5	Available byouts:		Name Office1 Office2 Office3 Office4	Dwell Time	Division 4x4 4x4 1x1 2V 1x2 2x2 4V 2x2 4V 2x2 4V 2x+3 1+5 1P+6 3x3	
	Available byouts:		Name Office1 Office2 Office3 Office4	Dwell Time	Division 4x4 5x4 1x1 2y 1y1 2y2 2y2 3y 2y2 2y4 3y 2y2 2y4 3y 1x5 1x5 1x6 3x3 1x6 1x6 1x6 1x7 1x7 1x7 2y4 1x7 1x7 2y4 1x7 1x7 2y4 1x7 1x7 2y4 1x7 1x7 2y4 1x7 2y4 1x7 2y4 1x7 2y4 1x7 2y4 1x7 2y4 1x7 2y4 1x7 1x7 2y4 1x7 1x7 1x7 1x7 1x7 1x7 1x7 1x7 1x7 1x7	

If necessary, use the Delte 📖 button to remove a layout. Use the move 🝙 🕒 buttons to change the display sequence of configured layouts.

6. You can start a Scheduled Rotation in many ways. Once configured, a Layout Rotation icon will appear on the device list. You can double-click on it to start the rotation.



You can start a Rotation from Layout > Multi-Layout > Layout-rotation.



A rotation automatically starts with pre-configured layouts if you configure the option in **Configuration** > **Client Settings** > **General Settings**.

General Settings		14C.30
System Settings		
Automatically log in after logoing in to op	enting system	
C Automatically display in full screen after lo	ph	
2 Auto add newly-inserted camera to video	cell	
Retrieve RTSP stream on specified port:	4541	18
Connect substation streaming via relay		
Keep detecting DI/DO status		
Sort camera by name		
Alarm Settings		
2 Enable ive alarm notification		
[7] Enable alert sound(s)		
2 Enable E-Map popup window		
Alarm window mode: # Faxed		
C Popup		
Rotation Settings		
C Enable rotation after login		
Rotate the page every 10	second(s)	(3 - 999)
Display Settings		
Maximum number of view cells 64		
2 Enable auto stream ste: Quality first	•	
Enable de-Interlace function		
IV Enable Instant Replay on video cel		
Default replay length: 30 seconds •		
Local streaming buffer time: 0	millisecond(s)	(0 ~ 10000)
	-	I man
	OK	Cancel

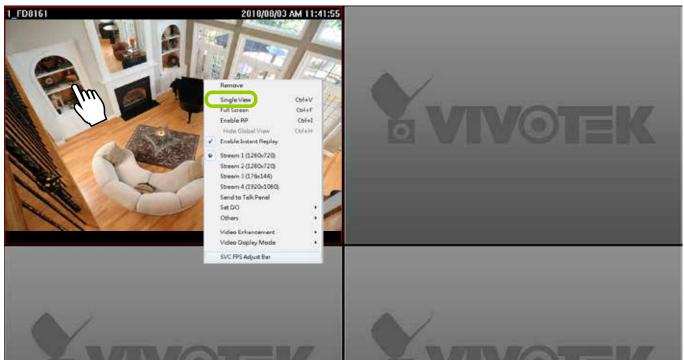
To stop a rotation, click on the Stop button is taking place.

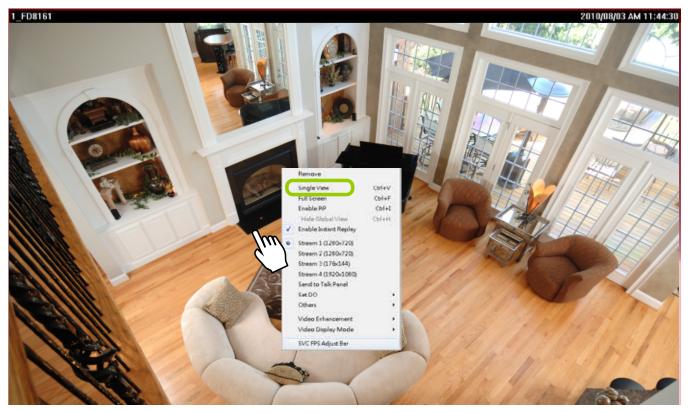
You can also double-click on an existing layout to stop the rotation.

# Maximize/Minimize the Live Video Monitoring Window

Single View: to maxmize a video cell to the entire live video window

**Double-click** the video cell, or **right-click** the video cell and select **Single View**. The focused video will occupy the entire playback window as shown below.





To restore to the original layout, **double-click** the video cell or **right-click** the video cell and uncheck **Single View.** 

Full Screen: Maximize the live video monitoring window to the entire screen

Click **Full Screen** on the quick access bar or **right-click** the video cell and select **Full Screen**. In addition, you can also click **View > Full Screen** on the menu bar to maximize the live video monitoring window.

To restore to the original layout, you can **right-click** a video cell and uncheck **Full Screen** or click the **Esc** button on the keyboard to exit full screen mode.

Va	ew Onfiguration	Layout H
¥	PTZ Panel	
V	Two Way Audio Penel	
	Instant Playback Panel	
4	Alarm Window	
ſ	Full Screen	Ctrl+F
l	Minimize	
1	Matrix View	

Minimize: If you click View > Minimize on the menu bar, LiveClient will minimize to the Windows tool bar.

## **View Live Video on Dual Monitors**

VAST also supports live video viewing on dual monitors, allowing you to manage a maximum of 64 channels concurrently on two screens. Moreover, the layout of the video monitoring window on different monitors can be set up individually.

Please follow the steps below to set up dual-screen mode:

- a. Set up dual monitors for your local computer.
- b. Launch VAST LiveClient on monitor 1.
- c. Click **System > Second View** on monitor 1, then the live video monitoring window will be displayed in monitor 2 as shown below.



- d. There are two ways to view live videos. One is to drag-and-drop the target device from the hierarchical management tree window to the video cells. The other is to click any video cell on monitor 1 or monitor 2, then double-click the target device; the live video will be displayed in monitor 1 or 2 in accordance with your selection.
- e. If you click **Switch Screen** by on the quick access bar, the live monitoring window on monitor 1 and monitor 2 will swap.

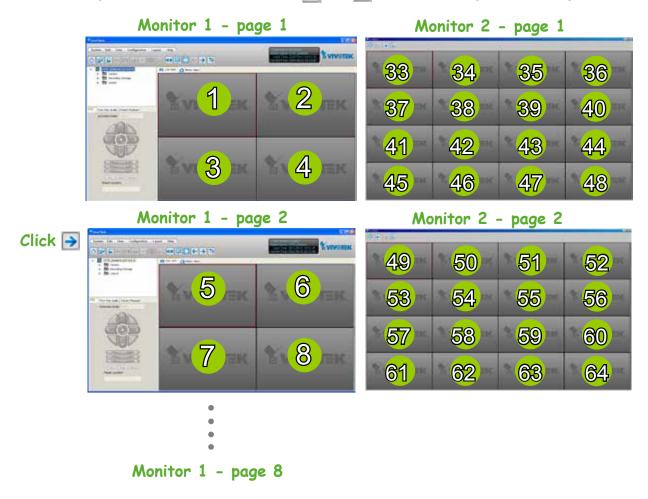
## Simultaneously Viewing up to 128 Channels

If you select 1+31 layout on dual screens, you can view a maximum of 128 channels live video simultaneously. In this case, each layout contains 32 channels on 1 video page.



Using different layouts on each monitor

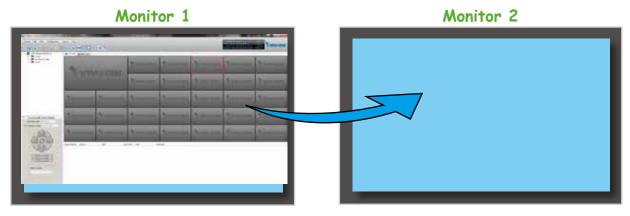
You can also select different layout for two monitors, simply click the **Layout** button B on the quick access bar. Below is an example of the 2x2 layout with 8 video pages on monitor 1 and the 4x4 layout with 2 video pages on monitor 2. You can click C and D to switch among the video pages.



## **View Live Video with Multiple Monitors**

If you have multiple screens in your monitoring center, you can switch the VAST LiveClient Window among these screens.

If you have two monitors, click Switch Screen 3 on the menu bar; the LiveClient window on monitor 1 will switch to monitor 2.



If you have two monitors, a drop-down list will be displayed when you click Switch Screen so on the menu bar. The number of items on this list depends on the number of your screens. Select a desired screen on the drop-down list and the LiveClient Window will switch to the specified screen.



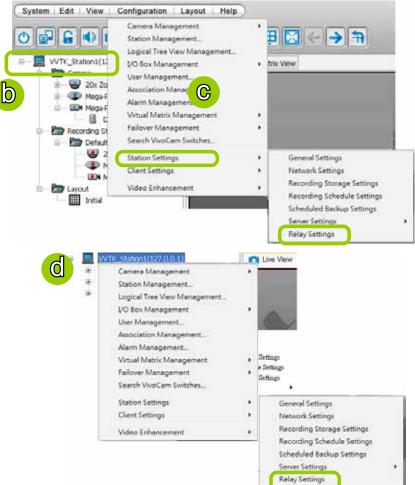
# How to Manage Stations

The VAST Server allows you to construct a hierarchical management system by adding more sub-stations to the root station. Under each sub-station, it can also insert sub-stations and network cameras.

# **Relay Settings**

Before adding a sub-station, please follow the instruction below to enable the sub-station's Relay Settings first.

- a. Login to the sub-station.
- b. Select the station from the hierarchical management tree.
- c. Click **Configuration > Station Settings > Relay Settings** on the menu bar (or **right-click** the station on the hierarchical management tree and select **Station Settings > Relay Settings**).



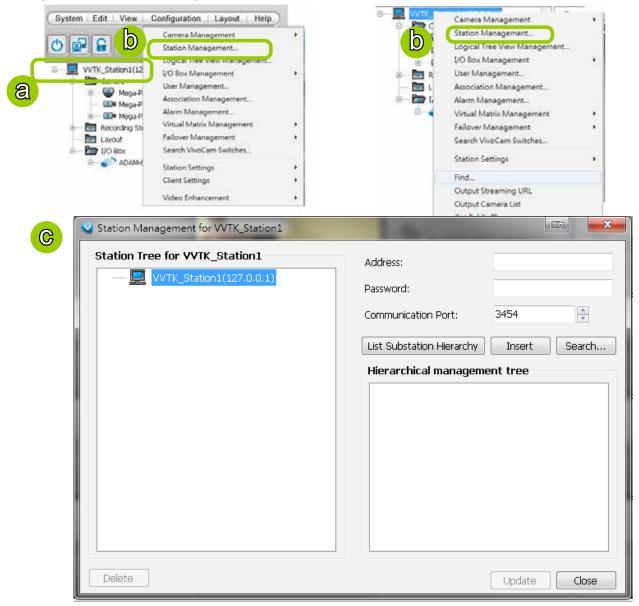
d. The **Relay Settings** window will pop up. Check **Allow Relay Connection** and enter a **Password**. Then click **OK** to enable the settings.



## **Insert Sub-stations**

Please follow the steps below to add sub-stations:

- a. Select a target station from the hierarchical management tree.
- b. Click **Configuration > Station Management** on the menu bar (or **right-click** the target station, then select **Station Management**).
- c. The **Station Management** window will pop up. The hierarchical management tree managed by the target station will be displayed on the left panel.



- d. Before inserting the sub-station, you can click **List Sub-station Hierarchy** button to know if there is any sub-station under it.
- e. Enter the sub-station's **IP address** and **Password (defined in Relay Settings, not login password)**. The default communication port is 3454.
  - If the sub-station is on the LAN, you can click the Search Station button to detect all ST7501 and VAST on the LAN. A Station List window will pop up and show a list of detected cameras on the LAN. On the top of Camera List window, you can select "List the stations which are not inserted" or "List all stations". The items listed below will then change accordingly. You can click Name, IP Address, Model, Http port to sort the items. Then select a device from the list to insert to the station.

- f. When all settings are done, click **Insert** to add the sub-station to the target station. The sub-station will be displayed under the left station tree.
- g. To insert additional sub-stations to the target station, repeat the above steps.
- h. When completed, click **Close** to exit the Station Management window.

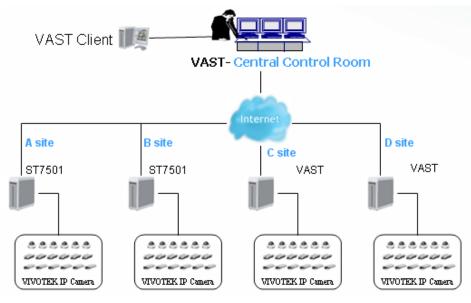
😎 Sta	tion Management for VVI	K_Station1			
Sta	ation Tree for VVTK_Sta	tion1	Address:	172.16.4.23	e
=	VVTK_Station1(17		Password:		
			Communication P	ort: 3454 🛟	
			List Sub-Station	Hierarchy <u>I</u> nsert <u>S</u> earc	h
			-Hierarchical m	anagement tree	
			<b>J</b>	K_Station2(172.16.4.23)	
	elete		L	Update <b>Clos</b>	h
	Search Stations			x x	
0	<ul> <li>List the stations which</li> <li>List all stations</li> <li>Station List</li> </ul>	n are not inserted		Refresh	
	Name	Address	Model	HTTP Port	
	VVTK_Station1	192.168.6.224	VAST	3454	
	RD1_NEIL_5235	192.168.6.207	VAST	12345	
	VVTK_Station1	192.168.6.135	VAST	3454	
	VVTK_Station1	192.168.6.133	VAST	3454	

i. Back to the main window, you will find the newly-inserted stations displayed under the hierarchical management tree.

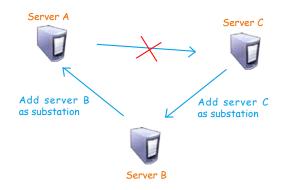




■ You can add VAST or free standard ST7501 as the sub-stations. The number of sub-stations can be added to the server depends on your key dongle. The VAST server will automatically detect the USB dongle installed on your host PC. Following is an illustration for two-level hierarchical architecture:



■ Please note that the following cyclic relay is not allowed.



# **Delete Sub-stations**

There are two ways to delete a sub-station:

Method 1. Select the sub-station on the hierarchical management tree, then **right-click** to delete.

📃 νντι	<_Station1(127.0.0.1)		
÷… 💿	Camera		
÷… 🗖	Recording Group		
	Layout		
÷ 📃	VVTK_Station2(172.16.4.23)		
	Camera Management 🔹 🕨		
	Station Management		
	<u>U</u> ser Management		
	Association Management		
	<u>E</u> vent Management		
	<u>V</u> irtual Matrix Management 🔸		
	Station Settings		
	<u>F</u> ind		
	Output Streaming URL		
	Get Public IP		
	Delete		

Method 2. Delete the sub-station via the Station Management window:

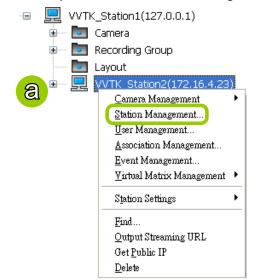
- a. Click the station on the hierarchical management tree, then click **Configuration > Station Manage**ment on the menu bar (or right-click the station, then select **Station Management**).
- b. The **Station Management** window will pop up. The hierarchical management tree managed by the station will be displayed in the left Station List window.
- c. Select a station from the list you want to delete. Its related information will automatically be displayed in the corresponding blanks in the Station Management window.
- d. Click Delete to delete it.
- e. To delete additional devices, repeat step c. and d.
- f. When completed, click **Close** to exit the camera management window and return to the main window. The deleted device will disappear from the hierarchical management tree.

Station Management for VVIK_Station1		×
Station Tree for VVTK_Station1	Address: 172.16.4.23	
C VVTK_Station2(172.16.7.82)	Password:	
	Communication Port: 3454	
	List Sub-Station Hierarchy Insert Search.	
	Hierarchical management tree	
	🖳 VVTK_Station2(172.16.4.23)	
Delete	Update <b>Gose</b>	

# **Update Stations**

Please follow the steps below to update a station via Station Management window:

- a. Right-click the target device on the hierarchical management tree and click Station Management.
- b. The **Station Management** window will pop up. The hierarchical management tree managed by the station will be displayed in the Station List window on the left.
- c. Select a station from the list you want to delete. Its related information will automatically be displayed in the corresponding blanks in the Station Management window.
- d. When all settings are completed, click **Update** to enable the settings.



Station Management for VVIK_Station1		×
Station Tree for VVTK_Station1	Address:	172.16.4.23
W/TK_Station1(172.16.7.82)           C         Image: WVTK_Station2(172.16.4.23)	Password:	
	Communication Port:	3454
	List Sub-Station Hierarchy	Insert Search
	Hierarchical manageme	
	········ 🖳 VVTK_Station2	(172.16.4.23)
		Update Close

# How to Manage User Accounts

VAST allows users to apply multiple user accounts to a station with five levels of user roles: Administrator > Power User > User > Operator > Guest. Each role has different permissions listed as shown below. Moreover, Administrators have the highest privileges, while Power Users can only add/edit users as Power Users, Users, Operators, and Guests.

#### Functions \ User Roles Administrator Power User User Operator Guest Description Add sub-station under the Station Management V V existing station User Management V Manage user accounts V V Insert and configure the **Camera Management** V $\mathbf{V}$ camera settings Association Access and modify the V V $\mathbf{V}$ Management association settings Access Alarm v v Access Alarm management $\sqrt{}$ Management Modify Alarm Modify Alarm management $\mathbf{V}$ V V Management **General Station** Modify general station $\mathcal{V}$ v Settings settings **Station Network** v Modify network settings V Settings Access Recording Access the recording group Storage/ V V V V **Recording Schedule** and recording schedule Settinas Modify Recording Configure the recording Storage/ group and recording V V v **Recording Schedule** schedule Settings Enable the recording Manually Record V V V V function manually Scheduled Backup Configure backup schedule V $\sqrt{}$ v Settings Access Server Settings Access server settings V $\mathbf{V}$ v **Modify Server Settings** Modify server settings V V V Allow user to manage License Management V v station licenses Allow user to manage **Relay Management** V v station relaying settings Configure the client **Client Settings** settings: snapshot, AVI, V v v \/ etc. Allow user to edit profile for Video Enhancement video enhancement and V V V Settings assign profile to camera in LiveClient

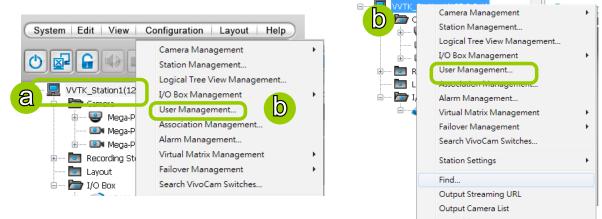
#### The Default User Roles and Permissions of User Accounts

Privileges \ User Roles	Administrator	Power User	User	Operator	Guest	Description
Modify Directories	V	V	V			Add, remove and rename directories
Delete Station	V	V				Delete sub-station from a (parent) station
Delete Camera	V	V				Delete camera from the station
PTZ Control	V	V	V	V		PTZ control for PTZ cameras and speed domes in LiveClient
Device Control	V	V	V	V		Control the digital output or white light/IR illuminators of the cameras
Talk Control	V	V	V	V		Two way audio function for the cameras
Access Camera Configuration	V	V	V			Access the camera settings
Modify E-map	V	V	V	V		Allow user to modify the E-map
Event Search	V	V	V	V		Use built-in search engine to search specific events
Log Viewer	V	V	V	V		Use built-in search engine to search the log
Backup	V	V	V	V		Back up database manually
Record/Export Media	V	V	V	V		Record live stream or export playback stream to local files
Virtual Matrix Management	V	V				Allow user to manage virtual matrix
Virtual Matrix Control	V	V	V	V		Allow user to control virtual matrix
Playback Authority	V	V				Allow user to access Playback

# Manage a User Account

#### Add a New User Account - Basic Account

- a. Select the station from the hierarchical management tree.
- b. Click **Configuration > User Management** on the menu bar (or **right-click** the station, then select **User Management**).



- c. The **User Management** window will pop up. The user accounts under the station will be displayed under the left User List tree. Up to 1,021 users can be created (not including the default Admin and two internal communication accounts).
- d. Enter the User Name, Password, and specify the User Role of this user.
- e. Click Add to add the user account to the station. It will be displayed under the User List.

e: Basic Account
ccessible Cameras       Accessible E         ons       Description         Managem       Add substation ur         anagement       Manage user accc         a Managem       Insert and configure         ation Mana       Access and modified         Event Ma       Access event mar         Id Station S       Modify event mar         Id Station S       Modify network se         Recording       Access the record         V Record       Enable the record         Value       Add
y

User List	Account Manager	ment
VVTK_Station1  Administrator  Administrator  admin  vivotek.tw\Eric.Lu  vivotek.tw\Frank.chang ericthegreat123.com\erid ericthegreat123.com\erid ericthegreat123.com\erid erid	Authentication: User Name: Password: Confirm Password:	Basic Account
ericthegreat123.com\Ad ericthegreat123.com\use Power User guard ryst	User Role:	Power User

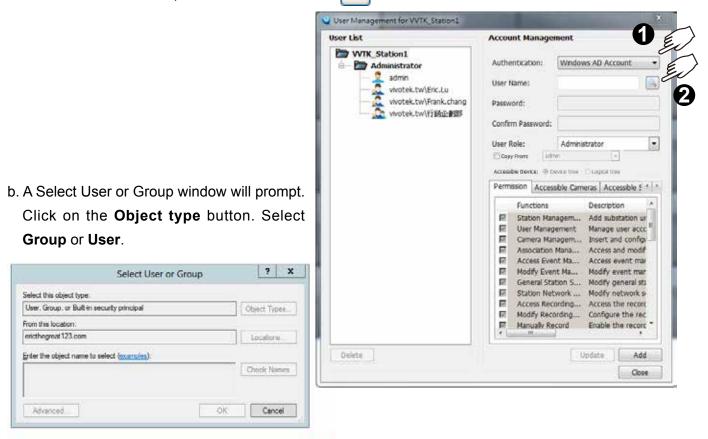
#### Add a New User Account - Windows AD Account

In an established, enterprise network environment, the support for Windows AD (Active Directory) infrastructure enables ease of integration using the credentials of existing users. Using the same AD authentication methodologies, you can configure the clients or users in an established network to access the VAST server configuration.

Note the following with Windows AD support:

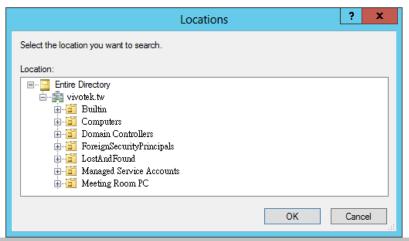
- 1. The ST7501 software does not support Windows AD accounts. However, if you log in to a VAST server which supports Windows AD accounts, the AD account will work for an ST7501 sub-station managed by VAST.
- 2. If you install VAST server on a Windows XP machine with Postqre SQL server, the login using a Windows AD account will not work.
- 3. The VAST server must reside in a domain managed by the AD server.
- 4. This function does not support the environment that spans across multiple AD domains.
- 5. A user account hosted by an AD server cannot be modified in VAST.
- 6. A User Group and its members configured in AD cannot be managed in VAST.
- 7. You cannot add an account having the same name as one you used to log in VAST.
- 8. There are 3 types of account for VAST: VIVOTEK account, AD single user, AD group.

a. To configure a Windows AD user as a VAST user, enter the **User Management** window. Select **Windows AD Account**, and click on the **Search** button.



	Object Types	? ×
Select the types of objects you	want to find	
Object types:		
Built in security princip	sia	
🕑 😤 Users		
- 1		
		OK Cancel

c. You can also click on the **Location** button to specify a search range on a location on the AD hierarchical tree, e.g., a department in an organization.



d. Enter a name for user or group that is known to the AD. Click on the **Check Name** button. The search results will be listed.

		Select User	or Group	? >	<b>د</b>
Sel	ect this object type:				
Us	er, Group, or Built-in s	ecurity principal		Object Types	
Fro	m this location:				
eri	cthegreat123.com			Locations	
<u>E</u> nt	er the object name to	select (examples):			
ad	min			Check Names	
	Advanced		OK	Cancel	
		Mu	ltiple Names Fo	und	X
		tches the following obj reenter the name, click		elect an	
	Name	Logon Name (pr	E-Mail Address	Description	In Folder
	と Administrator 🖶 Administrators	Administrator Administrators		Built-in account f	ericthegreat 123 ericthegreat 123

- e. Click to select a user, and then click **OK** to confirm your selection.
- f. Users thus added will be listed on the left in the **User List**. These users or groups will be listed with their domain name listed in front of them and indicated by different icons
- g. Select a **User Role** for the AD user as Administrator, Power user, user, operator, or guest.
- h. Select user's privileges in terms of the **Permission**, **Accessible Cameras**, and **Accessible Substations** from the tabbed windows below.

i. Click the Add button to complete the process.

The next time you log in, you can select **Windows AD Account**, enter User Name and Password to access the VAST software.

Note that you should specify the domain name in front of the user name; "domain name\user name."

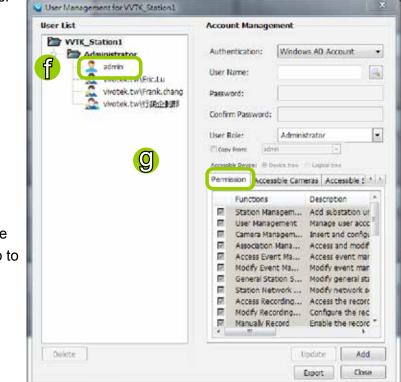
💙 VAST LiveClie	ent 📼 🔀				
🔽 Log in local st	✓ Log in local station				
Address:	127.0.0.1				
Authentication:	Windows AD Account 🔹				
User Name:	vivotek.tw\Eric.Lu				
Password:	•••••				
Port:	3454				
Proxy Settings	]				
Log in	Cancel Hide <<				

#### Permission of the User Account

Administrator is granted with all access privileges, while other user roles' permission is limited. If you want to modify the permission, please login as the Administrator to configure the settings. f. Select a User account from the User List tree.

g. If you want to set the limit of the permission of the user, click **Permission** tab to check or uncheck the items.

h. If you want to limit the devices accessible by the user, click **Accessible Cameras** tab to select the desired devices.





You can select either a basic user can access a device tree or a logical tree.

i. If you want to configure the access limit of the sub-station accessible by the user, click **Accessible Substations** tab to select the desired devices.

If you want to remove access permission mentioned above from the account, the user will not able to operate some functions listed in the following warning dialog.

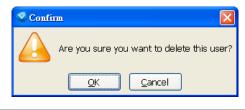
<table-cell> Confi</table-cell>	m. 🔀
	Unchecked sub-stations or cameras will have the following permission(s) removed from the account: "Camera Management", "Delete Camera", "Modify Recording Group/Recording Schedule Settings", "Scheduled Backup Settings", "Modify E-Map", "Modify Event Management"
	OK Cancel

j. When completed, click **Update** to enable the new settings.

	Permission Accessible Cameras Accessible Substations
	○ All substations
	Substations
	VVTK_Station2
k	
Delete	

#### Delete the User Account

k. Click Delete, a delete user dialog will pop up. Click OK to delete the user account.

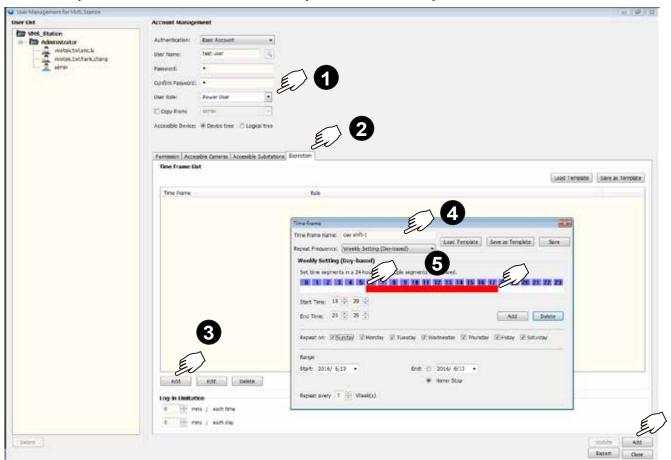




If the Administrator modifies or deletes the User Account, that modified user might be kicked off from the station.

#### Expiration

Click **Expiration** to configure the extension of time allowed for a user's access. For example, an administrator may want some users to have access to the LiveClient during a specific period of time, while they are forbidden to access when they are not on the duty.



Note that if a new user has the **Administrator** previlege, no Expiration setting will apply to him. The Expiration setting applies to **Power User**, **User**, **Operator**, or **Guest**.

- 1. To start the configuration, enter a user name, password, and then select a **User Role**.
- 2. Click to enter the Expiration tab window.
- 3. You can either **Load a Template** or click **Add** to manually configure an Expiration setting. You may also configure a Log-in Limitation by configuring the extension of time a user can access for each day or each login.
- 4. If creating a new template, enter a name for the template.
- 5. Drag your cursor across the timeline, or manually enter the **Start** and **End** time. Click the **Add** button if you manually enter the time span. You can add multiple time spans to the timeline. The time spans will display on screen as red bars.

To delete a time span, click to select a time span and click the **Delete** button.

When done with a manual template configuration, you can click the **Save** button to save the template for later use.

**Export:** Click to export users' privilege, access list, as a CSV file. The information include Functions Permission, Accessible Cameras, and Accessible Substations. The Logical Tree access information is currently not included.

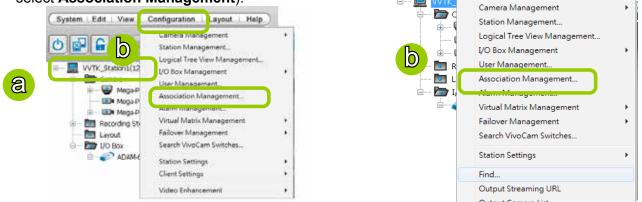
# How to Set up Association Management

VAST LiveClient supports association management which allows the user to configure relative event trigger notifications of connected network devices. (E.g., DI/DO status on the hierarchical management tree, motion detection windows appear in the video cell, the event list in the event window)

## **Association Management**

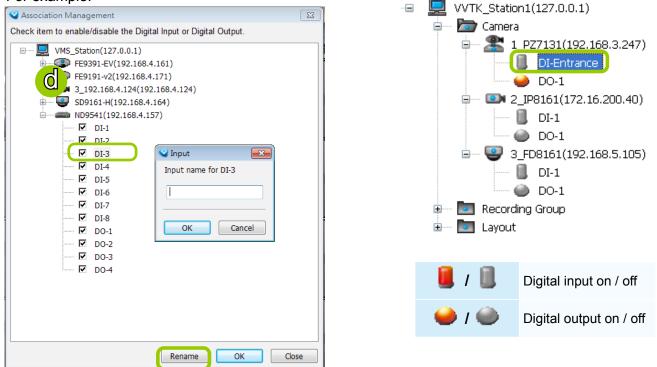
Please follow the steps below to configure assocation settings:

- a. Select the station from the hierarchical management tree.
- b. Click Configuration > Association Management on the menu bar (or right-click the station and select Association Management).



c. The **Association Management** window will prompt. Select or deselect the items and click **Save** to enable the settings. The items you've selected will also be displayed under the hierarchical management tree.

For example:



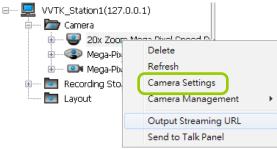
d. If you want to rename the DI device, select the DI item and click the **Rename** button. It will be very convenient for you to recognize the target DI device.



To manually enable DI/DO settings, please right-click the video cell and select Set DO to enable (Trigger) or disable (Normal) the digital output of the linked device.

1_IP8161		20	10/01/27 AM 0	13:31:28	1_IP8161		2	010/01/27	AM 03:31:28
	<u>R</u> emove		A LOUGHT	1 100		<u>R</u> emove			ALC: NO
	Single View Full Screen Enable <u>P</u> iP Hide Global View	Ctrl+V Ctrl+F Ctrl+I Ctrl+H		I E La		<u>S</u> ingle View Full Screen Enable <u>P</u> iP Hide Global View	Ctrl+V Ctrl+F Ctrl+I Ctrl+H		13
	<ul> <li>Stream 1</li> <li>Stream 2</li> <li>Stream 3</li> <li>Stream 4</li> <li>Send to <u>T</u>alk Panel</li> </ul>		236	4		<ul> <li>Stream 1</li> <li>Stream 2</li> <li>Stream 3</li> <li>Stream 4</li> <li>Send to <u>Talk Panel</u></li> </ul>			24
	Set <u>D</u> O Others	•	DO-1 V Tri No	gger rmal		Set <u>D</u> O Others	•	DO-1	Trigger ✔ Normal
	<u>V</u> ideo Enhancement	•				<u>V</u> ideo Enhancement	•		

Before you configure the DI/DO Settings for VAST, please enable DI/DO settings on your network device and set up the camera correctly on the configuration page. You can **right-click** the device and click **Camera Settings** to open the configuration page.



		Home	Client settings	Configuration	Language
	Applications > DI and	DO			
System	Digital input				
Media	Normal status:	● High ○ Low			
Network	Current status:	High			
Security	Digital output				
РТΖ	Normal status:	● Open ○ Groun	ded		
Event	Current status:	Open			
Applications				5	Save
Motion detection					
DI and DO					
Tampering detection					
Audio detection					
Package management					
Recording					

# How to Set up Alarm Management

VAST LiveClient supports Alarm management which allows the server to display and respond to particular situations (events).

# **Alarm Management**

Please follow the steps below to configure Alarm management:

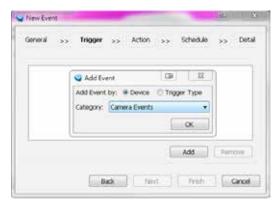
- a. Select the station from the hierarchical management tree.
- b. Click **Configuration > Alarm Management** on the menu bar (or **right-click** the station and select **Alarm Management**).



c. The Alarm Management window will prompt. Click New to configure a new event. Enter a name and description for the new alarm. When you finish the general settings, click Next to set up trigger source settings. The Alarm name you specify here will be displayed on the Alarm panel in the Live view.

Alarm Ma	anagement				×	💙 New Ala	arm							×
	would raise a	one or more intere: In alarm.	ited events. When i	one of them is t	riggered,	General	>>	Trigger	>>	Action	>>	Schedule	>>	Detail
Enable	Name ADAM5 IP8155	Triggers DI-1 (Trigger) Mation-1 on Me	Actions Turn DO-3 (AD Start to record			V Ena Name: Descrip		otification		0 -0	A 	- 31		
Now	Edit	Ristricives	Detal >>		Close	Detect r		vent a		~	(t	Finish		Iancel

d. Click **Add** to select the trigger source by Device or Trigger Type.

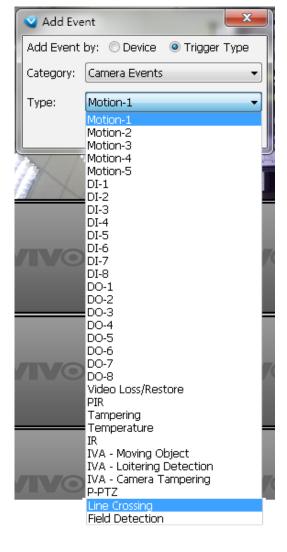


Note that the **Motion detection** windows are separately configured using web consoles with each individual cameras. Open a web console with the camera to configure Motion detection windows.

The Storage Status includes: Storage connection status and storage capacity status on NVR systems.

Each individual motion detection window can be used as a triggering condition. The Line Crossing and Field Detection packages running on cameras also apply as triggers.

😮 Trigger list		×
Select the trigger(s) from the following list.		
WTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)         Mega-Pixel Network Camera(192.168.4.121)         Mega-Pixel Network Camera(192.168.6.143)         Mega-Pixel Network Camera(192.168.6.127)         Motion-1         Motion-2         Motion-3         Tampering         Mega-Pixel Network Camera(192.168.6.217)         Mega-Pixel Network Camera(192.168.6.217)         ND8321(192.168.6.208)	)	
OK	Car	icel



If you connect your DI/DO devices via an I/O module (I/O box), please refer to page 358, **Appendix E Support for Digital I/O Modbus TCP Modules** for details.



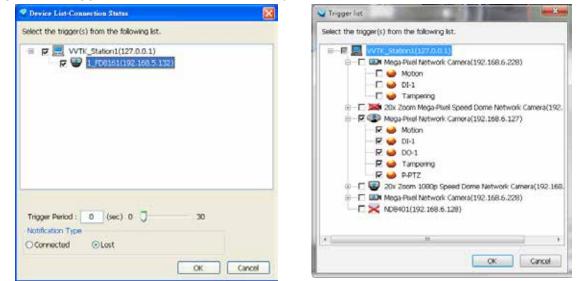
There is a new event trigger type, P-PTZ. The P-PTZ refers to the occurrence of Auto Tracking action in a Panoramic PTZ configuration.



Auto Tracking is configured on the fisheye camera in a Panoramic PTZ configuration.

If you manually configure a detection area for the Auto Tracking function, the P-PTZ event will not be triggered.

e. The Device List window will prompt. Select one or more devices and set the Notification Type. Depending on the trigger source, the Notification Type will be different. Then click **OK** to close the window.



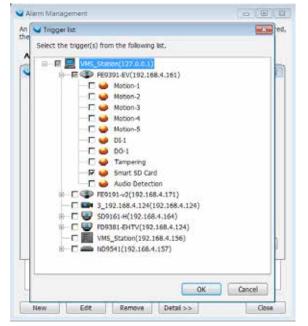
- f. The trigger source(s) will be listed on the window as shown below. If you want to add more Trigger sources, click **Add** and repeat steps d. to e. Then click **Next** to assign action(s) to the trigger source(s).
- g. Click Add to open the Action Settings window.

💙 New Alarm	🔍 New Alarm
General >> Trigger >> Action >> Schedule >> Detail	General >> Trigger >> Action >> Schedule >> Detail
Connection Status (Lost) on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Status (Stop) on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Connection Status (Lost) on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Status (Stop) on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Connection Status (Lost) on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Status (Stop) on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 ( Recording Error on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigge	Q Add Remove
Back Next Finish Cancel	Back Next Finish Cancel

Note that if your camera is using Sony's SR-WM series cards, SD card status events can be used as a trigger.

The event messages look like the following:

Warning	Error Message Examples
Normally Functioning	The SD card is inserted and there is enough lifespan remaining.
Replacement Recommended	Has reached xx% of the SD card's lifespan.
Has Reached its Lifetime	All the spare blocks have been consumed. The card is read-only.
Card Not Inserted	No SD card is inserted.
Failed to Get Status	Unexpected error has occurred.



The related event messages will prompt on the event list. On seeing the Smart SD events, you should replace your SD card.

Instant Playback Name 🔻 Description	Source 🔫	Event Type 🛛 🕇	Value	Time 🍸	State 🍸
Alarm-3	FE9391-EV	Smart SD Card	Trigger	2017-09-07 16:19:43	tiew
O Alarm-3	FE9391-EV	Smart SD Card	Trigger	2017-09-07 16:10:19	tiew
Alarm-3	FE9391-EV	Smart SD Card	Trigger	2017-09-07 16:09:43	New
Alam.3	FE9391-EV	Smart SD Card	Tripper	2017-09-07 16:06:58	New
Alarm-3	FD9381-EHTV	Recording Status	Stop	2017-09-07 16:01:04	New

The Tampering, Audio Detection, and Shock Detection are also available as a trigger source with cameras that support these features. Shock Detection is available for cameras that come with an acceleration sensor.



#### There are several types of Action Settings.

- Email: The sever will send a notification via e-mail when a trigger is activated.
  - h. To enable this function, please set up the SMTP server first. Click **SMTP Setting** to open the window and refer to page 216 for detailed information.
  - i. Enter the related informtaion. You can modify the mail content in the blank. If you want to modify the content, click **Insert Macro** to select the parameter. When completed, click **OK** on the bottom to enable the setting.

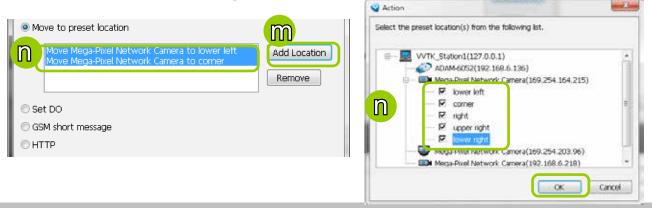
Note that you can insert a snapshot taken by the time of alarm occurence of the recorded video. The snapshot will be sent along with the notification Email. The snapshot comes from camer's stream 1.

1	Action		
	Email		h
]	From :		SMTP Settings
	To :		Test
	Cc:		
	Content:	At \$(EventTime), event type [\$(TriggerType)] occurred on \$(DeviceName)	Insert Macro
	🔘 Start to re	cord on	
	Start to re	cora on	
	C Maria ta u		

- Start to record on: The sever will start to record video from selected camera(s) when an event is triggered.
  - j. Click **Add Camera** to select the target camera(s).
  - k. The selected camera(s) will be listed on the left window below. When completed, click **OK** on the bottom to enable the setting.



- Move to preset location: The target camera(s) will move the shooting area to the preset location(s) when an event is triggered.
  - I. To enable this function, please configure some preset locations on the camera configuration page first.
  - m. Click Add Location to select preset location(s).
  - n. The selected preset location(s) will be listed on the left window below. When completed, click **OK** on the bottom to enable the setting.



- Set DO: Select this option to turn on external digital output device(s) when an event is triggered. For more information about how to set DI/DO settings on the target camera, please refer to page160.
  - o. Click Add DO to select DO device(s) and select a DO status (Normal or Trigger).
  - p. The selected DO device(s) will be listed on the left window below. When completed, click **OK** to enable the setting.

	et location			0
	(Moga Pirof Notwor		Add DO	
×			Remove	
	Set DO	Set DO	Set DO	Set DO

Select the Tirgger Period from the slide bar below. The range is 0 to 30 seconds. The DO trigger signal will return to normal after after this period of time.

Note that the Trigger Period setting does not apply to the camera DI/DO managed by substations.

VVTK_Station1(127.0.0.1) ADAM-6052(192.168.6.136) Mena-Evel Network Camera(169 Moga-Pixel Network Camera(169 Moga-Pixel Network Camera(192	he DO(s) from the follow	ring list.		
e e	ADAM-6052(1 Mena-Divel Net Record Mena-Divel Net Mena-Divel Net Mena-Divel Net	92.168.6.136) twork Camera( twork Camera(	169 Nor 169	mal
tification Type				
Normal Trigger	2012			

- GSM Short Message: The sever will send a short message to a GSM cell phone when an event is triggered.
  - q. Please enter the Phone Number and open **GSM Settings** window to set related information if necessary. When completed, click **OK** to enable the setting.

Action	X
🔘 Email	
🔘 Start to record on	
O Move to preset location	
💿 Set DO	
<ul> <li>GSM short message</li> </ul>	
Phone Number:	GSM Settings Test
© HTTP	
Client Notification	
	CK Cancel

6SM Settings	
SIM PIN Number:	1
COM Port Number:	COM1 -
Bits per second:	115200 🔻
Data bits:	0
Parity:	None
Stop bits:	1
Flow control:	None

Please enter the country code if you use overseas call.

- HTTP: This function allows user to send a CGI command to the linked network camera, such as pan/ tilt/zoom function or enable DO devices.
  - r. You can click **Insert Macro** to select the parameter. Please enter authentification information if necessary. For example: http://192.168.3.66/cgi-bin/admin/setparam.cgi?system\_hostname=\$(EventTime) \$(CameraName)

If you want to use special characters such as \$-\_.+!\*'(),#%+\$,@:;/?=&, please refer to the following table to transfer the Code (Hex).

For example: http://192.168.3.66/cgi-bin/admin/setparam.cgi?system\_hostname=123&456 --> http://192.168.3.66/cgi-bin/admin/setparam.cgi?system\_hostname=123%26456

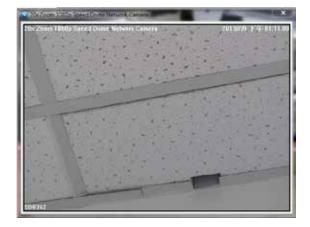
HTTP	
URL:	Insert Macro
Use authentication: 📃	Test
User Name:	
Password:	

Character	Code (Hex)	Character	Code (Hex)
!	21	,	2C
#	23	-	2D
\$	24		2E
%	25	1	2F
&	26	:	3A
	27	;	3B
(	28	=	3D
)	29	?	3F
*	2A	@	40
+	2B	_	5F
		~	7E

Client Notification: On the occurrence of an event, a pop-up window will display to show what is triggering the current event. Select the window size, and select the display duration of the notification window. If not selected, the notification window is manually closed.

Action
🗇 Email
🗇 Start to record on
Move to preset location
Set DO
© GSM short message
© HTTP
Olient Notification
Notify me with Popup Window. Size: Large 🔹
🗆 Close it automatically after 🛛 5 🚔 seconds
☑ Include the event-triggering camera
Add Camera
Remove
OK Cancel

Include the event triggering camera: You can select to display the screens of other cameras (e.g., cameras that are closely adjacent) when the notification prompts.



168 - User's Manual

s. The action(s) will be listed in the window as shown below.

Then click **Next** to set up schedule(s) to the action(s).

For more information about **Schedule Settings**, please refer to Recording Schedule Settings on page 192. You can assign more than one time frame to one action.

🔹 New Alarm
General       >>       Trigger       >>       Action       >>       Schedule       >>       Detail       General       >>       Trigger       >>       Action       >>       Schedule       >>       Detail
Turn DO-1 (ADAM-6052) to Trigger           Turn DO-2 (ADAM-6052) to Trigger             Save as Template
Time Frame Rule
Always Weekly Setting (Day-based)
Add Remove Add Edit Delete Up Down
Back Next Finish Cancel Back Next Finish Cancel
Time Frame
Time Frame Name:
Repeat Frequency: Weekly Setting (Day-based)
Weekly Setting (Day-based)
Set time segments in a 24-hour day. Multiple segments are allowed.
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23
Start Time: 00 🚔 00 🚔
End Time: 00 🗘 00 🖨 Add Delete
Repeat on: 🗹 Sunday 📝 Monday 📝 Tuesday 📝 Wednesday 📝 Thursday 📝 Friday 📝 Saturday
Range
Start: 2008/12/ 8 - End: O 2035/ 1/ 1 -
Never Stop
Repeat every 1 🚔 Week(s)

t. When you finish schedule settings, click **Next** to review the detailed information of the new event settings.

🤮 New Alarm	×
General >> Trigger	>> Action >> Schedule >> Detail
	Load Template Save as Template
Time Frame	Rule
Always	Weekly Setting (Day-based)
Add Edit	Delete Up Down
Ва	ck Next Finish Cancel

u. Following is the detailed information of the new event setting. You can click **Back** to modify the event setting or click **Finish** to close the window.

General	>> Trigger >> Action >> Schedule >> Deta
Sescription Triggers: Actions:	n: * Motion-1 on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 (sec * Motion-2 on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 (sec * Motion-3 on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 (sec * Tampering on Mega-Pixel Network Camera, Trigger Period : 5 (sec * Turn DO-1 (ADAM-6052) to Trigger * Turn DO-2 (ADAM-6052) to Trigger
Schedule:	* Always

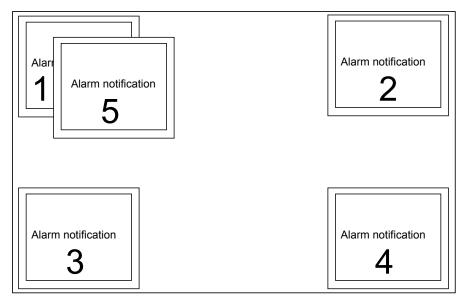
v. Following is an example of an enabled event. You can click **New** to set up more events or click **Close** to exit the window.

Enable	Name	Triggers	Actions	Schedule
0	ADAM6	DI-1 (Trigger)	Turn DO-3 (AD	Always
Ö	IP8155	Motion-1 on Me	Start to record	Always
	alarm-2	Motion-1 on Me	Send client noti	Always
<b></b>	Alarm3	Motion-1 on Me	Turn DO-1 (AD	Always
		Click to	o remove th	e event

If your target station has sub-station(s), the **trigger sources** can be selected from the device(s) under the sub-station(s); while the **actions** can only be performed on the device(s) under the target station.

### **Alarm Notification Windows**

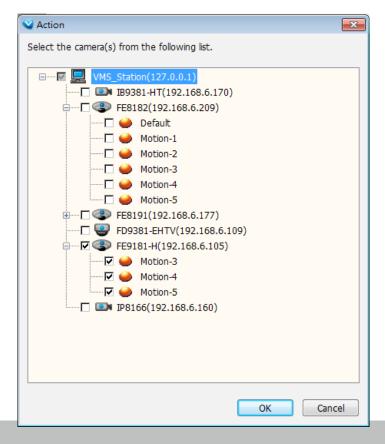
With multiple alarms simultaneously triggered, the notification windows will appear consecutively at the four corners of the screen. With more than 4 alarms, the latter notifications will appear on top of the old ones at a slightly shifted position.



#### **Fisheye Motion Windows**

When fisheye cameras are configured with Motion Detection windows and their motion events are triggered in the notification windows, they display in a more comprehensive dewarped, regional view.

If the Alarm triggering condition is configured as DI (digital inputs) or other inputs, you can configure the Alarm Action as displaying Client Notification as well. You can select the "Include the event-triggering camera," to display the pre-configured motion windows. The fisheye cameras' motion windows display in the dewarped mode.



### Export All Logs

In the Playback utility, you can select the Log Viewer tab window, display the past events, and export all event logs to a CSV file.

<ul> <li>Playback</li> </ul>										CALANS
System Edit View Configuration La	yout Help									Citin w
		104								
Colored Seath   Alem Seath   LSQ VRWH VRM_Rader(127:03.1)	1.1.1.1 Prime 2 2 3 4 5 5 6 7 7 7 8 9 9 10 11 11	Tree 2016/06/13/14/08/249 2016/06/13/14/08/12 2016/06/13/14/28/02 2016/06/13/14/28/02 2016/06/13/14/27/08 2016/06/13/14/27/08 2016/06/13/14/27/08 2016/06/13/14/27/08 2016/06/13/14/27/08	17% 29% -8.5% -8.5% -8.5% -8.5% -8.5% -8.5% -8.5% -8.5% -8.5% -8.5% -8.5% -8.5%	Cacegory Operation Lap Objection Lap Objection Lap Objection Lap Prior Liop Event Liop Event Liop Event Liop Event Liop Objection Lap	Normal Normal Normal	Lodate Alem Navage Opfate Alem Navage Undate Alem Navage Nave Toppe Alem Toppe Alem Toppe Alem Toppe Alem Toppe Alem Toppe Alem Toppe	Soccess	Guer sdrat adrat sdrat adrat	Targed Local Local Local Local Local Local Local Local Local	
obegay: Allacatogo aer: Vento Al 20 7/00 Al 20 Eurot Al	•									PRUL-4
The Zone (MTI-Scot learn, Chargers Hare X 4 Nair The Sater and The (2004) (1) The Ten Sater And Ten Sater And Ten	ar and 20 [1]	Al Feades   Thick   Light	achierine - Rope	et. All sogn						

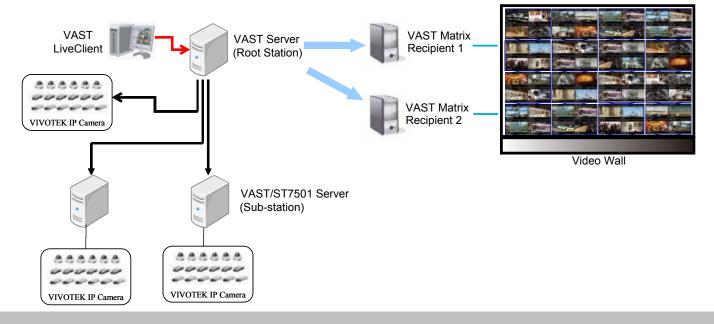
# How to Manage the Virtual Matrix

Virtual Matrix is a very useful tool for multiple monitor display and management. Based on the whole surveillance system architecture, it efficiently helps user construct a real-time live video wall in the control center. Under a large-scale hierarchical system, through VAST LiveClient you can only simultaneously monitor up to 128-CH on dual monitors; while Virtual Matrix offers fully extension for numerous channels and screens, thus making VAST a very powerful central management system. Moreover, you can change the layout to 2x2 or 3x3 on each monitor to enlarge the video size, then display the video pages on saperate monitor for close-up monitoring.



# The architecture of VAST Matrix

As shown below, the surveillance system architecture is composed of VAST LiveClient, VAST Server with two sub-stations, and VAST Matrix separately on individual hosts. Before constructing the Virtual Matrix, please install and run VAST Matrix Program on Matrix Recipient connected with the video wall. Through the Virtual Matrix connection, you can use LiveClient to log in the root server to remotely manage and display all the live view onto the video wall by easily drag-and-drop. PTZ control is also available as on the LiveClient.



## Installing VAST Matrix Program

Please follow the steps below to install VAST Matrix Program:

a. Run VASTMatrix\_setup.exe on another host (Matrix Recipient). Then click Next to start installation wizard.



- b. Carefully read to accept the End-User License Agreement for use. Click I Agree to the next step.
- c. Choose the installing path as the destination folder, the required space and available space of the hard disk will be shown below for reference. Click **Next** to the next step.

🕎 🗛 ST Matrix Setup	🕎 VAST Matrix Setup 📃 🗆 🔀
License Agreement	Choose Install Location
Please review the license terms before installing VAST Matrix.	Choose the folder in which to install VAST Matrix.
Press Page Down to see the rest of the agreement.	Setup will install VAST Matrix in the following folder. To install in a different folder, click
End-User License Agreement PLEASE READ CAREFULLY: This End-User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between VIVOTEK Inc. ("VIVOTEK") as licensor, and you, as licensee, for the VIVOTEK software that accompanies this EULA, which includes the video management software VAST Matrix V1 and other applicable software (the "Software"). YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS EULA BY INSTALLING, COPYING, OR OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWARE OR CLICKING THE BITTON MARKED "LAGRER" OR "YES"	Browse and select another folder. Click Next to continue.
If you accept the terms of the agreement, click I Agree to continue. You must accept the	Space required: 21.7MB
agreement to install VAST Matrix.	Space available: 69.4GB
VAST Matrix v1.0.0.4 Cancel	VAST Matrix v1.0.0.4 < <u>Back</u> Cancel

d. Fill in the connection information with Port, Account & Password for VAST Server to connect to the Matrix Recipient.

🐺 VAST Matrix Setup	
	ection Information e enter your connection information.
Port:	3455
HTTPS Port:	3444
Account:	root
Password:	
Confirm Password:	
VAST Matrix v1.12.1.3	< Back Install Cancel

e. Click **Finish** to close the installation wizard, and you might want to run VAST Matrix immediately after installation by selecting the option **Run VAST Matrix**.

🕎 VAST Matrix Setup	
	Completing the VAST Matrix Setup Wizard VAST Matrix has been installed on your computer. Click Finish to close this wizard. Run VAST Matrix
	< Back <b>Einish</b> Cancel

# Launching VAST Matrix

Please follow the steps below to install VAST Matrix Program:

a. Click the desktop icon to start VAST Matrix. When it's begun running, there will be a VAST Matrix tray icon on the toolbar for the user to configure easily.





VAST Matrix

b. The VAST Matrix live view window with multiple types of layout will be displayed. The following shows 32-channels layout.

XVIVOTEK-		EVIVOTEK.	YVIVOTEK.	<b>XVIVOTEK</b>	XVIVOTEK.	<b>VIVOTEN</b>
		XVIVOTEK.	<b>XVIVOTEK</b>	<b>SVIVOTEK</b>	<b>EVIVOTEK</b>	SVIVOTEN
YVIVOTEK.	XVIVOTEK.	XVIVOTEK.	XVIVOTEK.	<b>EVIVOTEK</b>	EVINGTER.	-XVIVOTEN
YVIVOTEK.	XVIVOTEK.	<b>EVIVETEK</b>	XVIVOTEK.	<b>SVIVOTEK</b>	XVIVGTEK.	<b>EVIVOTEN</b>
Xvivotek.	XVIVOTEK.	YVIVOTEK.	YVIVOTEK.	<b>Svivotek</b>	YVIVOTEK.	XVINOTEN

c. **Right-click** on the live view window, a function menu will pop up. You may also open the menu by right-click on the tray icon.

Configuration ⊻iew Settings	
<u>L</u> anguage	•
<u>D</u> isplay Client Information <u>A</u> bout Exit	

#### Configuration

- Connection: Enter the account, password and port information for the VAST Recipient.
- Monitor: It shows the monitor(s) connected to your host. You can select the monitor(s) you wish to display as the video wall.
- Others

<u>Auto launch at windows startup</u>: Select this option if you want VAST Matrix to launch when windows starts up in case to avoid the computer reboots by itself and accidentally shuts down VAST Matrix.

<u>Display key frame only</u>: Select this option to display live video with the key frame only in order to save the bandwidth. It also lowers down the CPU loading and memory usage.

Enable de-interlace: Select this option if your linked device does not support de-interlace function. For example: VS7100.

Unfiguration	×	E Configuration	E Configuration	
Connection Monitor Others		Connection Monitor Others	Connection Monitor Others	
Port: 3455 🌲		Use only the checked monitors:	Auto launch at windows startup	
HTTPS Port 3444		Monitor 1		
Account: root				
Password:				
Confirm Password:				
ОК	Cancel	OK Cancel	OK Cancel	

#### **View Settings**

Please refer to page 238 for detailed illustration.

#### About

This dialog that shows the version of VAST Matrix and the simple statement of the version copyright.



Exit Click to close the VAST Matrix.

# **VAST Matrix Management**

Once the VAST Matrix Program is setup completely, the next step is to connect the VAST Server with VAST Matrix Recipient(s). Use LiveClient to log in VAST Server, then click **Configuration > Virtual Matrix Management** to configure Matrix Management and Matrix View Settings.

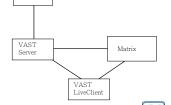
	ent	· .	
0 🗗 🔓 🖙 🗉	Station Management	+ E3  ←	ショー
B- VMS_Station(127.0	Logical Tree View Management	• In View	
Gamera	UO Box Management User Management	• • • • • • • •	
EN 19381	Association Management	server	🔳 💉 Mor
- 100 FE8182	Alarm Management		
FE8191	Virtual Matrix Management	<ul> <li>Matrix Mar</li> </ul>	nagement
(1) FE9181	Search VivoCam Switches	Matrix View	v Settings
- 🕮 198166	Station Sattings		
iii Recording St	Client Settings		

#### Matrix Management Settings

Please follow the steps to set up VAST Matrix Recipient(s):

- a. Click **Configuration > Virtual Matrix Management > Matrix Management** to open the Matrix Management window.
- b. Manually enter the Matrix Recipient Info as previous settings, or you click the search button loss search for the Matrix Recipient(s) on the LAN.

The Managed by menu allows you to let a LiveClient instance manage the Matrix configuration. In normal uses, the configuration is managed by the VAST server.



- c. When the information of the target recipient is filled in, you can use the detect button 🕙 to confirm if the filled information is correct.
- d. Click Add, then the recipient will be displayed on the Matrix Recipients list window.

V Matnx Management	Search Matrix Recipies	uts		×
Matrix Recipients Name Address Port Type Matrix server 192.168.6.143 3455 Server	Oust the matrix recipient	nts which are not inserted 3		
Matrix Recipient Info Managed by: Server  Name: Address: Port: 3455  Use SSL Server Address: Account:	MAC 00-18-F3-E9-72-1F	Address 192.160.4.139	Model VM7502	HTTP Port
Password: Model: C Add Update Close	C			



When entering a server address, please avoid entering the XML-related characters: <, >, &, ', and ".

e. Click <u>Edit display settings</u> to set up the viewing interface for the monitors (video wall) connected to the Matrix Recipient host.

💙 Display Settings 🛛 🛛 🕅			
Rotation Interval Time:	10	*	seconds(3~999)
☑ Enable de-interlace □ Display key frame only	_	K	Cancel

The Matrix View display is capable of executing rotation. The default interval time is set at 10 seconds.

- f. If you want to set up more Martrix Recipients, repeat the above steps.
- g. If you want to modify the Recipient Info, select it from the list to change settings, then click **Update** to enable the new settings.
- h. When all settings are done, click **Close** to exit the Matrix Management page.



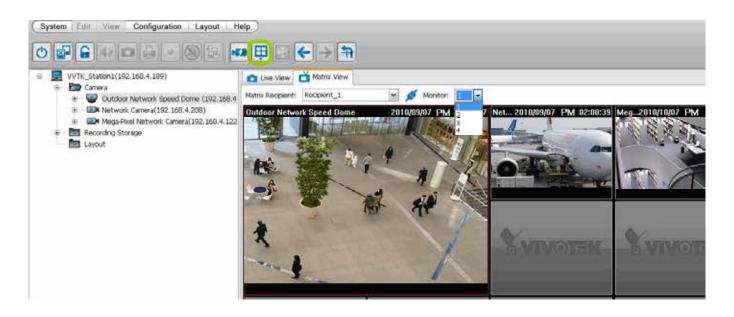
Due to the limitations imposed by the Windows UAC (User Account Control), you need to right-click on the Matrix icon to display and "run as administrator," after you close and re-start the Matrix utility.

#### Manage VAST Matrix through VAST LiveClient

Once the setup is complete in Virtual Matrix Management, you may go back to the main page of LiveClient, the connection between VAST Server and VAST Matrix will be working successfully. Then you can choose Matrix Recipient and the monitor from the drop-down list for the operation control. Some buttons on the quick access bar will be disabled when you switch from the Live View Panel to Matrix View Panel.

#### Change the layout

As the following picture shows, you can click 🖽 to change the layout and set new layout group on the Matrix View Panel using the methods same on the use of the LiveClient. The layout on the monitor (video wall) will also change synchronizely once you change the layout on Matrix View Panel.



#### Connection status

If the VAST Server is not able to connect to the Matrix Recipient, the status icon  $\swarrow$  will become  $\checkmark$  and show the reason of disconnecting when you slide the mouse to the connection status icon. The "Connection Lost" string will be displayed on the Matrix View window as shown below.



#### Rotation

VAST Matrix is capable of executing rotation by clicking 1. You can even select another layout group on the Matrix View window without stopping the rotation. If you want to adjust the rotation interval time, please refer to <u>Edit display settings</u> on page 177 for adjusting.

T.

PTZ

VAST Matrix currently does not support PTZ control.

Matrix View Menu	<u>R</u> emove	
Right-click on the window to open the menu.	<ul> <li>Stream 1</li> </ul>	
Remove: Remove the channel from VAST Matrix.	Stream 2	
Stream 1 ~ 4: Switch the camera stream between 1 ~ 4.	Stream 3	
	Stream 4	

Remove All Connections

It's capable of removing all connections from VAST Matrix once by clicking on 🜌 button.

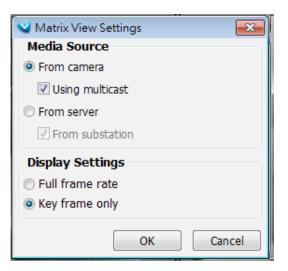
#### Matrix View Settings

Click Configuration > Virtual Matrix Management > Matrix View Settings to open the window.

Media Source

You can choose the path of media source from camera directly or the CMS server to display on Matrix View.

Display Settings

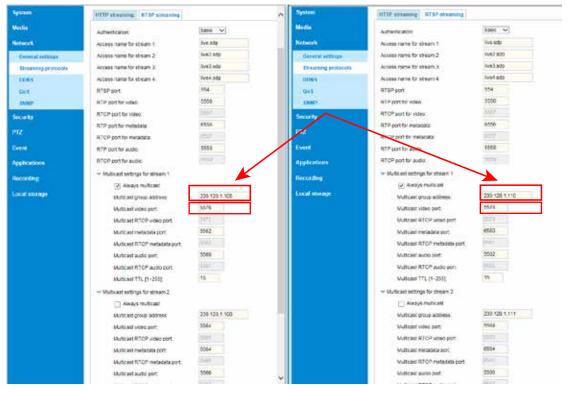


#### To configure Multicast video streaming for Matrix,

Using Multicast configuration help preserve cameras' system resources while streaming video to a Matrix machine. Before applying the Multicast settings, the related network settings should be properly configured on the individual network cameras.

- 1. Open the web console with the individual network cameras.
- 2. Enter the Configuration > Network > Streaming protocols window.
- 3. Change the Multicast settings for Stream 1 on each camera.

Note that it is very important to configure a **unique Multiple Group address** for each camera. Otherwise, images on the view cells will be overlapped, rendering the Matrix view useless. You can also configure the **unique Multicast video port** into a unique number.



Note that if you change the adress, the same address for stream #2, #3, and #4 will change accordingly.

The 239.0.0.0/8 address range is assigned by RFC 2365 for private use within an organization. From the RFC, packets destined to administratively scoped IPv4 multicast addresses do not cross administratively defined organizational boundaries, and administratively scoped IPv4 multicast addresses are locally assigned and do not have to be globally unique.

When finished with configuration, you can use the Wireshark utility to test the presence of multicast packets.

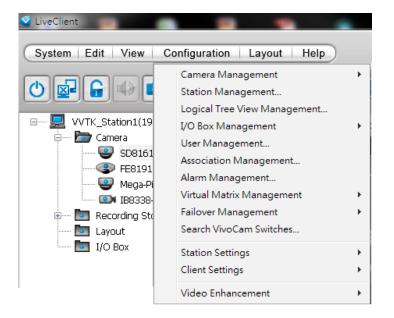
If you select the **Always Multicast** checkbox on the configuration page, multicast traffic will always be detected whether or not the Matrix settings have been synchronized or started between server and the Matrix machine.

<b>(</b> m	ulticent stream data-1 p	caping							B
le	Edit View Go C	apture Analyze Statistics	Telephony Wireless To	ools Help					
Ċ1	# # @ <b>#</b> = <b>X</b>	0 9 == ST	0.041						
TA.	aphy+ Angley filter the etc.	-A							- Expension-
-	n Experision Performance-		1.	their Apply that f	der .		Poler Eater a deploy filler	OK	and the second second second second
6	Tame	Source	Destaution	Protocol	Length Info				- Terry Constant
	1 0.000000	192.168.6.217	239.128.1.105	UDP	1298 5576 + 5576	Len-1256			
	2 0.004193	192.168.6.178	239.128.1.110	UOP	1458 5578 + 5578	Len-1416			
	3 0.004334	192.168.6.170	239.128.1.110	UDP	1454 5578 + 5578	Len-1412			
	4 0.004451	192.168.6.178	239.128.1.110	UDP	1454 5578 + 5578	Len-1412			
	5 0.004458	192.168.6.170	239.128.1.118	UDP	144 5578 + 5578	Len-182			
	6 8.816482	192.168.6.217	239.128.1.99	UOP	738 5584 + 5568	Len=688			
	7 0.017481	192.168.6.109	239.128.1.114	UDP	1458 5582 + 5582	Len-1416			
	8 0.017493	192.168.6.109	239.128.1.114	UDP	303 5582 • 5582	Len-261			
	9 0.029186	192.168.6.217	239.128.1.105	UDP	1261 5576 + 5576	Len-1219			
	18 8.843583	192.168.6.178	239.128.1.110	UOP	1458 5578 • 5578	Len-1416			
	11 0.843687	192.168.6.170	239.128.1.110	UDP	657 5578 + 5578	Len=615			
	12 8.846375	192.168.6.109	239.128.1.114	UDP	1458 5582 + 5582	Len-1416			
	13 0.046431	192.168.6.109	239.128.1.114	UDP	886 5582 + 5582	Len+844			
	14 0.059328	192.168.6.217	239.128.1.185	UOP	1421 5576 + 5576	Len-1379			
	15 0.074181	192.168.6.170	239.128.1.110	UDP	1458 5578 + 5578	Len-1416			
	16.0.074396	103 168 6 139	220, 128, 1, 110	100	1454 5578 + 5578	1			
EIU	thernet II, Src: nternet Protocol	Vivotek_3e:1d:97 (0) Version 4, Src: 192	<pre>(s), 1298 bytes capta 9:02:d1:3e:1d:97), Ds 168.6.217, Dst: 239. 5 (5576), Dst Port: 5</pre>	t: IPv4mca: 128.1.185					
00		1 69 88 82 d1 3e 1d 8 88 8f 11 ce d4 c8		^i>	0.05000				
02 03 04	0 01 69 15 c8 1 0 83 58 23 8e 1	5 c8 04 f0 2c 8e 90	e3 5d d0 11 04 .1 00 01 34 00 00 .X	#)	] .4				
0									II beat of
0	🗹 ministricent stareaus debe 1						Peckets: 27607 - Displayed: 27607 (100	(0%) · Loat tour 0.0.477	Profile: Classic

You can choose the display frame rate in the Matrix view as full frame rate or key frame only.

# Search VIVOCam Switches

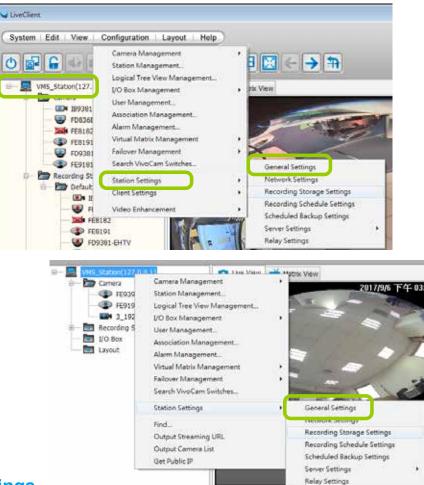
Use the serach managed switch function to locate and open a web console with the managed switches. Double-click on the entry found to open a web console.



Search VivoCam Switch	es.		Ro	fresh
lvoCam Switch List				
MAC	Address	Model	HTTP Port	
00-02-01-32-40-08	192.168.6.126	AW-GEV-264A-370	80	

# How to Configure the Station General Settings

Select the target station from the hierarchical management tree, then click **Configuration** > **Station Settings** > **General Settings** on the menu bar (or **right-click** the station on the hierarchical management tree and select **Station Settings** > **General Settings**). The **Station General Settings** window will pop up.



### **Server Settings**

In this section, you can modify the Station Name.

## **Log Settings**

In this section, you can set up Log Settings for the station.

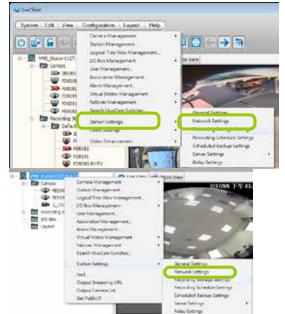
The VAST server allows user to search for the recorded log through VAST Playback. For more information, please refer to **How to Search Logs** on page 314.

- Log level: Select High (only record high-level logs), Normal (record high-level and normal-level logs), Low (record all logs). For detailed information about log levels, please refer to page 315.
- Reserve Time: Enter the time interval that you want to reserve the log record. The maximum value is 365 days.

Station General Setting	X
Server Setting	
Station Name: VVTK_Station1	
Log Settings	
Log Level: Normal 👻	
Reserve Time: 60 🗘 day(s)	
<u>OK</u> <u>Cancel</u>	

# How to Configure Station Network Settings

Select the target station from the hierarchical management tree, then click **Configuration** > **Station Settings** > **Network Settings** on the menu bar (or **right-click** the station on the hierarchical management tree and select **Station Settings** > **Network Settings**). The **Network Settings** window will pop up.



## Port Settings

- Server port: The default server port is set to 3454. If you change the server port, please enter the new value while logging the LiveClient next time.
- RTSP port: The RTSP (Real-Time Streaming Protocol) controls the delivery of streaming media. By default, the port number is set to 4543.

## **UPnP Settings**

- Enable UPnP port forwarding: For client to access the VAST Server from the Internet, select this option to allow the server to open ports on the router automatically so the video streams can be sent out from a LAN. To utilize of this feature, make sure that your router supports UPnP<sup>TM</sup> and it is activated.
- Enable UPnP presentation: If you select this option, shortcuts to VAST Server will be listed in My Network Places.

## **Proxy Settings**

In this section, you can enable, modify, or cancel **Proxy Settings** for VAST Server if your network devices are set up under a proxy.

## Web Access Settings

User can access VAST LiveClient and Playback via Internet web browser

(http://IP address:3454). For local host --> http://127.0.0.1:3454. See page 154 for Windows AD account information.



Wetwork Setti	шgs	
Port Settings -		
Server port:	ja 🗘	
RTSP port:	554 🗘	Apply
UPnP Settings		
Enable UPn	P port forwarding	
Enable UPn	P presentation	Apply
Proxy Settings		
Enable Pro	κy	
IP Address:		
Port:	80	
User Name:		
Password:		
-Web Access Se	ttings	
☑ Enable Web	Access	Apply

# How to Edit Recording Groups

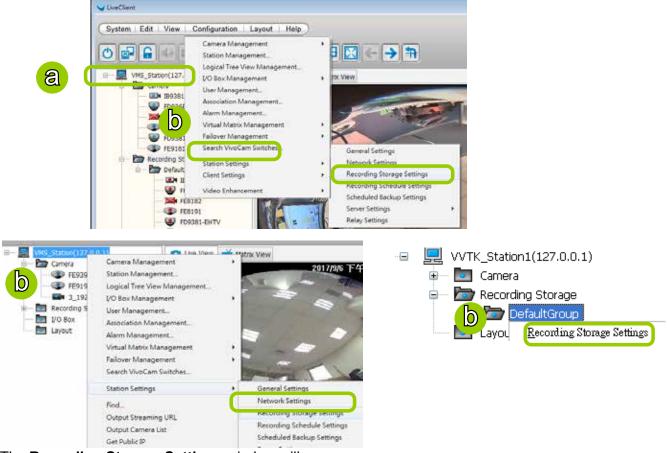
By default, all devices are assigned to the default recording group. You can manually remove a device from the default recording group. However, only those devices which belong to a recording group can produce recorded media files.

Another purpose of setting recording group is that you can divide all the managed devices into several recording groups, and for each recording group, you can assign several hard-disks (with recording paths) to store media data. The live media data will be stored in the first assigned hard-disk initially, and when the available space of the first hard disk reaches the preset reserved space limit, the media data will be stored in the second disk and so on. If the available space of the last disk reaches the reserved space limit, the recorded files in the first disk will be overwritten with the new media data. This procedure is called "Cyclic Recording".

### **Recording Storage Settings**

Please follow the steps below to set up recording groups for a station:

- a. Select the target station from the hierarchical management tree.
- b. Click Configuration > Station Settings > Recording Storage Settings on the menu bar (or rightclick the station on the hierarchical management tree and select Station Settings > Recording Storage Settings). You can also right-click DefaultGroup under the station and click Recording Storage Settings since all devices are assigned to the Default Recording Group by default.



c. The Recording Storage Settings window will pop up.

#### **Default Storage Group Settings**

The following example shows the default storage group settings. You can click **Rename** to modify the group name or click **X Delete** to remove the default settings.

	💙 Rec	ording §	Storage Settings for	VMS_Station					×
	Storaç	ge Grou	p: DefaultGroup	•	8				
	Paths	in Stora	ge Group		 	 			
			Ӿ 🔀						
d	Reco	very	Storage Path				Storage Inform	nation	
			C:\Record				Total:	916.15	GBytes
							Reserved:	91.00	GBytes
							Free:	705.73	GBytes

- d. The default recording path is D:\Recording. The total space and free space of the disk is shown on the right for reference.
- e. Add Local Path: Click 🔄 to add another recording path on your local computer. A Select Path dialog will pop up as shown below. When all settings are complete, click OK to enable the settings, or click Cancel to discard the settings. The default reserved space is 10% of the disk volume.
- f. Add Network Path: Click 🔄 to add a networked storage for recorded data. Please refer to page 215 for detailed information about how to add a new network storage server. Then double-click the **Path** to assign a specific folder as a new recording path.

Select Local Path	arage Server List:	
Image: Strength of the strengt of the strength of the strength of the strength of the strength	Address Domain Account 192.168.5.122 192.168.5.122 ritali	
Downloads     driver     Fric     Fric_desktop     Add     Delete     Rename	OK Clos	;e X
Path: E:\ Type: Storage Path Recovery Path Storage Ir formation Total: 488.29 GBytes Free: 131.66 GBytes Reserved: 48 GBytes	Select Activity Fault	
Click those buttons to modify the file folder under D:\ OK Cancel		
Note that the reserved space is the comparatively	Path: \\192.168.5.122\NAS	
small amount of storage space saved for data transaction during recording cycles. The reserved space is not the storage space configured for video recording.	Space Total: 90.45 GBytes Free: 7.81 GBytes Reserved: 2 C GBytes	

Cancel

OK

- g. To modify the settings of a path, select the path from the list, then click **Change settings** to modify.
- h. To delete a path, select the path from the list and click **S** Delete path. A warning dialog box will pop

as shown below.	Crefes
	Changing the address settings may temporarily pause recording and scheduled backup to apply the new settings. Are you sure you want to continue?
	gr. Gaves

- i. By default, all devices are assigned to the **Default Recording Group** in the window on the right. You can select device(s) from the list and click <- to delete device(s) (or **right-click** the device under DefaultGroup tree to delete it). Note that a **Delete Camera** dialog box will pop up. Click **Yes** to delete the device along with the recorded data; click **No** to delete the device but retain the recorded data; click **Cancel** to cancel the delete action. Please note that only those designated devices can record videos.
- j. Click -> to add devices to the **DefaultGroup**.

up

	Cameras:		Added Cameras (6/256): IB9381-HT
Group	Name	Address	FD836B-EHTV
<b>~</b>	IB9381-HT	192.168.6.170	FE8182
<b>~</b>	FD836B-EHTV	192.168.6.233	FE8191 FD9381-EHTV
<b>~</b>	FE8182	192.168.6.209	FE9181-H
<b>~</b>	FE8191	192.168.6.177	
<b>~</b>	FD9381-EHTV	192.168.6.109	->
<b>V</b>	FE9181-H	192.168.6.105	
			<u>R</u> estore <u>A</u> pply <u>C</u> lose

- k. Delete recorded data older than the duration: If you only want to retain recorded data for a duration, check this item and enter a number of day(s). In addition, since VAST Server will do "cyclic recording" automatically, the oldest file will be overwritten by the latest one when the maximum capacity is reached.
- I. When completed, click **Apply** to confirm and save your settings. If you want to cancel all of your editing, click **Restore** to return to the previous settings or click **close** to discard the settings.

### Add New Recording Group(s)

If you want to add a new recording group, click 💽 Add to give a name to the new recording group, which will be displayed on the drop-down list.

The following is an example of recording group list.

- Kecoraing	g Storage Settings for VM	S_Station				<b>-</b> ×
Storage Gro Paths in Sto	DefaultGroup Recording Group 1			ecording Group 1 OK Cancel	<b></b>	
Recovery	Storage Path			Storage Informa		-
	D:\recording			Total:	916.15	GBytes
				Reserved:	91.00	GBytes
				Free:	449.34	GBytes
Delete re	corded data older than	7 🗘 day(s)				
Cameras in S	Storage Group					
Available C	ameras:			Added Cameras (	6/256)	
Group	Name				0.200).	
	Name	Address		IB9381-HT	0.2007.	
<b>v</b>	IB9381-HT	Address 192.168.6.170		FD836B-EHTV FE8182		
				FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191		
~	IB9381-HT	192.168.6.170		FD836B-EHTV FE8182		
~	IB9381-HT FD836B-EHTV	192.168.6.170 192.168.6.233		FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV		
* * *	IB9381-HT FD836B-EHTV FE8182	192.168.6.170 192.168.6.233 192.168.6.209	->	FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV		
* * * *	IB9381-HT FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191	192.168.6.170 192.168.6.233 192.168.6.209 192.168.6.177	->	FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV		
* * * *	IB9381-HT FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV	192.168.6.170 192.168.6.233 192.168.6.209 192.168.6.177 192.168.6.109	->	FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV		
* * * *	IB9381-HT FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV	192.168.6.170 192.168.6.233 192.168.6.209 192.168.6.177 192.168.6.109	->	FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV		
* * * *	IB9381-HT FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV	192.168.6.170 192.168.6.233 192.168.6.209 192.168.6.177 192.168.6.109	->	FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV		
* * * *	IB9381-HT FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV	192.168.6.170 192.168.6.233 192.168.6.209 192.168.6.177 192.168.6.109	->	FD836B-EHTV FE8182 FE8191 FD9381-EHTV	<u>(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,</u>	

*Please refer to the following limits when you set up recording group(s):* 

- The maximum number of devices in a recording group is 64-CH. Please refer to the system requirements of the software.
- One recording group can be assigned with several recording paths and perform cylic recording; while one recording path should only be assigned to one recording group.

### Multiple Stream Recording

Since software revision 1.12, a camera's stream can be recorded to different storage paths, e.g., the server's internal storage and a Network Attached Storage. If hardware should fail (such as H.D.D. failure) on the VAST server, video can still be retrieved from other storage devices. This feature provides fault-tolerant redundancy for stream recording.

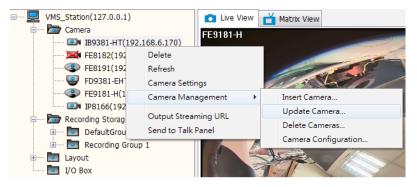
#### **Functional Requirements:**

- 1. Each camera can be configured into multiple Recording Storage Groups, and has individual configurations in each storage group.
- 2. Separate recording schedules can be configured for each camera in different storage groups.
- 3. Schedule Backup Settings:

As shown below, when configuring a Schedule Backup, each camera in different storage groups will be listed as individula entries. You can select to back up only one of the recording streams.

Enable scheduk	e backup						
Select Backup :	Source						$\sim$
🔿 Al Cameras	Selected came	ras				Ē	
Name	Address	Group *		189381-HT (F	Id autoco	0	N
FD9381-EHTV	192.168.6.109	DefaultGr	7	189381-H1 (F	seconding Gro	op 1)	
FE9181-H	192.168.6.105	DefaultGr	1				
IP8166	192.168.6.160	DefaultG	-*				
IB9381-HT	192.168.6.170	Recording _					
4 III	the rest of the l						
	Backup time : 12	[*]: 00 [*] [ [*]: 00 [*] [	-9 -0	00:00			
		(†); 00 (†) (		00:00			
Select Backup		(*); 00 (*) (		Browse			
Select Backup Path: E:\re	Target cording	* *		52-00 <sup>-</sup>			
Select Backup Path: E:\rei Naximum folder s	Target cording	•		52-00 <sup>-</sup>			
Select Backup Path: E:\re Naximum folder s	Target cording ize: Unlimited	•		52-00 <sup>-</sup>			
Select Backup Path: E:/rei Maximum folder s Delete oid ba	Target cording ize: Unlimited	• esufficient	•	Browse			
Select Backup Path: E:/rei Maximum folder s Delete oid ba	Target cording te: Unimited ckup data if space b a only Pre-event t	ersufficient Ime: 10	<-	Browse (2 ~ 20)			
Select Backup Path: E:/rei Maximum folder s Delete oid ba	Target cording be: Unimited be: Unimited ckup data if space b	ersufficient Ime: 10	•	Browse (2 ~ 20)			

4. By default, every camera is recruited into the Default Storage Group. You can select a camera from the device tree, right-click to select **Camera Management > Update camera**.



You can configure different video streams for different storage groups.

In here, you can configure the recording parameters for different storage groups. Note that you should only enable **Seamless Recording** or **Active Adaptive Stream** in one of the storage group. Applying these two functions on multiple streams can over-stress the camera.

Camera List						
- WMS_Station(127.0.0.1)	Brandt	VIVOTEK	-			
E9381-HT(192.168.6.170)	Camera Name:	189351-HT			100	
	Address:	192.168.6	170	190	01	
FE8191(192.168.6.177) FD9381-EHTV(192.168.6.1				000	5 M	
FE9181-H(192.168.6.105)	Model Name:	100361-017			-	
D8166(192.168.6.160)	MAC Address:	00020130	3864			
		Default Gro		4	~~~/	
	Basic Settin Recording Sb Pre-event Tir Post-event T Activity Ada	eam: 1 ne: 10 me: 10 sptive Stre	Group	seconds(3		s recording
	Recording St Pre-event Te Post-event T	P Recording ream: 1 me: 10 me: 10	Group	seconds(3	-15)	i recording
	Recording St Pre-event Tr Post-event T Activity Ada	P Recording ream: 1 me: 10 me: 10	Group	seconds(3	-15)	i recording
	Recording St Pre-event Tr Post-event T Activity Ada	P Recording ream: 1 me: 10 me: 10	Group	seconds(3	-15)	i recording

5. When performing Instant Replay or Instant Playback, the system will poll the first available storage group only. If video is not available in the first storage group, playback will fail.

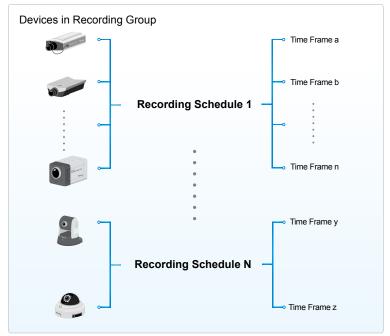
Note that Multiple Stream Recording is not supported when access is made via a web console. From a web console, playback displays the stream that last joined the recording storage group.

When the stream recording takes place on any of the camera's streams, the red indicator will light on on the camera's view cell.

# How to Edit Recording Schedules

After editing recording storage settings, you can begin to edit recording schedules for the devices in a recording group. By default, all devices are assigned to the default recording schedule (Please refer to the default time frame settings on page 196). Therefore, once you insert a device to the station, the VAST Server will begin to record live video according to the default recording schedule. You can also manually remove a device from the default recording schedule. Please note that you cannot assign recording schedules to those devices which have been deleted from a recording group.

The following is an illustration of a set of recording schedules, which are composed of several time frames. Each time frame has its own time segments, period of time, repeat interval, and recording mode. You can create different recording schedules with simple or complex time frames based on your needs.



In addition, you can arrange the priority of each time frame according to its importance. The recording schedule with the highest priority will be applied first. This capability is very useful because you can specify a new time frame with the highest priority temporarily without modifying the other time frames.

Features of the recording schedules:

- Each device can be assigned to only one recording schedule.
- Each recording schedule may contain many time frames.
- Each time frame has its own repeat frequency and recording mode.

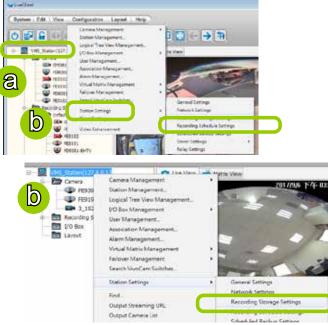
To save time editing recording schedules and time-frames, we also provide a useful **template** function to save your time on schedules/time-frames settings. That is, you can save a specified schedule and download it as a template for future use or upload a well-arranged schedule template designed by others.

Please note that after you save the recording settings in the server, the recording schedule will begin automatically according to your settings.

## **Edit Schedule List**

Please follow the steps below to set up the recording schedules:

- a. Select the target station from the hierarchical management tree.
- b. Click **Configuration > Station Settings > Recording Schedule Settings** on the menu bar (or **rightclick** the station and select **Station Settings > Recording Schedule Settings**).



c. The **Recording Schedule Settings** window will pop up. By default, all cameras under the station are assigned to **Default Schedule**, **Default Time Frame**, and **Default Camera List**.

### Add Schedules

d. To add a new recording schedule, click **Add** to enter a name in the Schedule Name dialog box for the new schedule. Click **OK** to confirm the settings or **Cancel** to discard the settings. The new recording schedule will be displayed on the schedule drop-down list.

#### Rename Schedules

e. To rename an existing schedule, select the schedule from the schedule drop-down list and click **Rename**. A Schedule Name dialog will pop up for you to fill in a name for the new schedule. Click **OK** to confirm the settings or **Cancel** to discard the settings. The new recording schedule will be displayed on the schedule drop-down list.

### **Delete Schedules**

f. To delete an existing schedule, select the schedule from the schedule drop-down list and click **Delete**. A Remove Schedule dialog box will pop up. Click **OK** to confirm or **Cancel** to discard the settings.



### Load/Save Schedule Templates

- g. If you have a schedule template with time frame settings, you can upload it to simplify the editing of the schedule. Click **Load Template**, and a **Load File** dialog box will pop up. Select the template file and click **Open** to load.
- h. If you want to save a schedule as a template for future use, select the schedule from the schedule drop-down list and click **Save as Template**. A **Save File** dialog box will pop up for you to save the template file.

Schedu	ule Settings for VVT	<_Station1			h		×
Schedule List: Defa	ault Schedule 💌	Add Renam	ne Delete	Load Template	Save as Template		
9	Load file	My Documen	ts		- È ř II-	Üpen	
b	Save file	Files of type:	TimeTable tem			Cancel	

## **Edit Camera List**

Please follow the steps below to assign a device to a recording schedule:

- a. Select a recording schedule on the schedule drop-down list.
- b. By default, all devices under the station are assigned to the **Default Schedule**.
- c. Click << to remove devices from the **Default Schedule**. Click >> to add devices to the **Default Schedule**.
- d. Click **Apply** to confirm or **Close** to discard the settings.

					Recording Settings	
Time Frame	Rule				Recording Mode: Event	
Always	Weekly Settin	ng (Day-based)				•
					Triggers	
					Motion V PIR	Tampering
					🔽 P-PTZ 🛛 Line Crossing 🔽	Field Detection
					Digital Input	
					Traditional Recording	
					Trigger State Normal St	ate
					Recording from DI activated to	n DI normal
Add	Edit Delete		Up	Down	Recording from DI activated to     Recording from DI permate D	
	Edit Delete			Down	<ul> <li>Recording from DI activated to</li> <li>Recording from DI normal to D</li> </ul>	
Add Camera List					○ Recording from DI normal to D	
Camera List Name	Address (	Group	Schedule		_	
Camera List Name Mega-Pixel Ne	Address ( 192.168.4.121 [	Group DefaultGroup	Schedule Yes		Recording from DI normal to D Mega-Pixel Network Camera Mireless camera Mega-Pixel Network Camera	
Camera List Name Mega-Pixel Ne Wireless camera	Address ( 192.168.4.121 [ 192.168.6.143 [	Group DefaultGroup DefaultGroup	Schedule Yes Yes		Recording from DI normal to D Aega-Pixel Network Camera Vireless camera Aega-Pixel Network Camera Aega-Pixel Network Camera	
Camera List Name Mega-Pixel Ne Wireless camera Mega-Pixel Ne	Address ( 192.168.4.121 [ 192.168.6.143 [ 192.168.6.127 [	Group DefaultGroup DefaultGroup DefaultGroup	Schedule Yes Yes Yes		Recording from DI normal to D Mega-Pixel Network Camera Mireless camera Mega-Pixel Network Camera	
Camera List Name Mega-Pixel Ne Wireless camera Mega-Pixel Ne Mega-Pixel Ne	Address ( 192.168.4.121 [ 192.168.6.143 [ 192.168.6.127 [ 192.168.6.217 [	Group DefaultGroup DefaultGroup DefaultGroup DefaultGroup	Schedule Yes Yes Yes Yes		Recording from DI normal to D Aega-Pixel Network Camera Vireless camera Aega-Pixel Network Camera Aega-Pixel Network Camera	
Camera List Name Mega-Pixel Ne Wireless camera Mega-Pixel Ne	Address ( 192.168.4.121 [ 192.168.6.143 [ 192.168.6.127 [ 192.168.6.217 [	Group DefaultGroup DefaultGroup DefaultGroup	Schedule Yes Yes Yes	C	Recording from DI normal to D Aega-Pixel Network Camera Vireless camera Aega-Pixel Network Camera Aega-Pixel Network Camera	
Camera List Name Mega-Pixel Ne Wireless camera Mega-Pixel Ne Mega-Pixel Ne	Address ( 192.168.4.121 [ 192.168.6.143 [ 192.168.6.127 [ 192.168.6.217 [	Group DefaultGroup DefaultGroup DefaultGroup DefaultGroup	Schedule Yes Yes Yes Yes	C	Recording from DI normal to D Aega-Pixel Network Camera Vireless camera Aega-Pixel Network Camera Aega-Pixel Network Camera	
Camera List Name Mega-Pixel Ne Wireless camera Mega-Pixel Ne Mega-Pixel Ne	Address ( 192.168.4.121 [ 192.168.6.143 [ 192.168.6.127 [ 192.168.6.217 [	Group DefaultGroup DefaultGroup DefaultGroup DefaultGroup	Schedule Yes Yes Yes Yes	C	Recording from DI normal to D Aega-Pixel Network Camera Vireless camera Aega-Pixel Network Camera Aega-Pixel Network Camera	

If you add a Network Device that does not belong to any Recording Group, a warning dialog will pop up as shown below. For more information about how to set up Recording Group(s), please refer to Recording Group Settings on page 186.

Camera List				
Name	Address	Group	Scheduled 1_PZ7131	
1_PZ7131 2_IP8161	192.168.3.247 172.16.200.40	DefaultGroup	Yes No	
			Error	1
	The camera is not in recording group.			
				Apply Close

## **Edit Time Frame List**

### Default Time Frame: Weekly (Day-based), Mon.~Sun., 24-hour, continuous recording

Recording Schedule Settings for VVTK_Station1					
Schedule List: Default Schedule 🗸 Add Rename Delete Load Template Save as Template					
Time Frame List					
Time Frame	Rule		Recording Settings		
Always	Weekly Setting (Day-based)		Recording Mode: Event 🔻		
			Triggers		
			Motion PIR Tampering		
			▼P-PTZ ✓ Line Crossing ✓ Field Detection	ion	
			Digital Input		
			Traditional Recording		
			Trigger State Normal State		
Add		Down	Recording from DI activated to DI normal		

Click Edit to open the Default Time Frame settings page as shown below.

Time Frame	<b>x</b>
Time Frame Name:	Always Load Template Save as Template Save
Repeat Frequency:	Weekly Setting (Day-based)
-Weekly Setting (	Day-based)
Set time segments	s in a 24-hour day. Multiple segments are allowed.
0 1 2 3	4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23
Start Time: 00	
End Time: 23	🗘 55 🔶 Add Delete
Repeat on: 🔲 Sui	nday 🗌 Monday 💭 Tuesday 💭 Wednesday 💭 Thursday 💭 Friday 💭 Saturday
Range	
Start: 2013/ 7/1	0 ▼ End: ◎ 2013/ 7/10 ▼
	Never Stop
Repeat every 1	Veek(s)

### Add New Time Frames

Please follow the steps below to add new time frames to a schedule:

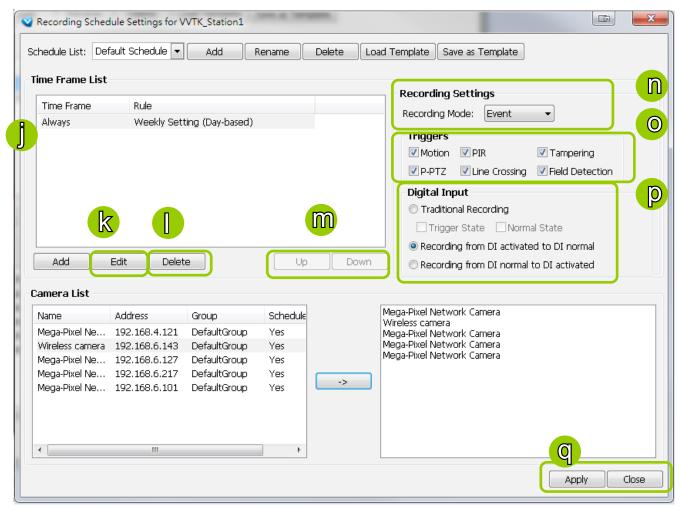
- a. Select a recording schedule from the drop-down list.
- b. Click Add to open the Time Frame Settings window.

	Recording Schedule Settings for VVTK_Station1					
ଶ୍ଚ	Schedule List: Default Schedule - Add Rename Delete Load Template Save as Template					
	- Time Frame List -			Recording Settings		
	Time Frame	Rule				
	Always	Weekly Setting (Day-based)		Recording Mode: Event	<b>•</b>	
				Triggers		
				Motion VIR	🗹 Tampering	
				P-PTZ Vine Cross	ing 🛛 Field Detection	
				Digital Input		
	b			Traditional Recording		
				Trigger State	ormal State	
	Add	Edit Delete	Up Do	© Recording from DI acti	vated to DI normal	

- c. Enter a name for the new time frame.
- d. If you have a time-frame template, you can upload it to simplify the editing of the schedule. Click **Load Template** and the **Load File** dialog box will pop up. Select the template file to load.
- e. To edit the new time frame, select a **Repeat Frequency** from the drop-down list and edit the time segments, applicable days, applicable period of time, and repeat time interval. For the detailed settings of each repeat frequency, please refer to **The Concept of Repeat Frequency** on page 200.
- f. When completed, click **Save** to enable the settings.
- g. If you want to save this time frame as a template for future use, click **Save as Template**. A **Save file** dialog will pop up for you to save the template.

Time Frame					<b>B</b>	(†)
Time Frame Na	me Time Frame 2		Load Te	mplate	Save as Template	e Save
Repeat Frequency Weekly Setting (Periods in a week)						
		ultiple segments are allo	wed.			
Sun	Mon	Tue W	ed	Thu	Fri	Sat
0 1 2	3 4 5 6	7 8 9 10 11	12 13 14	15 16	17 18 19 20	21 22 23
Start Time End Time		00 00 00			Add	Delete
Range:						
Start 2010	/ 1/27 🔽 🛛 En	1 🔿 2010/ 1/27 🔽				
		<ol> <li>Never Stop</li> </ol>				
Repeat ever	y 1 🛟 Week(s	)				

- h. If you want to add additional time frames to the schedule, repeat the steps above.
- i. Close the window when you finish the time frame settings.
- j. Back to the Recording Schedule Settings window, the new time frame will be displayed on the Time Frame List.
- k. If you want to edit an existing time frame, select if from the Time Frame List and click Edit to set up.
- I. If you want to delete an existing time frame, select if from the Time Frame List and click **Delete**.
- m. If you want to change the priority of a time frame, select it from the Time Frame List and click **Up** or **Down** to shift its position. The time frame on the top of the list has the highest priority.

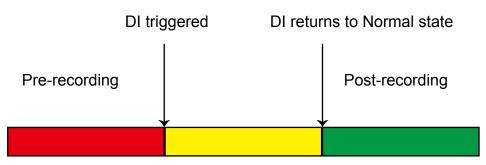


#### **Recording Settings**

- n. Select one of the following Recording Modes for the time frame:
  - **None**: No recording action.
  - Continuous: 24-hours continuous recording. If you want to enable Activity Adaptive Streaming, please refer to page 189 for detailed illutration.
  - Event: The server will start to record only when an event is triggered. The recording time length depends on the settings in Recording Storage Settings. The default time length is 20 seconds (10s pre-event time plus 10s post-event time). Please refer to page 188 for more information. For more information about event catagories, please refer to page 308 for detailed information.
- Select Trigger Source(s): Motion Detection, Line Crossing, Field Detection, PIR, Tampering Detection, and P-PTZ (Auto Tracking).
- p. Digital Input: See next page for more information.

The Digital Input signal triggers can be configured as follows:

- 1. Traditional Recording: can be triggered when the DI enters the Trigger State or the Normal State. If thus configured, the recording task will end when the post-event recording time is reached.
- 2. The recording starts when DI is triggered, and will end when the DI signal returns to Normal.
- 3. The recording starts when DI is Normal, and will end when the DI signal returns to Triggered.
- 4. The DI-triggered recordings also include the appended lengths of pre- and post-event recordings (default is 10 seconds). Therefore, the length of DI-triggered recording is as follows:



An example for the configuration can be: the recording starts when a door is opened (DI triggered), and the recording stops when the door is closed (DI returns to normal).

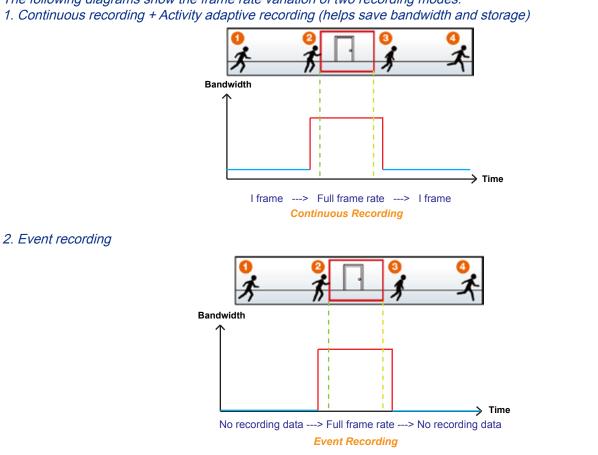


When connected, a camera's Digital input signal is automatically detected as pulled-high or pulled-low. Users should then designate the current state as Normal or Trigger. The configuration page is found in **Configuration > Application > Digital Input** on a web console.

Applications	> Digital input	
Digital input		7
Normal status:		
Current status:	High	
	Save	

q. Click **Apply** to confirm the settings. Then close the window when you finish the recording schedule settings.





## The Concept of Repeat Frequency

VAST offers the following types of repeat frequency. The definition of each type is listed in the following table:

Repeat Frequency	Discription
Daily Setting	<ul> <li>Specify arbitrary time segments within a day,</li> <li>Repeat the segments every N days in the specified period of time.</li> </ul>
Weekly Setting (Day-based) (Default Time Frame)	<ul> <li>Specify arbitrary time segments within a day,</li> <li>Apply only on selected days of a week,</li> <li>Repeat the segments every N weeks during the specified period of time.</li> </ul>
Weekly Setting (Periods in a week)	<ul> <li>Specify arbitrary time segments within a week,</li> <li>Repeat the segments every N weeks during the specified period of time.</li> </ul>
Monthly Setting (Day-based)	<ul> <li>Specify arbitrary time segments within a day,</li> <li>Apply only on selected days of a month,</li> <li>Repeat the segments every N months during the specified period of time.</li> </ul>
Yearly Setting (Day-based)	<ul> <li>Specify arbitrary time segments within a day,</li> <li>Apply only on selected days of a year,</li> <li>Repeat the segments every N years during the specified period of time.</li> </ul>

The following diagrams show the frame rate variation of two recording modes:

### Repeat Frequency: Daily Setting

To set up daily repeat frequency, please configure the following items: Daily time segments, applicable period of time, and repeat time interval.

Time Frame	
Time Frame Name         Load Template         Save as Template         Save	
Repeat Frequency Daily Setting	
Daily Setting	
Set time segments in a 24-hour day. Multiple segments are allowed.	Daily time segments
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 Daily timeline control bar	*You can drag the daily
Start Time 00 00 00	timeline bar for more than one time segment
	per day.
End Time 00 🗘 00 🗘 Add Delete	
Range:	
Start 2010/ 1/27 V End O 2010/ 1/27 V	Applicable period of
Never Stop	time
Repeat every 1 C Day(s)	Repeat time interval

#### Set up daily time segments

You can specify several time segments within a day. The numbers 0~23 on the **hourly timeline control bar** (the purple rectangles) represent the 24 hours in a day.

There are two ways to define time segments: one is to use the computer mouse to manipulate the timeline control bars; the other is to fill in the precise start and end time values in the corresponding fields.

#### Add time segments: Choose either step 1 or step 2 to set up

1. Use the mouse to drag the timeline bars:

- a. Left-click the daily timeline control bar (the purple rectangles) and drag the mouse.
- b. The corresponding time segment will also appear in the Start Time and End Time fields. Click **Add**, then the red timeline bars representing new time segments will appear as shown below. You can drag multiple time segments within a day.

In the following illustration, the yellow arrows show the dragging direction of the mouse. You can drag from left to right or the opposite.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23
Start Time 08 🛟 00 🛟	(m)
End Time 19 🗘 00 🗘	Add Delete

#### 2. Fill in the precise Start Time and End Time:

a. Directly enter the value in the Start Time and End Time fields, then click Add.

b. The corresponding red timeline bar will automatically appear as shown below.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 12 20 21 22 23
a	
Start Time 08 🗘 00 🗘	
End Time 19 🗘 00 🗘	Add Delete

#### Delete time segments: Choose either step 1 or step 2 to set up

1. Use the mouse to erase the timeline bar: **Right-click** on an existing red timeline bar and drag the mouse. A green timeline bar representing the deleted part of the time segment will erase the red bar as shown below.

In the following illustration, the green arrows show the dragging direction of the mouse. You can drag it from left to right or the opposite.

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 1	6 17 18 19 20 21 22 23
Start Time 08 🛟 00 🛟	Steel	
End Time 19 🗘 00 🗘		Add Delete
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 1	6 17 18 19 20 21 22 23
Start Time 12 🗘 00 🗘		
End Time 14 🗘 00 🗘		Add Delete

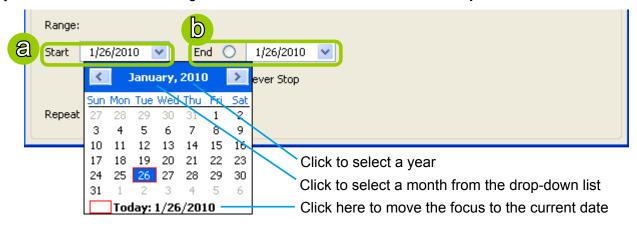
- 2. Use the delete button to remove the entire timeline bar:
  - a. Click an existing red timeline bar or **left-click** the **daily timeline control bar** (the purple rectangles) and drag the mouse.
  - b. The corresponding time segment will appear in the Start Time and End Time fields.
  - c. Click **Delete**, and the selected timeline bar will disappear.

	8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 1	6 17 18 a 20 21 22 23
O Start Time 14 🗘 00 🗘	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	C C
End Time 19 🗘 00 🗘		Add Delete
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 1	6 17 18 19 20 21 22 23
Start Time 14 🗘 00 🗘		
End Time 19 🗘 00 🗘		Add Delete

#### Set up applicable period of time

For repeat frequencies, you can set up the applicable date and period of time for the time frame.

- a. Specify the start date and time in the **Start** field. A calendar date selector will appear when you click on the drop-down list of **date**. Click **<** or **>** to select the month, then pick a desired day in the calendar.
- b. Specify the end date and time in the **End** field if you have an end time for applying this time frame. If you do not have a terminating time for this time frame, select **Never Stop**.



#### Set up repeat time interval

The repeat time intervals is "every N day(s)" as shown below. Repeat every 1 day means the time frame would apply for every day within the period of time.

Repeat every	1	*	Day(s)

### Repeat Frequency: Weekly Setting (Day-based)

To set up Weekly (Day-based) repeat frequency, please configure the following items: Daily time segments, applicable days within a week, applicable period of time, and repeat time interval.

Time Frame	
Time Frame Name         Load Template         Save as Template         Save	
Repeat Frequency Weekly Setting (Day-based)	
Weekly Setting (Day-based)	
Set time segments in a 24-hour day. Multiple segments are allowed.	
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23	_ Daily Time segments
Daily timeline control bar (24h)	*You can drag more than one time segment
	per day.
End Time 00 \$ 00 \$	
Repeat on Sunday Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday	_ Applicable days
	within a week
Range:	
Start 2010/ 1/28 👻 End 🔾 2010/ 1/28 💌	<ul> <li>Applicable period of</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Never Stop</li> </ul>	time
Repeat every 1 🗘 Week(s)	- Repeat time interval

Set up daily time segments

Please refer to page 201 for detailed instructions.

Set up applicable days within a week

For repeat frequency--"Weekly (day based)", you can apply the time segments only on selected days of the week.

Repeat on 🗌 Sunday 📄 Monday 📄 Tuesday 📄 Wednesday 📄 Thursday 📄 Friday 📄 Saturday
--

Set up applicable period of time

Please refer to page 203 for detailed instructions.

#### Set up repeat time interval

The repeat time intervals is "every N week(s)" as shown below. Repeat every 1 week means the time frame would apply for every week within the period of time.

Repeat every 1	v	Week(s)
----------------	---	---------

### Repeat Frequency: Weekly Setting (Periods in a week)

To set up Weekly (Periods in a week) repeat frequency, please configure the following items: Time segments within a week, applicable period of time, and repeat time interval.

Time Frame	
Time Frame Name         Load Template         Save	
Repeat Frequency Weekly Setting (Periods in a week) 🖌	
Weekly Setting (Periods in a week)	
Set time segments in a week. Multiple segments are allowed.	
Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat	_ Time segments within
Weekly timeline control bar         0       1       2       3       4       5       6       7       8       9       10       11       12       13       14       15       16       17       18       19       20       21       22       23         Daily timeline control bar (24hr)         Start Time       Sunday       00       00       \$         Add       Delete	a week *You can drag more than one time segment per week.
Range: Start 2010/ 1/28 ▼ End ○ 2010/ 1/28 ▼ ⊙ Never Stop	– Applicable period of time
Repeat every 1 🗘 Week(s)	- Repeat time interval

#### Set up time segments within a week

You can specify several time segments within a week. The **weekly timeline contol bar** represents the 7 days of a week, and the **daily timeline contol bar** represents the 24 hours in a day. The daily timeline control bar is only valid when one of the days on the weekly timeline control bar has been selected.

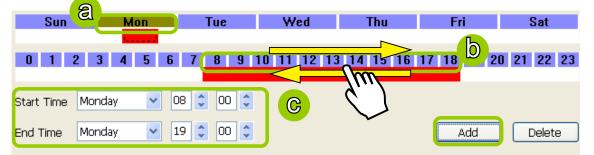
There are two ways to set up time segments: one is to use the computer mouse to draw the timeline control bars; the other is to fill in the precise start and end time value in the corresponding fields.

#### Add time segments: Choose either step 1 or step 2 to set up

1. Use the mouse to drag the timeline bars:

- a. Click on a day on the weekly timeline control bar. The selected bar will turn green.
- b. Left-click the daily timeline control bar and drag the mouse.
- c. The corresponding time segment will also appear in the Start Time and End Time fields. Click **Add**, then the red timeline bars representing new time segments will appear as shown below. You can drag multiple time segments within a day and a week.

In the following illustration, the yellow arrows show the dragging direction of the mouse. You can drag from left to right or the opposite.



#### 2. Fill in a precise Start Time and End Time:

- a. Directly select a day and enter the value in the Start Time and End Time fields, then click Add.
- b. The corresponding red timeline bars will automatically appear as shown below.

The following is an example of an extended time segment from Mon. 8:00 to Fri. 19:00.

	Sun	м	on	Тие	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	
								b	
	0 1 3	234	56	7 8 9	10 11 12 13	3 14 15 16	17 18 19	20 21 22 2	23
a	Start Time	Monday	<b>v</b> 08	00 \$					
	End Time	Friday	✓ 19	00 🗘			Add	Delete	

**Delete time segments:** Please refer to page 202 for detailed instructions.

Set up applicable period of time

Please refer to page 203 for detailed instructions.

Set up repeat time interval

(

Please refer to page 204 for detailed instructions.

### Repeat Frequency: Monthly Setting (Day-based)

To set up Monthly (Day-based) repeat frequency, please configure the following items: Daily time segments, applicable date(s) of a month/ day(s) of a week, applicable period of time, and repeat time interval.

Time Frame	
Time Frame Name Load Template Save as Template Save	
Repeat Frequency Monthly Setting (Day-based)	
Monthly Setting (Day-based)	
Set time segments in a 24-hour day. Multiple segments are allowed.	
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23	Daily time segments
Start Time       00 \$ 00 \$         End Time       00 \$ 00 \$	*You can drag more than one time segment per day.
Repeat on Date (of a month)	Applicable data(a) of
January V 2010 C Repeat on the following date(s) of a month:	Applicable date(s) of a month/ day(s) of a
Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat       1       2         3       4       5       6       7       8       9         10       11       12       13       14       15       16         17       18       19       20       21       22       23         24       25       26       27       28       29       30         31	week
Range:	Annella shi a sada da fa
Start 2010/ 1/28 ♥ End ○ 2010/ 1/28 ♥ ③ Never Stop	<ul> <li>Applicable period of time</li> </ul>
Repeat every 1 🗘 Month(s) -	Repeat time interval

Set up daily time segments

Please refer to page 201 for detailed instructions.

Set up applicable date(s) of a month/ day(s) of a week

For repeat frequency--"monthly (day-based)", you can apply the time segments only on selected days of a month. There are two types of repeat frequencies: Date(s) of a month and Day(s) of a week.

#### Repeat by date(s) of a month:

Select date(s) from the calendar, and it will be displayed on the right blank as shown below. The following example refers to the  $1^{st} \sim 5^{th}$  day of a month.

Repea	at on	Da	te (o	famo	onth)	)		
Janua	ary	~	2	2010		-	Repeat on the following date(s) of a month:	
3 10 17	4 11 18	<b>1</b> 2 19	6 13 20	14 21	1 8 15 22	2 9 16 23	01 02 03 04 05	Delete
24 31	25	26	27	28	29	30		

#### Repeat by day(s) of a week:

Select day(s) from the calendar, and it will be displayed on the right blank as shown below. The following example refers to the  $1^{st} \sim 5^{th}$  Friday of a month.

R	epea	at on	Da	y (of	a we	ek)	~		
ן	anua	ary	~	2	010		*	Repeat on the following day(s) of a month:	
	Gun	Mon	Tue		Thu	1	2	1st Friday 2nd Friday 3rd Friday	
	3 10	4 11	5 12	6 13	7 14	8 15	9 16	4th Friday	Delete
	17 24	18 25	19 26	20 27	21 28	22 29	23 30	5th Friday	
	31	23	20	27	20	29	30		

Set up applicable period of time

Please refer to page 203 for detailed instructions.

Set up repeat time interval

The repeat time intervals is "every N month(s)" as shown below. Repeat every 1 month means the time frame would apply for every month within the period of time.

Repeat every 1	1 🌲	Month(s)
----------------	-----	----------

### Repeat Frequency: Yearly Setting (Day-based)

To set up Yearly (Day-based) repeat frequency, please configure the following items: Daily time segments, applicable date(s) of a year/ day(s) of a week, applicable period of time, and repeat time interval.

End Time 00 © 00 ©   Per day.   Repeat on Date (of a year)   Applicable date(s)   Applicable date(s)	Time Frame	
Yearly Setting (Day-based)         Set time segments in a 24-hour day. Multiple segments are allowed.         0       1       2       3       4       5       6       7       8       9       10       11       12       13       14       15       16       17       18       19       20       21       22       23       Daily time segments       *You can drag more than one time segment         Start Time       0       0       0       •       Add       Delete       *You can drag more than one time segment         Repeat on       Date (of a year)       •       Applicable date(s)       •	Time Frame Name Save as Template Save as Template Save	Gave
Set time segments in a 24-hour day. Multiple segments are allowed.     0   1   2   3   4   5   7   8   9   10   10   11   12   12   3   4   5   6   7   8   9   10   11   12   13   14   15   16   17   18   19   20   21   22   23   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   11   12   13   14   15   16   17   18   19   20   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   11   12   13   14   15   16   17   18   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10   10 <t< td=""><td>Repeat Frequency Yearly Setting (Day-based)</td><td></td></t<>	Repeat Frequency Yearly Setting (Day-based)	
0       1       2       3       4       5       6       7       8       9       10       11       12       13       14       15       16       17       18       19       20       21       22       23       23       Timeline control bar (24hr)       *You can drag more than one time segments         Start Time       00       00       •       Add       Delete       *You can drag more than one time segments         Repeat on       Date (of a year)       •       Applicable date(s)       Applicable date(s)       of an end	Yearly Setting (Day-based)	
Start Time       OO I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	Set time segments in a 24-hour day. Multiple segments are allowed.	
Start Time       00 \$ 00 \$       *You can drag more than one time segmen per day.         Repeat on       Date (of a year)       Add       Delete	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 ;	Daily time segments
	Start Time 00 🗘 00 🗘	*You can drag more than one time segment
	Reneat on Date (of a year)	
lanuary V 2010 C Repeat on the following date(s) of a year:	January V 2010 C Repeat on the following date(s) of a year:	of a year/ day(s) of a
Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat		week
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		te
10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31	10       11       12       13       14       15       16         17       18       19       20       21       22       23         24       25       26       27       29       30	
Range:	Range:	
time		Applicable period of
⊙ Never Stop	<ul> <li>Never Stop</li> </ul>	
Repeat every 1 🗘 Year(s) - Repeat time interval	Repeat every 1 🗢 Year(s) -	Repeat time interval

Set up daily time segments

Please refer to page 201 for detailed instructions.

Set up applicable date(s) of a year/ day(s) of a week

For repeat frequency--"yearly (day-based)", you can apply the time segments only on selected days of a year. There are two types of repeat frequencies: Date(s) of a year and Day(s) of a week.

#### <u>Repeat by date(s) of a year:</u>

Select date(s) from the calendar, and it will be displayed on the right blank as shown below. The following example refers to the  $1^{st} \sim 5^{th}$  day of a year.

Re	epea	t on	Dat	e (ot	fa ye	ar)	*		
Ja	anua	iry	~	2	010		\$	Repeat on the following date(s) of a year:	
5	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	01/01	]
						1	2	01/02	
	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	01/03	Delete
	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	01/04 01/05	
	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	61,03	
	24	25	26	27	28	29	30		
	31								]

#### Repeat by day(s) of a week:

Select day(s) from the calendar, and it will be displayed on the right blank as shown below. The following example refers to the January  $1^{st} \sim 5^{th}$  Friday of a year.

Rep	oea	ton	Day	/ (of	a wee	∋k)	*		
Ja	nua	ry	~	2	010		<b>\$</b>	Repeat on the following day(s) of a year:	
S	Jin	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	January 1st Friday	
						1	2	January 2nd Friday	
	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	January 3rd Friday January 4th Friday	Delete
1	.0	11	12	13	14	15	16	January 5th Friday	
1	7	18	19	20	21	22	23	Sandary Striffiday	
2	24	25	26	27	28	29	30		
3	31								

Set up applicable period of time

Please refer to page 203 for detailed instructions.

#### Set up repeat time interval

The repeat time intervals is "every N year(s)" as shown below. Repeat every 1 year means the time frame would apply for every year within the period of time.

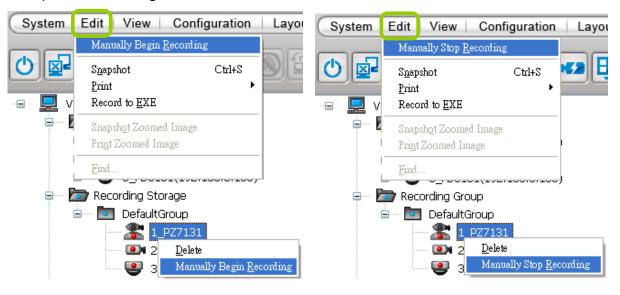
Repeat every	1	÷	Year(s)
--------------	---	---	---------

# How to Manually Begin /Stop Recording

By default, all devices are assigned to the default recording storage and default recording schedule. Therefore, once you insert a device onto the station, the VAST Server will begin to record live video according to the default recording schedule. Please refer to **How to Edit Recording Schedules** on page 192.

However, if you have changed the default schedule, you can manually click **Manually Begin Recording** to enable a device without setting up a recording schedule. Please follow the instructions below to manually begin recording.

Select the device from the hierarchical management tree under Default Group, then click **Edit** > Manually Begin Recording on the menu bar (or right-click the device and select Manually Begin Recording). The string on the menu bar will turn into Manually Stop Recording as shown below and the VAST Server will start to record video from the target camera. Please note that its priority will be higher than the recording schedule, so it will continue unless you click Manually Stop Recording. After you click Manually Stop Recording, the device will then follow the preset recording schedule.



# How to Edit Scheduled Backup Settings

VAST LiveClient supports scheduled backup which allows the user to back up the recorded data to another disk.

Please follow the steps below to enable scheduled backup settings:

- a. Select the target station from the hierarchical management tree.
- b. Click **Configuration > Station Settings > Scheduled Backup Settings** on the menu bar (or **rightclick** the station and select **Station Settings > Scheduled Backup Settings**).

System   Edit   View   Configurati	on Layout Help		
Carrene I Station A Units Station (127) UNITS	Management Anagement Anagement Anagement Anagement Anagement angement angement Anagement Anageme	General Settin Network Setti Recording Sta Recording Sta	get ngs mage Settings heddet Settings kolus Settings
Camera Camera FE939 FE919 Recording S 1/O Box Layout	Camera Management Station Management Logical Tree View Management U/O Box Management U/O Box Management U/O Box Management Aarociation Management Aarom Management Search VivoCam Switches Station Settings Find Output Streaming URL		General Settings Network Settings Recording Storage Settings
	Output Camera List Get Public IP		Recordion Schedule Settings Scheduled Backup Settings Server Settings

c. The Scheduled backup settings window displays.

### **Select Backup Source**

- d. Select the Enable scheduled backup checkbox.
- e. Select the data source you want to backup. If you check **Selected cameras**, you can click >> or << to choose the data source that you want to backup.

Scheduled I	Backup Settings				
Schedule Back	sup Status : Standby				
Enable sche	edule backup				
- Select Back	up Source				
All Camera	as 💿 Selected cam	neras			
Name	Address	Group	Backup		
FE9391-EV	192.168.4.161	DefaultGroup	Yes		
FE9191-v2	192.168.4.171	DefaultGroup	Yes		
3_192.168.	4 192.168.4.124	DefaultGroup	Yes		
	192.168.4.164	DefaultGroup	Yes	->	
SD9161-H	192.100.4.104				

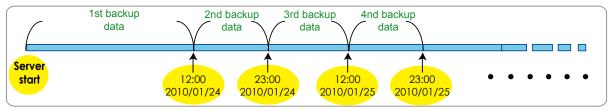
## Setup Backup Schedule

f. Click the Edit button to enter the configuration screen. Please note that the backup time interval must not be shorter than 1 hour. For example, 23:40 and 00:15 are not allowed to exist simultaneously.

In the following example, the server will backup the recorded data at 12:00 PM and 23:00 PM everyday once you save the settings.

Time Frame	Rule
Off duty	Weekly Setting (Periods in a week)
Edit	
Edic	

#### The following diagram shows the backup schedule and backup data:



## **Select Backup Target**

g. Click **Browse...** to select a path (local path or network storage) to store the backup data. Please note that the disk for backup data should be different from the original recording path, or a warning message will pop up as shown below. For more information about how to set up recording path, please refer to page 187.

🕙 Warning 🛛 🔀
Scheduled Backup Path cannot be assigned to the same disk as Recording Path.
OK

- h. Select **Delete old backups if space is insufficient** if you want to do cylic backup due to the limited size of the hard disk.
- i. Select the backup speed. The speed range start from 0 to 100MB/s. "0" stands for no limitation. If bandwidth or system resource is of the concern, you can tune down the backup speed.

Edit				
Select Backup Target				
Path:			Browse	
🔲 Delete old backup data if spi	ace is insufficient		Local	
			Network Clear	
Backup Throughput	30	100	1	

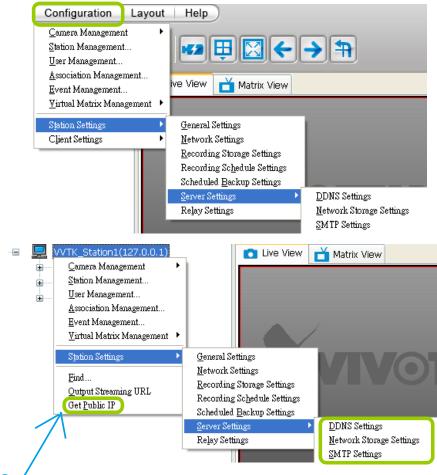
The backup destination folder should look like this "2016-07-06\_164500 > DISC\_001." A scheduled backup error log will be available for users to examine the backup history.

Since the scheduled backup is a file-based process, if the backup involves an unfinished video file (currently being recorded), the backup process will skip the file.

# How to Configure Station Server Settings

VAST LiveClient supports Server Settings including DDNS Settings, Network Storage Settings, and SMTP Settings.

Select the station from the hierarchical management tree and click **Configuration > Station Settings > Server Settings** to open the page (or **right-click** the station and select **Station Settings > Server Settings**).



## **DDNS Settings**

Since the <u>public IP</u> of VAST Server may be a dynamic IP address, DDNS service will give it a fixed domain name.

Select a DDNS provider from the provider drop-down list. VIVOTEK offers <u>2bthere.net</u> (Safe100. net), a free dynamic domain name service, to VIVOTEK customers. Please refer to the user's manual of VIVOTEK's network camera for detailed DDNS settings.

DDNS Settings	
-DDNS: Dynamic do	main name service
Enable DDNS	
Provider:	Dyndns.org(Dynamic)
Host name:	
User name:	
Password:	
<u>S</u> ave	

### **Network Storage Server Settings**

The VAST Server allows user to set up network storage path(s) for recorded files. Please follow the steps below to add a new network storage path.

a. Click **Add** to open the Network Host Window.

b. Fill in the related information for the network host. Then click **OK** to save the new settings.

Network Storage Server Settings	🔮 Add Networ	k 🕻 🔘 ) Server 🛛 🔀
Storage Server List:	Address:	
Address Domain Account	_	
	<u>D</u> omain Name:	Host 🔽
	<u>U</u> ser Name:	guest
	Password:	****
Add Edit Remove		OK Cancel

c. If you want to add more network host(s), please repeat step a. b.

🥙 Network Storage Server Settings	
Storage Server List:	
Address Domain Account	
192.168.5.122 VIVOTEK ritali	
Add	
	ose

## **SMTP Settings**

VAST Server allows user to set up SMTP Server to send mail alert when event triggers. For more information about how to set up event management, please refer to page 162.

Please follow the steps below to configure the SMTP Server:

- a. Click Add to open the SMTP Settings page.
- b. Enter the related information of your mail server. If your SMTP server requires a secure connection (SSL), check **Use SSL**.
- c. Click **OK** to enable the settings.
- d. Then the new information will appear on the SMTP Settings window as shown below.

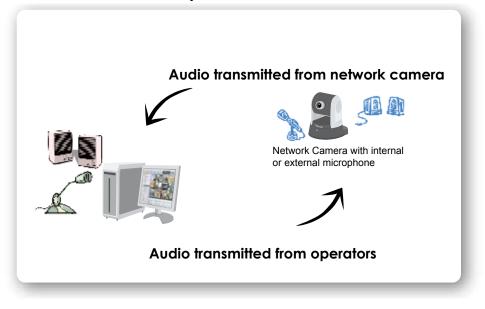
SMTP Settings	😴 Edit SMTP Setting	rs 🛛 🔀
Address Authentication SSL	Server - D Address: Port:	Ms.vivotek.tw
Add   Edit   Remove	Login Use authentication User name: Password: Use SSL:	:  ritali
	C	OK Cancel
Address Authentication SSL		

Q	Address Ms.vivotek.tw	Authentication Yes	SSL No		If you have more than one SMTP server, you can click to arrange the priority.
			<u> </u>	lose	

# How to Use the Talk Panel

VAST LiveClient supports the two way audio function which allows the user to communicate with people around the network camera. Please enable the two way audio function on the camera side.

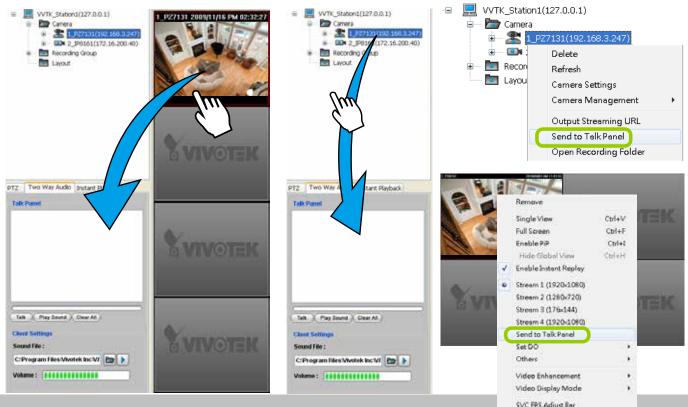
The following is an illustration of the two way audio function:



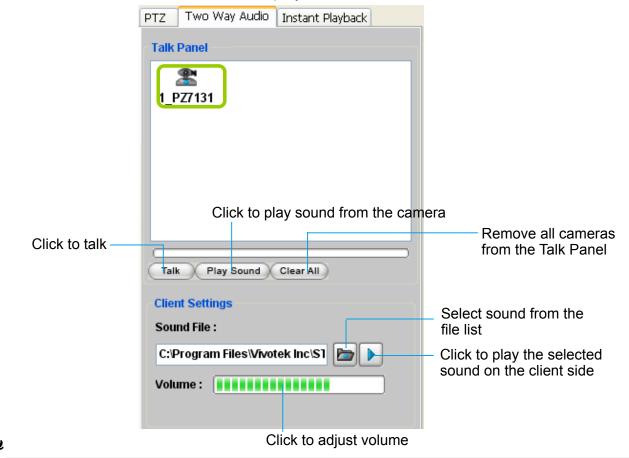
### Add a Camera to the Talk Panel

■ There are several ways to add a Network Camera to the Talk Panel:

Drag-and-drop a camera from the video cell or from the hierarchical management tree to the talk panel as shown below. You can also **right-click** the target camera or the video cell, then click **Send to Talk Panel** on the popup menu.

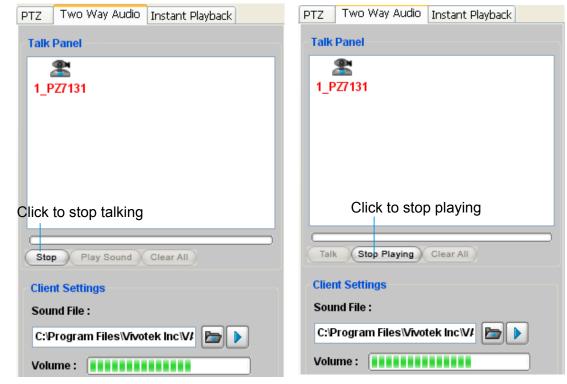


User's Manual - 217



■ An icon with the camera name will be displayed in the Talk Panel.

- Please note that you cannot Talk and Play Sound at the same time.
- When you are talking or playing sound, you cannot add other cameras to the Talk Panel. If you want to add more cameras to the Talk Panel, please Stop Talking and Stop Playing first.



## **Remove a Camera from the Talk Panel**

#### Remove a camera

Drag a camera from the Talk Panel and drop to the hierarchical management tree window as shown below. The camera icon will disappear.

WVTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)         Camera         Camera <tr< th=""></tr<>
PTZ Two V y Audio Instant Playback       Talk Panel       20x Zoom       Mega-P
Stop Play Sound Clear All Client Settings Sound File : C:Program Files (x86)\V/IVOTEI

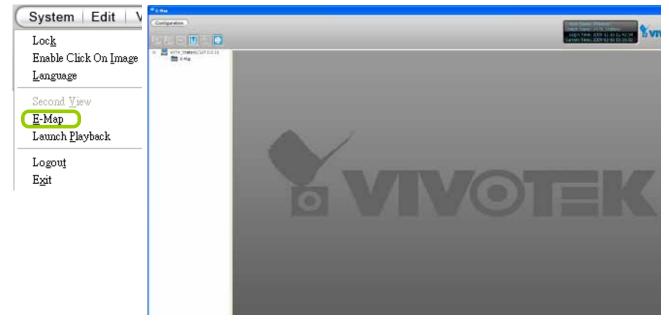
### Remove all cameras

Click Clear All, all cameras in the Talk Panel will be removed.

# How to Configure E-map Settings

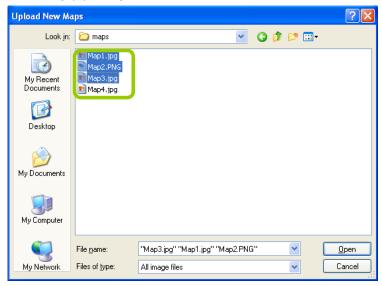
VAST LiveClient supports intuitive E-map function which allows users to upload E-maps for overall devices management.

Click **System > E-map** to open E-map Settings Page:



# **Upload an E-map**

Click 11 to search for E-map(s) to upload.



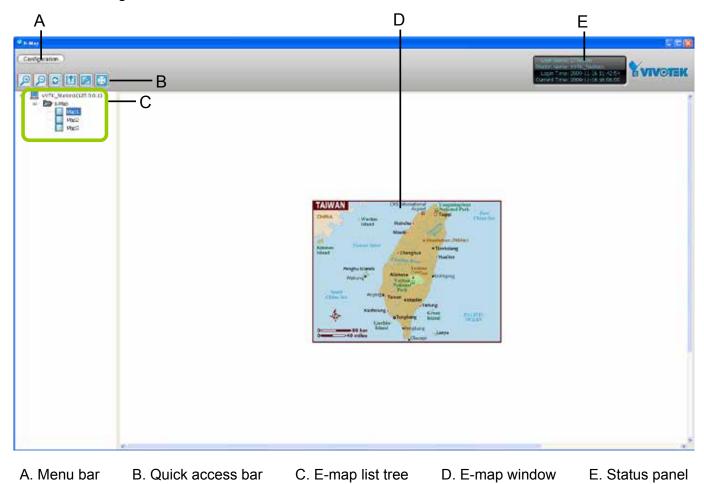
The uploaded E-maps will be listed under the E-map list tree.



If the uploading procedure fails, please compress the image size of your map (equal or smaller than 2MB) and try again.

## User Interface of E-map Settings Page (View Mode)

Double-click an E-map on the tree, it will be displayed on the E-map window as shown below. There are two operation modes of E-map settings page: "View Mode" and "Edit Mode". The following is the "View Mode" illustration.



**Right-click** the E-map, then you can **Edit**, **Rename**, or **Delete** the E-map.



■ **Right-click** an E-map on the tree and click **Edit** or click **[2]** on the Quick Access Bar, it will switch to edit mode.



### Quick Access Bar

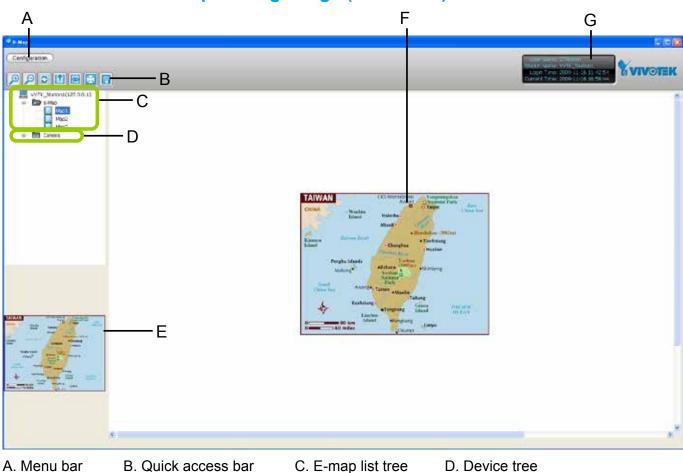


lcon	Function	Description
€	Zoom in	Zoom in the E-map
P	Zoom out	Zoom out the E-map
0	Default size	Adjust the E-map to default size
	Upload	Upload E-map to the login station
	View Mode	Click to switch to view mode
$\square$	Full Screen	Extend the E-map settings page to full screen
	Save	Save E-map settings

### **Status Panel**

User Name: admin	CPU
Station Name: VVTK_Station1	35 %
Login Time: 2014-04-22 10:23:09	Memory
Current Time: 2014-04-22 11:14:54	61 %

User Name
Station Name (IP Address)
Login Time (yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss)
Current Time (yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss)



### User Interface of E-map Settings Page (Edit Mode)

E. Map preview

F. E-map window

C. E-map list tree G. Status panel

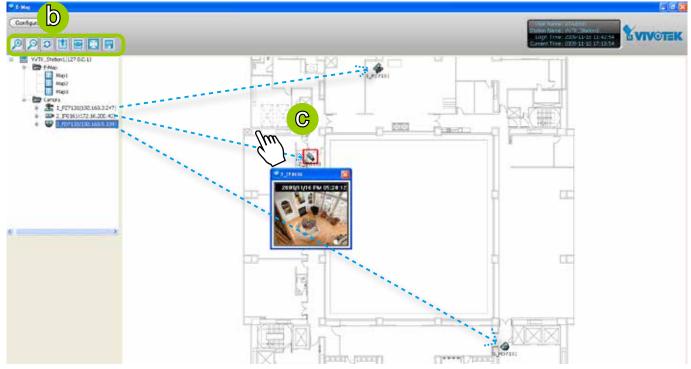
■ **Right-click** the E-map, you can **Edit, Rename**, or **Delete** the E-map.



### **Device Management**

Please follow the steps below to edit an uploaded E-map.

- a. Double-click the E-map you want to edit, it will be displayed on the E-map window.
- b. Use Quick Access Bar to adjust the size of the E-map. In edit mode, you can also use your mouse to drag the position of the E-map and zoom in or zoom out the E-map.
- c. Drag-and-drop the connected devices to the E-map according to your deployment.



d. **Right-click** the device icon on E-map, you can **rotate** the direction or **delete** the device. The device can be rotated in 8 derections as shown below.



e. You can also drag the DI/DO device under the connected device onto the E-map. If you want to change the status of the **DO** device, **double click** the DO icon on E-map.

For more information about DI/DO settings, please refer to Association Management on page 160.



f. Click 🗐 on the Quick Access Bar to save the new settings.

The red frame twinkling around the device means there is event trigger(s) going on. Meanwhile, a live view dialog will pop up beside the model.



## Live View Dialog Settings

Click **Configuration** > **E-map Settings** to open the E-map Settings dialog, then you can choose to **Open Live View Dialog** or to **Send to Single View** when you double-click the device deployed on the E-map.

### **Open Live View Dialog**

Select **Open Live View Dialog**: When you **double-click** the device icon on the E-map or when an event triggers, a live view dialog will pop up beside it. It is the default setting in E-map Settings window.

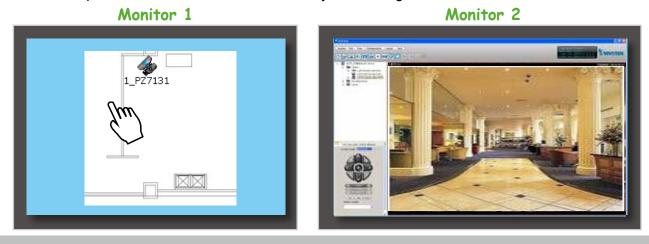
😴 Е-Мар	🔮 E-Map Settings 🛛 🔀	
Configuration	Double Click Camera on E-Map     Open Live View Dialog	PZ7131
E-Map <u>S</u> ettings	O Send to <u>S</u> ingle View	2009/11/17 AM 10:21:26
	<u>OK</u> <u>Cancel</u>	

#### Send to Single View

Select **Send to Single View**: When you **double-click** the device icon on the E-map, it will open a single view on the VAST LiveClient.

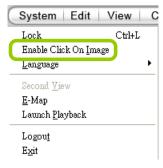


If you have set up dual monitor, it will be automatically sent a single view to the second monitor.





The live view dialog also supports **click on image**, **PTZ**, and **e-PTZ** as long as the linked device supports and enables those functions. To enable those function on *E*-map, please check the item "Enable click on image" on the menu bar of LiveClient as shown below. Then an icon will appear in the live view dialog for you to control the cameras.





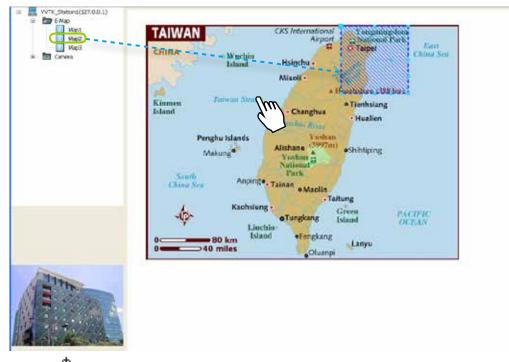
## **E-map Link**

After completing device deployment on your E-map, you can link an E-map to another E-map. Please follow the steps below to configure E-map link:

a. Select a map you want to edit and enter Edit Mode.



b. **Drag-and-drop** another E-map onto current E-map. A blue frame will appear as shown below. For example: Link Map1 to Map2 by dargging Map2 onto Map1

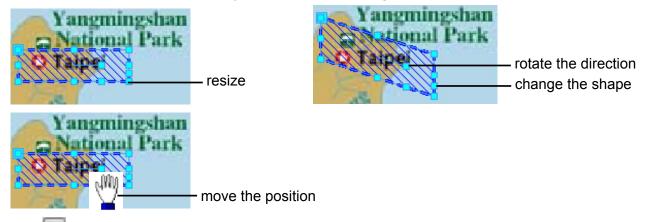


c. Use to move the position of the blue frame.

d. Right-click the blue frame to Resize or Delete it.



Click **Resize**, some nodes will appear around the blue frame. Then You can drag the nodes to move the position, rotate the direction, adjust the size, and change the shape.



- e. Click 🗐 on the Quick Access Bar to save the new settings.
- f. If you want to set additional map links, please repeat steps a. ~ e. For example: Link Map2 to Map3 by dargging Map3 onto Map2



g. Click 🗐 on the Quick Access Bar to save the new settings.

h. Test the web links. Click 🔤 on the Quick Access Bar to switch to view mode. **Double-click** the blue frame on Map1, it will automatically switch to map2. Then **double-click** the blue frame on Map2, it will automatically switch to map3.



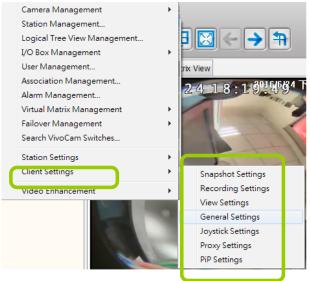
Since VAST revision 1.13, you can also click and drag cameras or NVR's DI/DO devices to an E-map. See page 108 for how to enable NVR DI/DO options.



See page 242 for how to enable popup video windows on E-Map. y

# How to Configure Client Settings

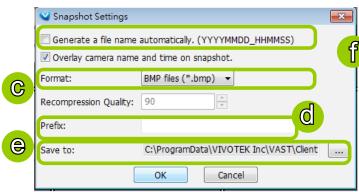
In Client Settings, you can configure Snapshot Settings, Recording Settings, View Settings, General Settings, Joystick Settings, Proxy Settings, and PiP Settings.



### **Snapshot Settings**

Please follow the steps below to configure snapshot settings:

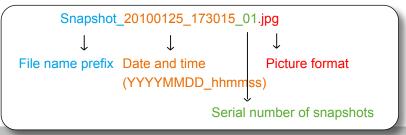
- a. Click **Configuration > Client Settings > Snapshot Settings** on the menu bar to open the **Snapshot Settings** window.
- b. By default, camera name and current time will be printed on the snapshots taken.
- c. Select a picture format for snapshots (**BMP** or **JPEG**). If you select **JPEG** format, you can adjust the recompression quality (from 1 to 100). Note that a higher value would generate higher picture quality but lower compression rate.
- d. Fill in a filename prefix for the snapshots.
- e. The default storage path for snapshots is C:\Users\Public\Documents\VIVOTEKInc\VAST\Client\ LiveClient. If you want to change the storage path, click **Browse** is select another folder.





The recompression quality is only enabled in MPEG-4 streaming. If your stream source is MJPEG, the system will directly save the JPEG image without recompression.

f. If you check **Generate a file name automatically**, VAST will directly save snapshots with the following filename format to the storage folder.



If you uncheck **Generate a file name automatically**, the **Save file** dialog box will pop up when you take a snapshot. The file name prefix will automatically be displayed in the Save File dialog box.

Save file					? 🔀
Save in:	🗀 Snapshot		•	+ 🗈 💣 🎟	•
My Recent Documents Desktop					
My Documents					
My Computer					
<b>S</b>					
My Network Places	File name:	Snapshot		-	Save
	Save as type:	JPEG files (*.jpg)		•	Cancel

#### Take a Snapshot

Please follow the steps below to take a snapshot of the live video stream:

- a. Select the video cell of which you want to take a snapshot.
- b. Click **Snapshot** on the quick access bar, or **right-click** the video cell and select **Others** > **Snapshot** from the popup menu. You also can click **Edit** > **Snapshot** to take a snapshot.



c. The snapshots will be found in the preset storage folder on your local computer.

## **Recording Settings**

The VAST Server allows you to record the live video in EXE, 3GP, or AVI format to your storage folder.

#### Type 1: Record to EXE

Record video as an EXE file. The EXE is not only a media file but also a built-in media player. When user execute the EXE, the media file will be played automatically. There is no need to install any other program. For more information about how to use the EXE player, please refer to page 236.

Please follow the steps below to configure EXE record settings:

- a. Click **Configuration > Client Settings > Recording Settings** on the menu bar to open the **Recording Settings** window.
- b. Select **EXE** as the Record Type.
- c. The default storage path is C:\Users\Public\Documents\VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\Client\LiveClient\Record. If you want to change the storage path, click **Browse** to select another folder.
- d. Select the Length of each file-- Maximum Size (11~2000MB) or Maximum Time Interval (1~150 min).

Í	•	Recordi	ng Setti	ngs				Þ	x
		<ul> <li>EXE</li> <li>Record video in EXE format, includes a built-in media player along with the media file. Executing the file results in automatic playback, eliminating the need to install a separate playback program.</li> </ul>							
C		Save to:	C:\Pro	gramD,	ata\Documents\\	/IVOTEK Inc\VA	ST\Client\Liv	eClie	)
d			<b>n of Eac</b> mum Size			🔘 Maximum Tir	me Interval		ור
		11 			1500	0	2	000 (M	18)
					ОК	Cancel			

e. Click **OK** to enable the settings.

#### Type 2: Record to 3GP

Record video as a 3GP file. 3GP file is a standard MP4 format compatible with players such as VLC player. Choose this type if you has already installed one of these players.

Please follow the steps below to configure 3GP record settings:

- a. Click **Configuration > Client Settings > Recording Settings** on the menu bar to open the **Recording Settings** window.
- b. Select **3GP** as the Record Type.
- c. The default storage path is C:\Users\Public\Documents\VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\Client\LiveClient\Record. If you want to change the storage path, click **Browse** to select another folder.
- d. Select the Length of each file-- Maximum Size (1~2000MB) or Maximum Time Interval (1~150 min).

ĺ	V Recording Settings				
	© EXE Record video as a 3GP file, a standard MP4 format compatible with players such as VLC, QuickTime, or RealOne. Choose this format if you have already installed one of these players.				
C	Save to: C:\ProgramData\Documents\VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\Client\LiveClie				
d	Length of Each File Maximum Size Maximum Time Interval 1 1500 2000 (MB)				
8	GR Settings CRecord with only standard codec OK Cancel				

- e. If you check "Record with only standard codec", the video from old models (VIVOTEK 6000-series products) using H.263 codec will not be recorded.
- f. Click **OK** to enable the settings.

#### Type 3: Record to AVI

Record video as an AVI file, which uses the popular codecs pre-installed in the Windows OS. Please note that the speed may be slower due to the need of decoding the video/audio and re-encoding both into a compatible codec.

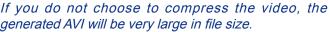
Please follow the steps below to configure AVI record settings:

- a. Click **Configuration > Client Settings > Recording Settings** on the menu bar to open the **Recording** Settings window.
- b. Select AVI as the Record Type.
- c. The default storage path is C:\Users\Public\Documents\VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\Client\LiveClient\Record. If you want to change the storage path, click **Browse** loss to select another folder.
- d. Select the Length of each file-- Maximum Size (1~2000MB) or Maximum Time Interval (1~150 min).

ĺ	Recording Settings	
	Exe Record video as an AVI file, which uses the popular codecs pre-installed in the Windows OS. Please note that the speed may be slower due to the need to decode the video/audio and re-encode into a compatible codec.	
C	Save to: C:\ProgramData\Documents\VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\Client\LiveClie )	Due to the AVI file has a limitation on
d	Length of Each File	the maximum file size of 2G bytes, if
	Maximum Size Maximum Time Interval	the setting "time length" generates data
	1 1500 2000 (MB)	larger than 2G bytes, several files will be created.
	AVI Settings	
	AVI Frame Rate: 15 🗐 (1 ~30)	
	Image: Setting Provide Compression Setting Provide Compression Setting Provide Compression Setting Image: Sett	
	OK Cancel	

- e. Select the frame rate/ per second.
- f. To modify the video compression settings, click Video Compression Setting to open the AVI Video Compression Setting window. Select the desired video compression algorithm, compression quality, key frame intervals, and data rate in the corresponding fields.

ompressor:		OK
Cinepak Codec by F	ladius 💉 💙	Cancel
Compression <u>Q</u> uality:	100	Con <u>f</u> igure
✓ Key Frame Every	15 frames	About
🗹 <u>D</u> ata Rate	300 KB/sec	



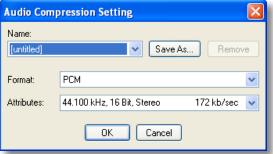
To modify the settings of the compression algorithm: Click **Configure**, then a dialog box will pop up for you to modify the settings. The dialog box will be different according to the compressor you select.



To read the information of a compression algorithm (its version for instance): Click About, and a dialog box will pop up showing the related information. The dialog box will be different according to the compressor you select.



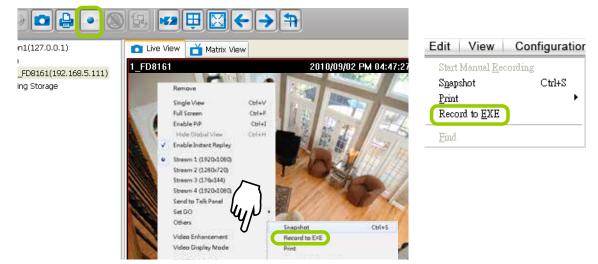
g. To modify the audio compression settings, click **Audio Compression Setting** to open the AVI Audio Compression Setting window. Select the desired **audio quality, format**, and **attributes** in the corresponding fields.



#### Record an EXE/3GP/AVI File

Please follow the steps below to record an EXE/3GP/AVI file of a live video stream:

- a. Select a video cell or a device from the heirarchical management tree which you want to record to media file.
- b. Click **Record to EXE/3GP/AVI** on the quick access bar, or **right-click** the video cell and click **Record to EXE/3GP/AVI**. You can also click **Edit > Record to EXE/3GP/AVI** on the menu bar. (The UI string will change according to your Recording Settings.)



c. For recording a high-resolution video (1600 x 1200) in AVI type, a dialog box will pop up as shown below to remind you that the CPU loading will increase. Click **OK** to continue the process.



d. The icon • will then change to **Recording EXE/3GP/AVI** •, and a red text string (**EXE/3GP/AVI**) will appear at the bottom right of the video cell. Note that only one video channel can be recorded at a time.



If you save your video via a LiveClient installed on another computer, the videos will be placed in where you installed the LiveClient utility: e.g., **C:**II **VAST\Client\LiveClient\Record.** On Windows XP: C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Documents\ VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\Client\LiveClient\Record

e. When you want to terminate the AVI Recording, click the icon 
 on the Quick Access Bar. The export process will then terminate and the button will change from 
 to 
 The recorded media files will be found in the preset storage folder on your local computer as shown below.

Below is the file name format for AVI files:



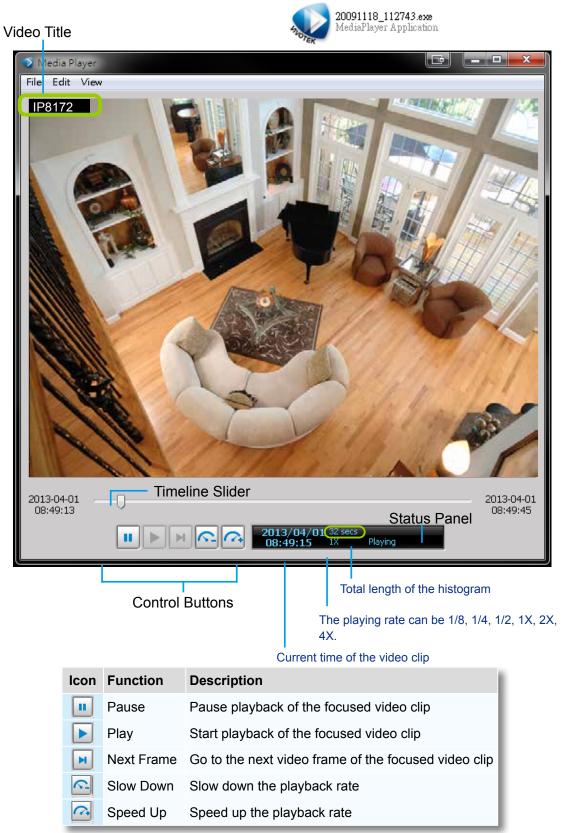
20091118 195800.3gp

3GPP Movie

238 KB

#### Built-in Media Player--EXE

Below is the icon of footages saved as EXE files. Double-click on it, the recorded video will be played automatically as shown below. You may also open the built-in Media Player in the default location: C:\Program Files\VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\Client\LiveClient. On Windows XP: C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Documents\VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\Client\LiveClient\Record.



The function menu of the built-in media player are displayed as shown below:

<u>File</u> <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew	Edit View	View
<u>O</u> pen 3GP File Save as <u>E</u> XE <u>S</u> ave as 3GP File	Snapshot (BMP) Snapshot (JPEG) <u>C</u> onvert to AVI	<u>F</u> ull Screen
Print		
<u>E</u> xit		

- The built-in player is able to playback 3GP and EXE files.
- The built-in player is able to save 3GP files as EXE files.
- The built-in player is able to save EXE files as 3GP files.
- The built-in player is able to convert EXE and 3GP files into AVI files.
- The built-in player also supports snapshot and print functions.

رچ_
ED

Below are special notices related to video recording with the fisheye cameras:

- For recorded videos from the fisheye cameras, only the built-in Media Player can playback the Regional or Panoramic views. If you access the recorded videos using other playback software, you will end up seeing the circular-shape Original view.
- When recording videos from fisheye cameras, Regional and Panoramic views can only be preserved in the EXE and 3GP format. If you save the dewarped views, i.e., Regional and Panoramic, as AVIs, only the circular Original view will be preserved.
- Currently the video playback on the Emap window displays the Original view only.
- To display a Regional or Panoramic view, right-click on the Media Player window.



### **View Settings**

This section allows you to set the display mode of a video cell, including **Display Location**, **Date and time Format**, **Video Display Mode**, and **Font Settings**. When you change the settings, the sample window will change accordingly for you to preview the settings.

💙 View Settings	
Display Location	
Display Area 1: Camera Name	Camera Name    2016/6/24 下午 06:07:23
Display Area 2: Server Date & Time	This is a sample screen.
Display Area 3: Video Title 💌	
Display Area 4: No Display	Video Title
Date and Time Format	Font Settings
Same as Local Computer	Font: System -
◎ Specify	Color:
Date Format: YYYY/MM/DD v	Size: 10 -
Time Format: Default Time Format	
Video Display Mode	
$\odot$ Hide borders $\bigcirc$ Keep top/down borders $\bigcirc$ Keep th	ne aspect ratio
Show motion windows when triggered	
$\ensuremath{\overline{\ensuremath{\mathbb{V}}}}$ Display the connecting message when video is lost	
The screen goes blank when video is lost	
VCA	
Show VCA rules	
VCA extra information: none 💌	
ОК	Cancel

Display Location		Display Area 1	Display Area 2
Display Locatio	n		
Display Area 1:	Camera Name	Camera Name	カレック レビー ひんし かいし かいしん しんしょう しょうしょう しょうしょう しょうしょう しょうしょう しょうしょう しょうしょう しんしょう しょうしょう しょう
Display Area 2:	Server Date & Time	This is a samp	le screen.
Display Area 3:	Video Title 💌		
Display Area 4:	No Display	Video Title	
		Display Area 3	

As the illustration shows, there are 4 display areas for you to input information about the live video. Each drop-down list includes many options for you to select: No display, Camera Name, Video Title, Camera Date & Time, Camera DateTime, Server Date & Time, Codec & Resolution, Address, and Network throughput & FPS.

#### Date and Time Format

Date and Time Format
Same as Local Computer
◎ Specify
Date Format: YYYY/MM/DD
Time Format: Default Time Format

- Same as local computer: Select this option and then the date and time format will synchronize with the local computer.
- Specify: Select a desired format for the date and time from the drop-down list.

Date format: Select YYYY/MM/DD or MM/DD/YY.

<u>Time format</u>: Select the default time format (synchronize with the local computer), 12h AM/PM, or 24h.

### Video Display Mode



- Keep the aspect ratio: In the default settings, the size of the video window will change according to the layout of the live view window you choose. However, the frame size may be distorted.
- Keep top/down borders: the camera name, video title, and time will be displayed on the black borders instead of displaying floating text on the screen.



- Keep the aspect ratio: If you select Keep the aspect ratio, the video window will be adjusted to the same frame size as the preview window. This function is disabled as default.
- Show motion window when triggered: If you select this option, the red frame of the motion detection window will appear in the video window when motion is triggered. This function is enabled as default.
- Display the connecting message when video is lost:indow will appear in the video window when motion is triggered. This function is enabled as default.
- Show VCA rules: VCA rules refer to the Line Crossing and Field Detection lines drawn on individual video screens. These VCA functions are configured on the web consoles with cameras, not on the VAST LiveClient.

The Display options can also be accessed by a right-click on the view cell.

For detailed information about how to set up the layout of the live view window, please refer to **How to Change Video Viewing Mode** on page 132.

### Font Settings

This function allows you to change the font on the video cell.

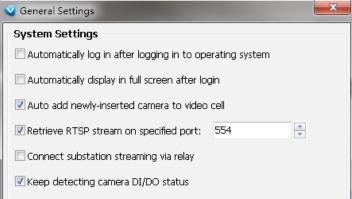
- Font: Automatically lists all fonts installed on your operating system. Select the desired type.
- Color: Select a desired font color (white, red, green, blue).
- Size: Select a desired font size (8, 10, 12, 14).

Font S	ettings		
Font:	System	•	
Color:		•	
Size:	10 🔻		



### **General Settings**

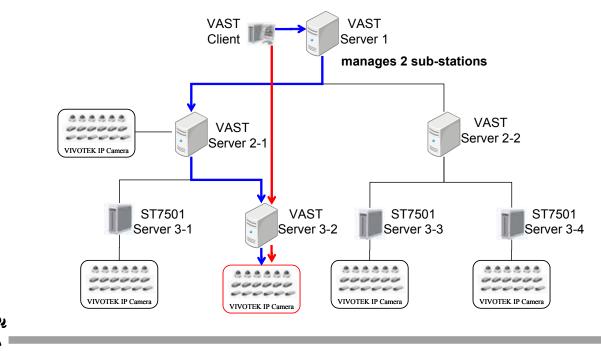
This section allows you to configure the System Settings and Rotation Settings.



### System Settings

🔲 Sort camera by name

- Auto login after logging in to operating system: If you check this option, VAST LiveClient will
  automatically login after you login to Windows without filling in the user name and password. This
  function is disabled as default.
- Automatically display in full screen after login: If you check this option, the video cells will be displayed in full screen without showing the menu bar or the control panels.
- Auto add newly-inserted camera to video cell: If you check this option, VAST LiveClient will automatically add the newly-inserted device to a video cell. This function is enabled as default.
- Retrieve RTSP streaming on specific port: The default port for RTSP streaming is 4543. If you want to change this port, please check this item and fill in a desired port number.
- Setup substation streaming via relay: This option is not checked by default. As the following diagram shows, VAST Client might directly connect to the streaming under VAST Server 3-2 without requesting the connection via VAST Server 1 and Server 2-1. If you want to get streaming through relaying, please check this option.



If the VAST Server 3-2 is set up behind a firewall, the VAST Client will not be able to access the VAST Server 3-2 directly. You have to get the connetion by relaying.

- Keep detecting camera DI/DO status: The default for this option is enabled. This option enables the VAST server to monitor the DI/DO status from the configured cameras. You may also disable this option.
- Sort camera by name: The positions of cameras on the device tree will be sorted by their camera names.

General Settings		10.00
System Settings		
Automatically log in after logging in to op	erating system	
Automatically display in full screen after lo	gn :	
RAuto add newly-inserted camera to video	cet	
Retrieve RTSP stream on specified port:	4543	14
Connect substation streaming via relay		
Keep detecting DUDD status		
ESort camera by name		
Alarm Settings		
Enable ive airm notification		
Enable alert sound(s)		
Enable E-Map popup window		
Alarm window mode: 🔹 Fixed		
C Popup		
Rotation Settings		
Enable rotation after login		
Rotate the page every 10	second(s)	(3 ~ 999)
Display Settings		
Maximum number of view cells 64 •		
Chable auto stream size: Quality first	•	
Enable de-interlace function		
P Enable Instant Replay on video cell		
Default replay length: 30 seconds -		
Local streaming buffer time: $0 = \frac{ z }{ z }$	milisecond(s)	(0 ~ 10000)
	OK	Cancel
	1	

#### **Alarm Settings**

- Enable live alarm notification: Select this option to activate real-time event notification. For example: the event notification of DI/O status on the hierarchical management tree, the event list in the event window, motion detection windows in video window, or the event notification on E-map settings page, etc. This function is enabled as default.
- Enable alert sound(s): If you enable this option, you will hear alert sound on the client side when the event is triggered.
- Enable E-Map popup window: When enabled, a popup window appears on an E-map displaying the current video when a camera-related event occurs.

Note the following with the E-Map popup window:

- The camera that triggers an alarm must be placed on the E-map to have its live video displayed in the popup window.
- When an event occurs, and the related camera is configured into multiple E-maps, the popup window appears on the first available E-map.
- When many popup windows appear, many map views will consecutively appear until all popup windows properly display.
- This feature supports popup windows for cameras under VAST substations or NVR.
- Popup windows only appear when the E-Map is opened; however, the windows will still appear on a live view.
- If a DI/DO trigger is not associated with a specific camera, no popup video window will appear when triggered.
- Fisheye dewarp is also available on the E-map popup windows.

• Please also configure the Client Notification options in the Alarm Management window.



Alarm window mode: Select Fixed or Popup mode for the event window. For more information about event window, please refer to page 90.

#### **Rotation Settings**

- Enable rotation after login: If you check this option, the video cells will start to rotate after you login to the VAST LiveClient. The default setting of this function is disabled.
- Rotate the page every second(s): Fill in a desired interval time for video page rotation. The maximum value is 99 seconds. The default value is set at 6 seconds.

For detailed information about how to set up the layout of the monitoring window and rotation functions, please refer to **How to Change Video Viewing Mode** on page 132.

Rotate the page every 10 Second(5) (5 ~ 555)
Display Settings
Maximum number of view cells 64 💌
Enable auto stream size: Quality first
Enable de-interlace function
Enable Instant Replay on video cell
Default replay length: 30 seconds 👻
Local streaming buffer time: $0$ $\stackrel{\land}{\checkmark}$ millisecond(s) (0 ~ 10000)

- Maximum number of view cells: This determines the number of view cell on window, and also takes effect with the number of layout pages. For example, if there are 320 channels using the 1+31 layout, there will be 10 layout pages in the LiveClient window. The configuration changes take effect after the LiveClient is re-started.
- Enable auto stream size: The Auto Stream Size feature dynamically adjusts the stream sizes of video feeds from network cameras in order to reduce CPU load and bandwidth consumption.

It is often the case that in surveillance deployments the physical dimensions of monitors, the effectiveness of visual stimulus, and the operators' regions of interest can all be very limited. Streaming large-size videos at all times will be a waste of bandwidth and system computing power. CIF and VGA size videos are usually sufficient for the operators watching surveillance screens.

When enabled, your LiveClient station automatically requests smaller-size streams as video feeds (any from streams #1 ~ #4) from the network cameras. For example, the frame size of video stream #4 will be reduced to 320x240 (CIF). Depending on the actual size of view cells on the LiveClient monitoring screen, the VAST server automatically requests different video streams.

When the size of view cells is manually expanded, a VAST server requests a different stream. This is called **Stream Jump**. Shown below are the details of the corresponding stream jumps.

View cell size	Stream jump to
4:3 resolutions	
<= 320x240	stream #4 (CIF)
> 320x240 or 640x480	stream #1
16:9 resolutions	
<= 384x216	stream #4 (CIF)
> 384x216 or 640x360	stream #1
1:1 (fisheye cameras)	
<= 384x384	stream #4 (CIF)
> 384x384 or 640x640	stream #1

Facts about Auto Stream Size:

- The Auto Stream Size takes effect when,
  - 1. The size of view cell is changed.
  - 2. Inserting a new camera, or when the "Auto add newly-inserted camera" feature is applied.
  - 3. Double-click or click-and-drag cameras into view cells.
  - 4. When Auto Stream Size feature is enabled (the configuration on this window).
  - 5. Through the layout change.
- The LiveClient utility automatically adjusts stream selection according to the size of view cells, no user's configuration is required.

- The frame size of stream #1 is user-configurable. The VAST server only resizes stream #4.
- If a user disables the Auto Stream Size function later, the frame size of stream #4 will not be restored to the previous configuration. Stream jump takes place on the display of all connected cameras once the function is enabled.
- The Auto Stream Size function does not apply to the Matrix view.
- If users configured a region of interest before the Auto Stream Size function is applied, e.g., via the ePTZ control, the view cell might display a different live view.
- Below is the general rule for stream selection:

	stream # configured into VGA	stream # configured into CIF
4 streams cameras	Stream 2	Stream 4
3 streams cameras	Stream 2	Stream 3
2 streams cameras	none	Stream 2

- When a smaller stream is selected, the video quality is set to fixed quality as Good.
- The Maximum frame rate is not configured.
- The VAST server automatically selects a video resolution of a specific aspect ratio that best fits the current view cell, and places the video into the view cell.

#### Limitations:

- For older, single-stream cameras, the Auto Stream Size feature does not take effect.
- When the Auto Stream Size feature is enabled, the NR and ND series NVR configured under the VAST server will be considered as substations. The stream configuration of cameras managed by these NVR substations will not be changed. Only the video codec, bit rate, and frame rate of the video feeds directed through these NVR substations will be changed into a more economic setting.
- For the NR8401 NVR, the Auto Stream Size function may not fully apply. For cameras managed by the NR8401, the following will apply:
  - Large view cell: default viewing stream.
  - Medium view cell: stream #2.
  - Small view cell: the last stream.
- a user disables the Auto Stream Size function later, the frame size of stream #4 will not be restored to the previous configuration.
- Enable de-interlace function: Select this option if your connected device does not support de-interlace function. For example: VS7100.
- Enable Instant Replay on video cell: Here you can change the duration of a playback that happened immediately before a user utilizes the instant playback function.
- Local streaming buffer time: Video frames can be temporarily stored on the cache memory of the VAST server for a short, configurable period of time before they are displayed on the Liveview. If the networking condition is less than ideal, this can help delivering a smooth video stream. Note that this feature is not available on a Matrix view and the web console.

## **Joystick Settings**

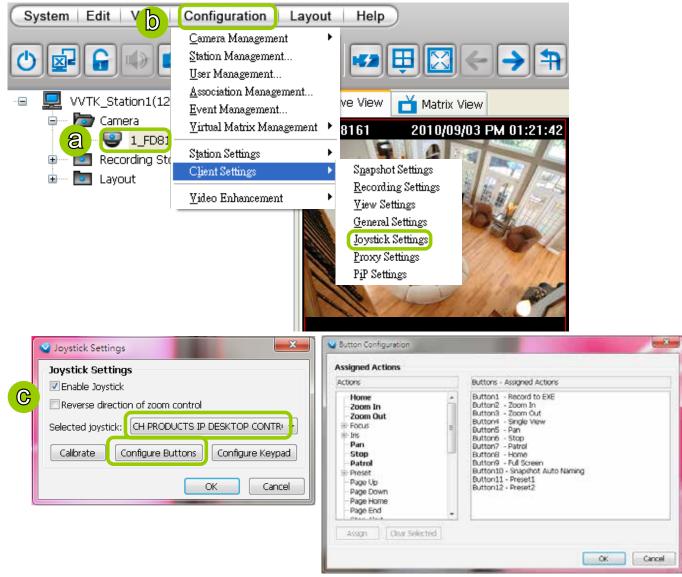
This section explains how to remote control connected network devices with a USB joystick. It's easy to install and configure via the USB interface.

#### Enable Joystick

Connect to the USB plug of the joystick to a USB port on your computer. Supported by the plug-in in the main page (Microsoft's DirectX), once the plug-in in the main page is loaded, it will automatically detect if there is any joystick on the computer. The joystick should work properly without installing any other driver or software.

Then you can begin to configure the joystick settings of connected devices. Please follow the instruction below to enable joystick settings.

- a. Select the target device from the hierarchical management tree.
- b. Click **Configuration > Client Settings > Joystick Settings** on the menu bar to open the **Joystick Settings** window. If your joystick is working properly, it will be displayed on the drop-down list.
- c. Select the joystick you want to configure. Check **Enable Joystick**, then click **Configure Buttons** to open Buttons configuration window.



#### Reverse direction of zoom control

Due to different designs in joystick zoom wheel, you can select this checkbox to reverse the zoom in/out directions.



#### **Buttons Configuration**

In Button Configuration window, the left column shows the actions you can assign, and the right column shows the functional buttons and assigned actions. The number of buttons may differ from different joysticks.

Please follow the steps below to configure your joystick buttons:

a. Choosing one of the actions and click **Assign** will pop up a dialog. Then you can assign this action to a button by pressing the joystick button or select it from the drop-down list.

For example: Assign Home (move to home position) to Button 1.

Suttons Configuration				
Assigned Actions Actions Home Zoom In		Buttons Button1 Button2	Assigne	ed Actions
Zoom Out	😎 "B	lome"		×
<ul> <li>Focus</li> <li>Iris</li> <li>Pan</li> <li>Stop</li> <li>Patrol</li> <li>Preset</li> <li>Page Up</li> <li>Page Down</li> <li>Record to AVI</li> <li>Snapshot Auto Naming</li> </ul>	Sele Bu Bu Bu Bu Bu Bu Bu Bu Bu Bu Bu	ss the joystick b ect the button f tton1 tton2 tton3 tton4 tton5 tton6 tton7 tton8 tton9 tton10 tton11 tton11		o assign to "Home" or e list below. <u>OK <u>C</u>ancel <u>OK C</u>ancel</u>

b. Click **OK** to confirm the configuration.

🤜 Buttons Config	guration	×
Assigned Actions		
Home Zoom In Zoom Out Focus Iris Pan Stop Patrol Preset Preset Preset Preset Preset Preset	<ul> <li>Press the joystick button to assign to "Home" or select the button from the list below.</li> <li>Button1</li> <li>Click "Ok" to assign "" to button1</li> <li>QK Cancel</li> <li>Clear Selected</li> </ul>	
	QK	Cancel

c. The Assigned Action will appear beside Button 1 in the right column as shown in the following diagram. Note that a button can only be assigned with an action. If you want to modify the settings, select the action on the list and click **Clear Selected**.

Suttons Configuration			
Assigned Actions	Buttons	Assigned Actions	
Home Zoom In Zoom Out Focus Iris Pan Stop Patrol Preset Page Up Page Down Record to AVI Snapshot Auto Naming Assign Clear Selected	Button1 Button2 Button3 Button4 Button5 Button6 Button7 Button8 Button9 Button10 Button11 Button12	Home	
		<u>O</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel

d. If you want to assign additional actions, repeat step a.~c. When all settings are complete, click **OK** to save the settings or click **Cancel** to discard the settings. You may also assign buttons to jump around matrix screens.

Assigned Actions	Buttons - Assigned Actions
Stop Alert Audio Mute Rotate Record to EXE Snapshot Auto Naming Print Lock Full Screen Single View Previous Matrix Next Matrix Previous Monitor Next Monitor Assign Clear Selected	Button1 - Record to EXE Button2 - Zoom In Button3 - Zoom Out Button3 - Zoom Out Button4 - Single View Button5 - Pan Button6 - Stop Button7 - Patrol Button7 - Patrol Button9 - Full Screen Button10 - Snapshot Auto Naming Button11 - Preset1 Button12 - Preset2

e. Click **OK** to save the settings or click **Cancel** to discard the settings.

Souther Settings		×
Joystick Settings		
Selected joystick:	CH PRODUCTS IP DESKTOP CON	
	Calibrate Configure Buttons	
		!



- If you want to assign Preset actions to your joystick, the preset locations should be set up in advance.
- If your joystick is not working properly, it may need to be calibrated. Click Calibrate to open the Game Controllers window located in the MS Windows control panel and follow the instructions for trouble shooting. For more information, please refer to the MS Windows help files for details.

🔮 Joystick Settings		×
Joystick Settings Enable Joystick		
Selected joystick:	CH PRODUCTS IP DESKTOP CON 🔽	
	Calibrate Configure Buttons	
		!

The joystick will appear in the Game Controllers list in the Windows Control Panel on your computer. If you want to check out your device, go to the following page: Open Start > Control Panel > Game Controllers.

Game Controllers	? 🛛
These settings help you configure the game your computer.	controllers installed on
Controller	Status
CH PRODUCTS IP DESKTOP CONTROLLER	OK
Add Remove	Properties
Advanced	Troubleshoot
	ОК

### Configure keypad

For joysticks that come with a keypad, you can use the combination of a number assigned to a camera and the Enter key on keypad to quickly move to the camera's current view. The current view will be displayed in a single view. To configure the number representative of each camera, double-click to open a configuration window. The number used for quick switch must be mapped to an existing channel.

Also note the following:

- 1. The keypad key representative can be a 4-digit numeric combination.
- 2. If a number key is pressed without pressing the Enter key within 3 seconds, the command is cancelled.
- 3. You should have at least ONE EMPTY view cell.
- 4. A Rotation operation will be halted when using the keypad quick switch function.
- 5. This quick switch function does not take effect on the cameras managed by VAST substations.

Joystick Keypad Mapping	<b></b>	Set
Camera Name	Key Number	Set
FE8191-shepherd test	1	Enter "999
Mega-Pixel Network Camera	2	Mega
IB8338-H	3	
SD8161	4	11
Sav	/e Close	

	characters starting from "0" to the number from the list to map to	3
11	-	
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	

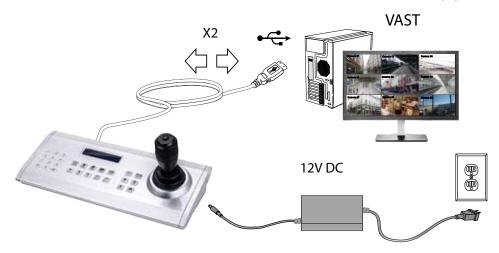
## Joystick Settings - Using VIVOTEK's AJ-001 & AJ-002

The AJ-001 and AJ-002 joysticks come with some defaults working with a VAST server.

- Channel quick switch: Enter 1 to 4 numbers and press "Enter" on the keypad to bring the channel into a full view. For example, enter 0010 and press Enter, CH 10 camera view will prompt on screen. Note that the number keys and Enter must be pressed within 3 seconds.
- Currently, this function does not apply to cameras managed by sub-stations.

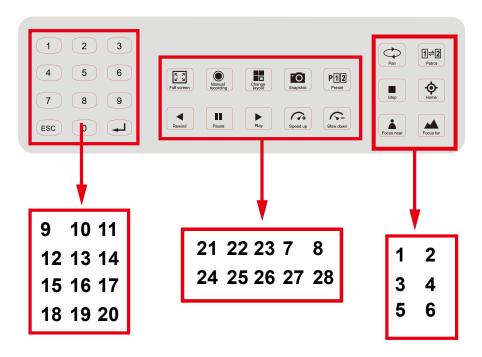
Following are the conditions for making the connection:

- 1. The joystick can either be powered by a DC 12V adaptor or via the USB. If powered by USB, plug the USB cable twice to the USB port to enable USB power.
- 2. Connect the included USB cable between the USB ports on the joystick and a VAST server.



#### **KEYPAD DEFINITION**

Below is the keypad numbering sequence:



1	Pan	9	#1	17	#9	25	Pause
2	Patrol	10	#2	18	Cancel/Clear/Esc	26	Play
3	Stop	11	#3	19	#0	27	Speed Up
4	Home	12	#4	20	Enter	28	Speed Down
5	Zoom in	13	#5	21	Full Screen		
6	Zoom out	14	#6	22	Manual recording		
7	Snapshot	15	#7	23	Change Layout		
8	Preset	16	#8	24	Rewind		

Since VAST rev. 1.13, the following keypad functions will be available as the defaults for the joystick.

Use the combination of "Preset Move Combo" (button 8) + number keys + Enter. For example button 8 + 1 + 0 + Enter -> Preset #10.

1x1 Pressing the layout button changes the current view cell layout. Press to change the layout from top to bottom as shown on the left. 2V 1P+2 3V 2x2 4V You can see the default definitions for the keypad in the Joystick configuration windows. 2V+3 × 1+5 Joystick Settings Joystick Settings 1P+6 Enable Joystick 3x3 Reverse direction of zoom control 1P+8 Selected joystick: 3D Joystick Keyboard • 1+12C<u>a</u>librate Configure Buttons Configure Keypad 4x4 5x5 <u>O</u>K Cancel 1+31🗳 Button Configuratio 8x8 Assigned Actions Actions Buttons - Assigned Actions Button1 - Pan Button2 - Patrol Button3 - Stop Button4 - Home Button5 - Zoom Out Button6 - Zoom Out Button7 - Snapshot Auto Naming Button8 - Keypad Number 1 Button9 - Keypad Number 2 1.7 Home Zoom In Zoom Out Focus Iris Pan Buttonia - Preset move Comou Buttonia - Keypad Number 1 Buttonia - Keypad Number 3 Buttonia - Keypad Number 3 Buttonia - Keypad Number 6 Buttonia - Keypad Number 6 Buttonia - Keypad Number 8 Buttonia - Keypad Number 8 Buttonia - Keypad Number 0 Buttonia - Secope 1 Buttonia - Seven 1 Buttonia - S Stop Patrol Preset Page Up Page Down Page Home Page End Stop Alert Rotate Record to EXE Previous Matrix Next Matrix Previous Monitor Next Monitor Keypad Escape Preset Move Combo Playback E Common Assign Clgar Selected OK Cancel

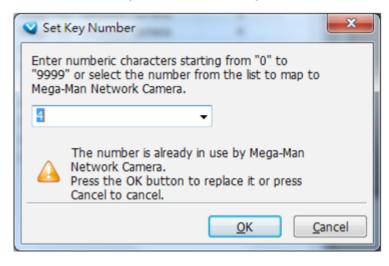
If you should need to change the mapping table, use the Keypad Mapping function.

×

	Key Number				
30x Zoom Mega-Pixel Speed	1				
Network hi Camera	2				
Mega-Man Network Camera	3				
Mega-Man Network Camera	4				
Mega-Man Network Camera	5				
Mega-Man Network Camera	6				
Mega-Pixel Network Camera	7				
Mega-PixeIl Network Camera	8				
Mega-Man Network Camera	9				
Mega-Man Network Camera	10				
Mega-Man Network Camera	11				
	Save Close				

Mega-Man Network	e number from the list to map to Camera.
8	•
1	
2	
3	
4	
6	-
7	OK Consul
	OK Cancel

The below message shows a mapping table ID conflict.



Below is the normal server status information.



The capture below shows the status when using a keypad to quickly switch to a camera's live view.



#### PTZ/ E-PTZ Function

In addition to using the PTZ control panel, you may also control the rotation handle of the joystick to remote control a PTZ/ E-PTZ network camera with ease.

<u>Pan/Tilt</u>: Move the rotation handle of the joystick; you can pan the camera to the desire position. There will be blue line displaying the moving direction in the center of the video image as the diagram 1 below.

<u>Zoom in/Zoom out</u>: Shift the rotation handle clockwise to zoom in the camera on an image or go counterclockwise to zoom out the camera on an image. There will be a circle and four vectors in the center of the video image as the diagram 2, 3 below.



Pan/Tilt (Move the rotating handle back and forth)



Zoom in (Turn the rotating handle clockwise)



Zoom out (Turn the rotating handle counter-clockwise)

### **Proxy Settings**

In this section, you can enable, modify, or cancel **Proxy Settings** for client if your VAST Server is under a proxy. If you change the proxy settings, please fill in the new value next time you login the LiveClient next time.

💙 Proxy Settin	gs 💌
Enable Proxy	
Address:	
Port:	80
User Name:	
Password:	
	OK Cancel

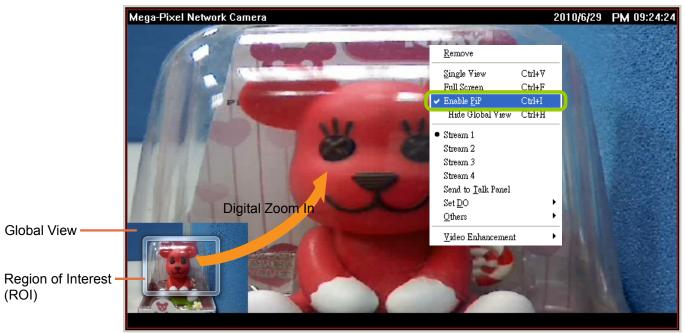
💙 VAST LiveClie	VAST LiveClient		
🔲 Log in local sta	ation		
Address:	192.168.6.117		
Authentication:	Basic Account		
User Name:	admin		
Password:	•		
Port:	3443 🔮 🕅 Use SSL		
Proxy Settings			
Log in	Cancel Hide <<		

# How to Use PiP (Picture-in-Picture)

PiP (Picture-in-Picture) is an intuitive function for user to simultaneously view a Global View and ROI (Region of Interest) for live monitoring. The digital zoom in function can only focus on the interested area and represent the details of megapixel video. Moreover, the multi-touch mode is a very user-friendly interface for digital zoom in.

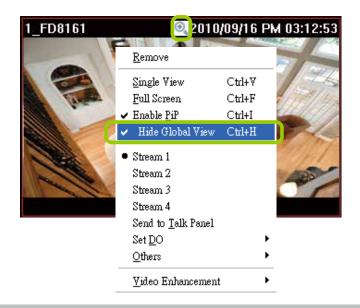
#### Enable PiP

**Right-click** the video cell and select **Enable PiP**. If you want to disable PiP, click the option again to uncheck it. After you enable the PiP function, a movable global view window and a ROI frame will be displayed as shown below.



#### **Global View**

The global view is the original view with the size scaled down to 160x120. It is movable and you can drag it anywhere in the live view window. If you want to hide the global view, **right-click** the video cell and select **Hide Global View** from the menu. An icon (2), will appear on top of the live view window.



#### ROI (Region of Interest)

The ROI frame is capable of being resized and dragged in any direction upon the global view window as e-PTZ function.

#### Digital Zoom In

Through digital zoom in, the live view window will be filled with the zoomed in ROI image. The maximum magnification of the ROI frame is 16x zooming. The zoomed in area will change as the ROI frame is dragged and resized. You can also easily zoom in and zoom out the ROI frame by rolling the mouse back and force.

#### Snapshot & Print Zoomed In Image

You can snapshot and print the zoomed in image.

Edit	View	Configuration	
Manually Begin <u>R</u> ecording			
S <u>n</u> ap <u>P</u> rint Reco		Ctrl+S	
Snapshot Zoomed Image Print Zoomed Image			
Eind			

#### **PiP Settings**

The PiP Settings is for you to adjust the initial position of the global view window.

Click **Configuration > Client Settings > PiP Settings** to open the window. On top of it, you may choose the horizontal position with left / middle / right side of the live view window, or you can customize the percentage of space distance from the border of the live view window as an option. It is also fully applied for vertical position with top / middle / bottom side of the live view window. When it's done, you may click on **Apply to existing windows** to enable the settings.

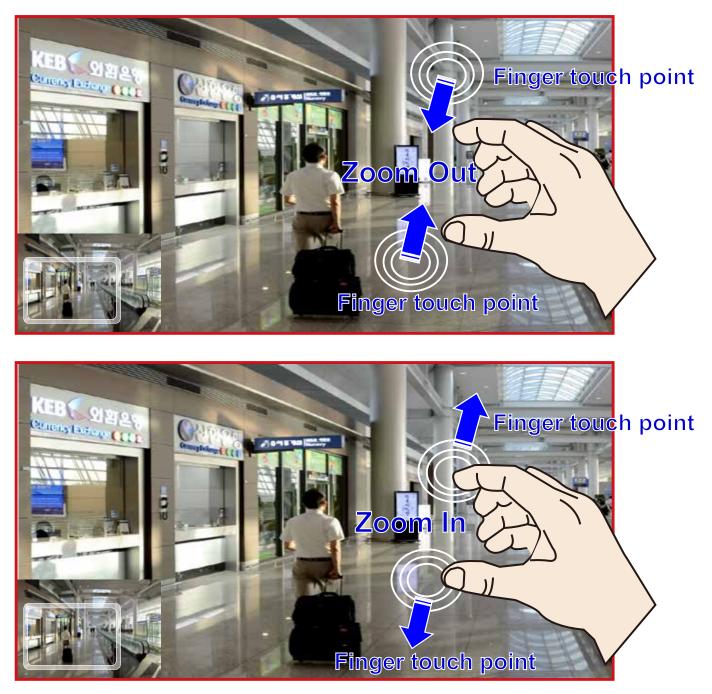
Configuration Layo	ut Help	💟 PiP Settin	gs 🔀
<u>C</u> amera Management <u>S</u> tation Management <u>U</u> ser Management <u>A</u> ssociation Management <u>E</u> vent Management <u>V</u> irtual Matrix Management Station Settings	<ul> <li>58.4</li> </ul>	Initial Positio	Right Aligned       Yew Window         Right Aligned       Yew Window         Window       Yew Window
Client Settings	<ul> <li>Snapshot Settings</li> </ul>		Apply to existing windows
<u>V</u> ideo Enhancement	<u>V</u> iew Settings		
	<u>G</u> eneral Settings Joystick Settings <u>P</u> roxy Settings P <u>i</u> P Settings		

É

- If the position of ROI and global view will be saved and applied for the next open. It will be removed when the live view cell is removed.
- The PiP function is also applied in VAST Playback.

#### Multi-touch Mode

VAST also supports advanced multi-touch mode for PiP. You can easily zoom in or zoom out the image by touching the multi-touch monitor with two fingers.



# How to Configure Video Enhancement

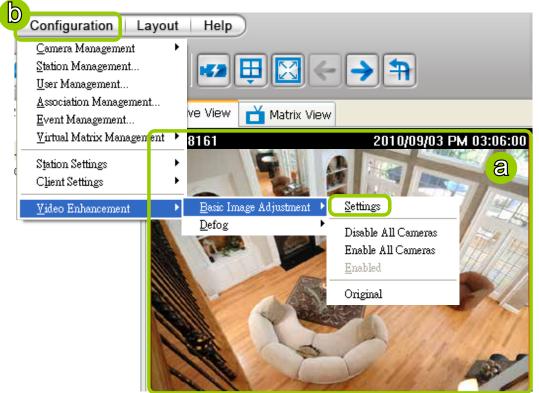
The LiveClient allows you to enable post-image enhancement and defog for video live view.

### **Basic Image Adjustment**

This function allows you to configure basic image adjustment including Brightness, Contrast, Saturation, and Hue.

Please follow the steps below to set a profile for post-image adjustment settings:

- a. Select the target video cell.
- b. Click Configuration > Video Enhancement > Basic Image Adjustment > Settings on the menu bar to open the Profile Settings window. (Or you can right-click the video cell and select Video Enhancement > Basic Image Adjustment > Settings from the popup menu.)

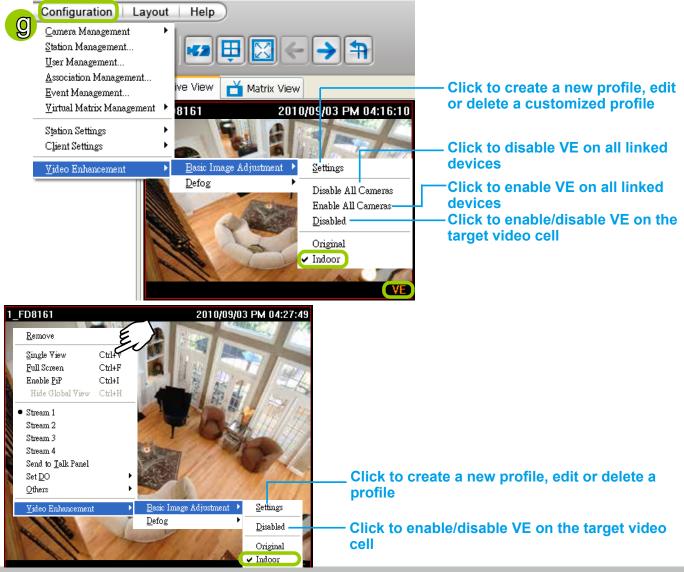




- c. Adjust the values of Brightness, Contrast, Saturation, and Hue. You can preview the image from the window on the right. A "VE (Video Enhancement)" text string will appear at the bottom right of the preview window.
- d. When completed, click **Save as Profile** and enter a name for the new profile.
- e. The new profile will be displayed on the drop-down list. This profile can be applied to all video cells.
- f. If you decide to apply the selected profile to the target video cell immediately, click the **OK** button. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to close the window.

<	Basic Image	Adjustment - fo	r 1_FD8161					X
	Current Profile				Ð			
ſ	-Profile Setting	Original s Indoor						
C	Brightness:	-128 🦳	-0	128	27	•	1_FD8161 2010/09/03 PM 04:09:01	٦
	Contrast:	∘ -⊽-		128	20	•		
	Saturation:	∘ -⊽-		128	20	*		
	Hue:	-180	Ū	180	0	*	VE	J
d	Save <u>a</u> s Profile	Update I	Profile Del	ete Pro	file		Cancel	

g. Back to the main page, a "VE" text string will also appear at the bottom right of the video cell and the new profile will also appear and be selected on the popup menu as shown below.



### Defog

This function allows you to configure post-image defog.

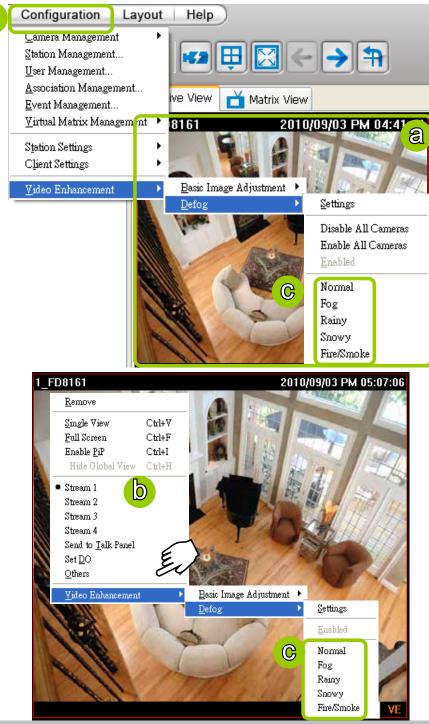
#### Apply a Preset Defog Profile

Please follow the steps below to set post-image defog settings:

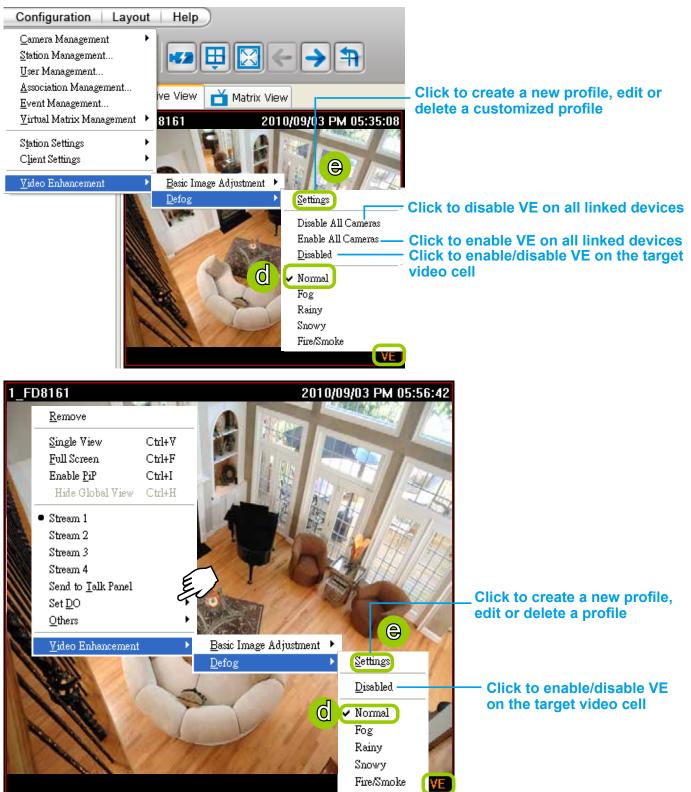
a. Select the target video cell.

6

- b. Click **Configuration > Video Enhancement > Defog** or **right-click** the video cell and select **Video Enhancement > Defog**.
- c. There are some preset profiles for you to apply to the target video cell. You can select one from the list accoding to the environment.



d. The string of the selected profile will be selected as shown below. A "VE" text string will also appear at the bottom right of the video cell.



#### Create a New Defog Profile

e. Click Settings on the popup menu to open the Profile Settings window.

	<ul><li></li><li></li></ul>	Defog Settings Current Profile:	- for 1_FD8161
	ſ	Profile Settings	Normal Fog Rainy
f			Fire/Smoke 5 3 3 1 FD8161 2010/09/03 PM 06:07:45
		Strength:	1 5 3
		Threshold:	0 255 130 😋
g		Save <u>a</u> s Profile	Update Profile Delete Profile OK Cancel

f. Adjust the values of Block Size, Strength, and Threshold. You can preview the image from the right window. A "VE (Video Enhancement)" text string will also appear at the bottom right of the preview window.

Block Size: Brush diameter from thick to thin (Value 1~5)

Strength: Brush stroke from soft to strong (Value 1~5)

Threshold: Brush pixel from loose to dense (Value 0~225)

- g. When completed, click **Save as Profile** and enter a name for the new profile.
- h. The new profile will be displayed on the drop-down list. This profile can be applied to all video cells.
- i. If you decide to apply the selected profile to the target video cell immediately, click the **OK** button. Otherwise, click **Cancel** to close the window.

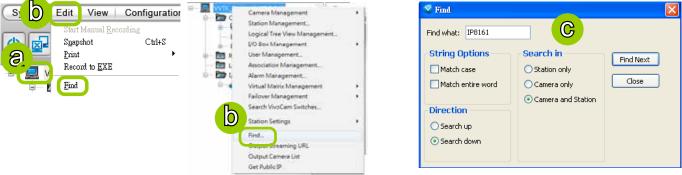
### How to Search for a Device on the Hierarchical Management Tree

This function allows you to conveniently search for an inserted device, which is useful when many devices have been inserted.

Please follow the steps below to find a device on the camera list:

a. Click the station on the hierarchical management tree.

b. Click Edit > Find on the menu bar (or right-click the station and click Find).



- c. The Find window will pop up for you to set your search criteria.
  - Find what: Enter a string in the blank. The string can be the full or partial name of the device you want to search for.
  - String Options: Match case represents that the search results should be identical to the string in lower-case or upper-case letters, the string can be part of a word. Match whole word means that the search results should be identical to the string for every character, and that the string should be a complete word or phrase. If you select both options, the search results should conform to all criteria listed above.
  - Direction: Select search up or search down.
  - Search in: Select search in station or camera.



d. Click Find Next, the seaching result will be marked as shown below.

	- 📃 VVTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)	Ind Sec. 2010	×
Search results	Camera Camera 1 PZ7131(192.168.3.247) 2_IP8161(172.16.200.40) Camera 2_IP8161(192.168.5.105) Camera Camera 2_IP8161(192.168.5.105) Camera Ca	Find what: IP8161  String Options Match case Match case Match entire word Camera only Camera and Station  Direction Search up Search down	Find Next Close

e. If there is nothing found in the camera list, a message will pop up as shown below:



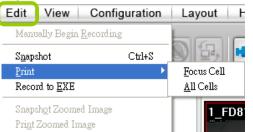
# How to Print a Video Image

There are two ways to print out an image of live video:

1. Select a video cell, then click **Print** and select **Print** from the popup menu. A Print window will pop up for you to choose the printer.

(127.0.0.1)	Live View	Matrix View	
08161(192.168.5.111) Storage	Stream 1     Stream 2     Stream 3	CbH+# CbH+I bol Vinv CbH+I tark Replay 1920-1060 1920-1060 1920-1060	2010/09/02 PM 04:4
	Others Video Enh	entement	Snapshot Ctrl+S Record to EXE
	Video Dis SVC FPS A		Print InspiriotZcomed Image

- 2. You can also click **Edit > Print** to print out an image from a video.
  - Focus Cell: Print out an image of the target video.
  - All Cells: Print out an image with all video cells in the monitoring window.



### How to Lock LiveClient for Security Concerns

If you are away from your computer, for security reasons, we suggest you lock the program. When LiveClient is locked, the user must fill in the correct password to unlock and access the program again.

- To lock LiveClient, click Unlock on the quick access bar or click System > Lock on the system menu. The Unlock icon will then turn into Lock .
- To unlock LiveClient, fill in the correct password in the popup window.

System Edit View	🛛 Input 🛛 🗙
Loc <u>k</u> Ctrl+L Enable Click On <u>I</u> mage Language	The application is locked. Please enter the password for STAdmin. ****
Second <u>V</u> iew <b>E-Map</b>	<u>O</u> K <u>Cancel</u>
Launch <u>P</u> layback	
Logou <u>t</u> E <u>x</u> it	

# How to Log out from the VAST Server

To logout from the current server, click **Logout** on the quick access bar or click **System > Logout** on the menu bar. A confirmation window will pop up. Click **OK** to confirm or **Cancel** to return to the VAST LiveClient window.

System Edit View	🗹 Confirm 🛛 🔀
Loc <u>k</u> Ctrl+L Enable Click On <u>I</u> mage	This will terminate the current connection. Are you sure you want to continue?
Language	
Second <u>V</u> iew	
<u>E</u> -Map	
Launch <u>P</u> layback	
Logou <u>t</u> E <u>x</u> it	

### How to Exit VAST LiveClient

To exit VAST LiveClient, click **Exit** on the quick access bar or click **System > Exit** on the menu bar. A confirmation window will pop up. Click **OK** to confirm or **Cancel** to return to the VAST LiveClient window. When you exit the program, your user account will be automatically logged out from the current server.

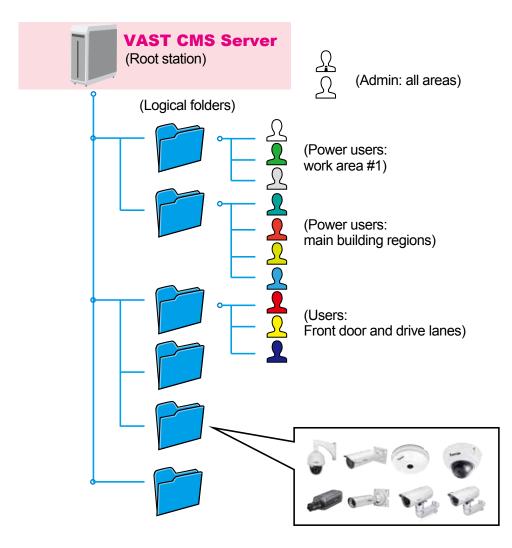
System Edit View	Confirm
Loc <u>k</u> Ctrl+L Enable Click On <u>I</u> mage Language	Are you sure you want to exit the progra
Second <u>V</u> iew <u>E</u> -Map Launch <u>P</u> layback Logou <u>t</u> E <u>x</u> it	

m?

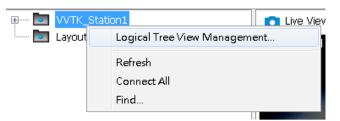
# How to Configure a Logical Tree

A Logical Tree view is available since rev. 1.10 for both LiveClient and Playback. The Logical Tree view allows you to re-define the logical relationships between the real-world deployment and the physical devices (cameras). For example, according to your deployments, you can designate several cameras to be listed under a logical sub-directory named as "Building A," and the other cameras into "Building B." In this way, you can re-arrange your cameras and devices on a tree view that is geographically accurate.

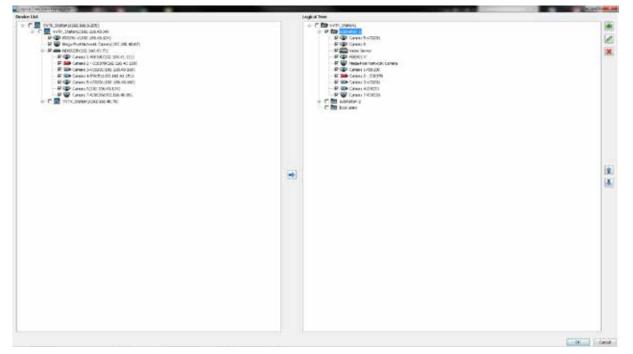
In addition to this, the logical folders can also be used to create privilege groups for users with different access rights. This enables an administrator to easily and flexibly align user privileges with his camera deployments.



To configure a Logical Tree, either right-click on the Device list root entry (VVTK\_Station1), or visit the top menus through **Configuration** > **Logical Tree View management**.



You will then enter the **Logical Tree View** management window. Left click on the root directory, and then right-click to display the **Add** command.



A Logical tree can also display and include the cameras from VAST substations. To enable connection with substations, make sure the **Relay Settings** is enabled both on the VAST Root and substations.

✓ LiveClient     System   Edit   View   C	Configuration   Layout   Help )	
Camera Management Station Management Logical Tree View Management User Management User Management Default Layout User Management Association Management Alarm Management VITK_Station VVTK_Station Failover Management	Station Management Logical Tree View Management I/O Box Management User Management Association Management Alarm Management Virtual Matrix Management Failover Management	■ ○ ● ● ● • rix View 2015/11/24 上午 09:0
Camera Recordi I/O Box ND8322 VVTK_S	Search VivoCam Switches Station Settings Find Output Streaming URL Output Camera List Get Public IP	General Settings Network Settings Recording Storage Settings Recording Schedule Settings Scheduled Backup Settings Server Settings Relay Settings

😮 Relay Settings
Allow CMS connection
Relay Authentication
Password:
Confirm Password:
OK Cancel

To create a logical folder, enter a name for the sub-directory. The name can be a geographical indicator or whatever name your prefer; such as Building A, Site 1, etc. Add a short description.

💜 Add New I	Folder
Name:	
Description:	
	OK Cancel

You can also create logical folders under sub-directories, e.g., a "Corridor" under "Building A." Do this by selecting a sub-directory with a left-click and then right-click on it.

Logical Tree
Em [] E VVTK_Station1
🗎 — 🗖 🛅 Site 1
<b>SD8161</b>
Add
Add
Edit

Note that the root directory can not be edit.

You may also left-click to select a sub-directory, and use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Delete** buttons to create, edit, or remove sub-directories. Use the arrow buttons to change the positions of sub-directories or devices on the logical tree.

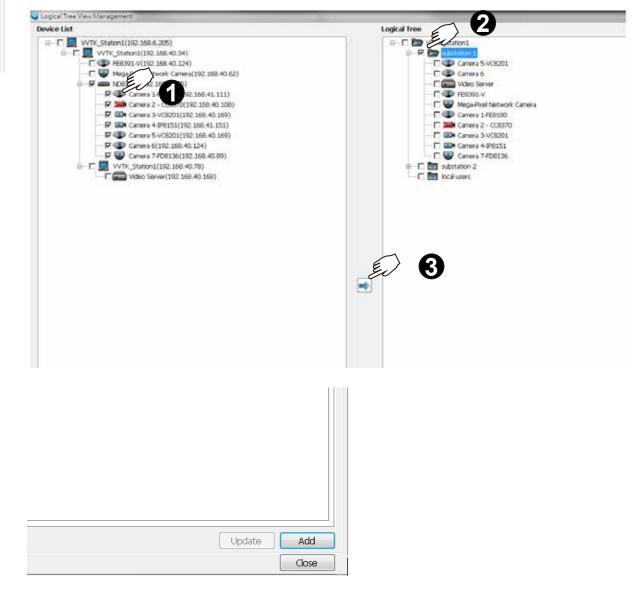
<

When done, click the **OK** button at the low right corner of the window. Configuration changes will be preserved.

You should then insert cameras to a preferred directory:

- 1. Open the device tree to select camera. Left-click to select the checkboxes in front of cameras.
- 2. Select the checkbox of a preferred sub-directory. Make sure the checkbox is selected and the directory is highlighted.
- 3. Click the **Move** button in the middle of the screen.

Cameras will be listed under the target sub-directories.



Use the Sort and Find functions on the Device List on the left panel if it is hard to locate a device.

When done with the configuration, click the OK button, and select from the top menus **View** > **Logical Tree View**. The Logical Tree View will become the standard display for your VAST configuration.

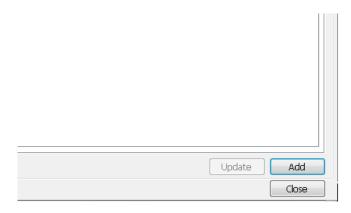


When done with the creation of logical folders, you can move to the **User Management** window. You can then define users' access rights using the logical folders you created. For example, you may let a user access a specific logical folder while forbidding him from the others.

- 1. When you assign Accessible Devices for a user, select the **Logical tree** button on the lower right.
- 2. Select the "**Selected logical tree nodes**" button. You can then select or deselect logical folders to confine the accessible devices for a user.

Note that an administrator has access to all devices, and hence the selection is not available for an administrator.

3. Click the **Add** button on the lower right.



4. The User account information will prompt. Click **OK** to proceed.



5. You can repeat the above steps to create more user accounts using the limited access configuration via the use of logical folders.



- The Refresh, Camera Settings, Output Streaming URL, Send to Talk Panel commands are available for cameras listed in the Logical Tree View.
- The DI/DO, Recording Storage, and I/O Box are not available on a Logical Tree View.
- The root directory (default VVTK\_Station1) can not edited or removed.
- A camera can be added to different sub-directories; however, it can not be added twice into the same sub-directory.
- A camera managed by a sub-station can be added into the Logical Tree.
- The Logical Tree View can not be edited through a web console with the VAST server.
- Cameras added to the VAST configuration will not be automatically added to the Logical Tree View.
- By default, only the administrator and power user are authorized to configure the Logical Tree View.

# **VAST Playback Configuration**

# Activating VAST Playback and Logging in to a Server

VAST Playback allows you to search and playback recorded media data from VAST Server.

Once you insert a device into the hierarchical management tree of VAST LiveClient, it will automatically be displayed on the hierarchical management tree of VAST Playback. You can then begin to use VAST Playback to view recorded or backup video clips.

After installing the VAST Playback program, please follow the steps below to activate VAST Playback:

- 1. Run the VAST Playback program. If you have already run VAST LiveClient, you can also click System > Launch Playback to activate VAST Playback.
- 2. A Login window will pop up. Fill in the information as shown below:
  - If you want to login to a remote VAST Server, enter the IP address, user name, password and communication port of the server. Click Log in to login the target server or Cancel to exit the system.
  - If you want to login to your local host which is running VAST Server, check the Login local station checkbox, and the local IP Address will be displayed automatically. Enter the User Name, Password, and Communication Port of the local server to log in. Click Login to log in to the target server or Cancel to exit the system.

📎 VAST Playbac	k 🗈 💌
🗖 Log in local sta	ation
Address:	192.168.6.135 👻
Authentication:	Basic Account
User Name:	admin
Password:	•
Log in	Cancel More >>

ſ	📎 VAST Playbac	k 🗈 💌
ľ	🗷 Log in local sta	ation
	Addres.	127.0.0.1
	Authentication:	Basic Account
	User Name:	admin
	Password:	•
	Log in	Cancel More >>

3. The VAST Playback main window will be displayed.



If your network environment need to set up proxy, click More >> to extend the login window, then click Proxy Setting to open the dialog. Then enter related information to link to your proxy server.

🕎 VAST Playbac	k 💌
Log in local st	ation
Address:	<b></b>
Authentication:	Basic Account
User Name:	
Password:	
Port:	3454
Proxy Settings	Working Offline
Log in	Cancel Hide <<

📎 Proxy Settings				
🗷 Enable Proxy				
Address:				
Port:	80	* *		
User Name:				
Password:				
		к	Cancel	

Available functions of the VAST Playback program will be enabled according to the role of your login account. For more details about the privileges of the user account, please refer to How to Manage User Accounts on page 151.

# VAST Playback User Interface

The configuration Land		METRO STREET
Control Control Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control     Control	1001	<b>EVIVOTEK</b>
	<b>EVIVOTEK</b>	* VIVOTEK
Ĩ	name Darina inter into inter interprete 1 magementatives (a., ad-let-ad districal ad-let-ad districal ad-let-ad districal ad- 1 magementatives (a., ad-let-ad districal ad-let-ad-districal ad-let-ad-districal ad-let-ad-districal ad-let-ad-	

A. Menu bar
 B. Quick access bar
 C. Query panel (Browsing / Time search / Bookmark search / Event search / Alarm search / Log viewer)
 D. Status panel
 E. Recorded video playback window
 F. Playback control panel
 G. Video clips list

#### Menu Bar

System	Edit View Configuration Layout Help		
Menu Item	Drop-down Options		
System	Lock / Language / Launch LiveClient / Logout / Exit		
Edit	Snapshot / Print / Snapshot zoomed image / Print zoomed image / Find		
View	Logical Tree View / Device Tree View / Backup Status /Exporting Status / Browsing / Time Search / Event Search / Bookmark search / Alarm search / Log Viewer / Full Screen / Minimize / Query Panel / Video Clips List		
Configuration	Client Settings (Snapshot Settings / Export Settings / View Settings / Proxy Settings / General Settings / PiP Settings)		
Layout	Change Layout		
Help	About		

#### **Status Panel**

User Name: admin	CPU
Station Name: VVTK_Station1	35 %
Login Time: 2014-04-22 10:23:09	Memory
Current Time: 2014-04-22 11:14:54	61 %

User Name
Station Name (IP Address)
Login Time (yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss)
Current Time (yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss)
CPU and memory usage in percentage

### **Quick Access Bar**

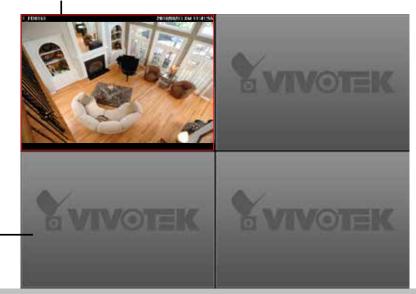


out k ıme pshot	Exit the system Logout from the current station Click to Lock the system for security concerns ( Unclock the system) Adjust the audio volume of the target video ( Mute)
k ume	Click to Lock the system for security concerns (
ime	
	Adjust the audio volume of the target video (🚺 Mute)
nshot	
panot	Capture the picture of the target video
ıt	Print out the picture of the target video
CLevel	Exert SVC control of video playback frame rate
nove All Connection	Remove all live videos from the live video monitoring window
out	Change the layout of video monitoring window
Screen	Maximize the live video monitoring window
tch Screen	Switch to another screen
chronous Playback	Click to enable synchronous playback for multiple channels
t	ove All Connection out Screen ch Screen

Some buttons will be disabled if the selected device does not support those functions.

### **Recorded Video Playback Window**

The "VIVOTEK" logo indicates that no camera has been assigned to the video cell.

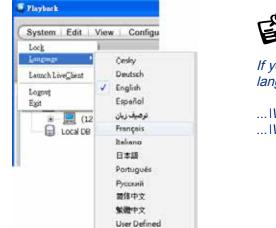


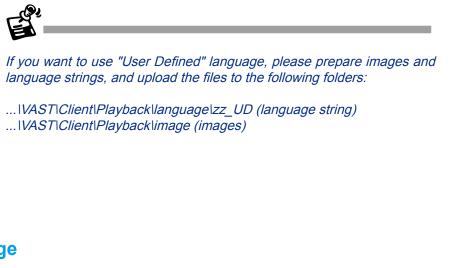
The red frame ( ) represents the focused cell.

Video Cell -

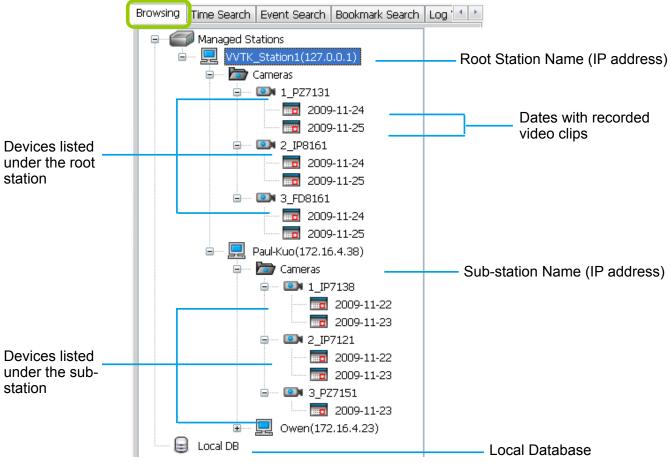
### **Language Selection**

VAST current supports user interfaces in multiple languages; and language options are availabe in: English, Deutsch, Español, العربية, Français, Italiano, 日本語, Português, Русский, 簡体中文, and 繁體中文, User Defined If you want to select another language for the interface, please click **System > Language** on the menu bar to select a desired language. Please note that if you want to change the language option, a message will remind you to restart the system.





#### **Query Panel-- Browsing Page**



You can hide this panel in order to maximize the single playback view from the **View** menu.

lcon	Description
	Station list including server and local database
	A station (a computer that has installed VAST Server)
	A station (a computer that has installed ST7501 Server)
	The camera that exists on the hierarchical management tree of LiveClient.
	The camera that has been removed from the hierarchical management tree of LiveClient (off-line). However, its recorded video (if any) is still accessible from the server.
	Dates with recorded video clips.
	Local database for backup data. For more information about how to upload backup data to the list, please refer to page 301.



See page 268 for how to configure a Logical Tree View.

### Query Panel--Time Search Page

Browsing	Time Search	Event Search	Bookmark Search	Log 🚹 🎽		
	Cameras     I_PZ7     Z_IP8:     Z_IP8:     O     S_FD8     O     Paul-Kuo(:     Camera	l61 161 172.16.4.38)				<ul> <li>Select station(s)/ device(s) that you want to search for recorded files</li> </ul>
Time Z	one: GMT+0	)8:00 Beijing,	Chongging, Hong	j k 🔽		
🗹 Star	t Time:					
2009/:	11/23 🛛 💌	08:50:15				
End	Time:				-	Specify search period of time
2009/:	11/26 💌	09:50:15				
			Sea	rch		Click to start to search, the results will be shown on the video clips list

You can hide this panel in order to maximize the single playback view from the **View** menu.



# **Query Panel--Event Search Page**

Browsing Time Search Event Search Bookmark Searc	
Browsing       Time Search       Event Search       Bookmark Search         Image: WVTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)         Image: WVTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)	Select station(s)/ device(s) that you want to search for recorded files
<ul> <li>✓ □□□ →</li> <li>Search Categories: All Events →</li> <li>Motion - Window 1 →</li> </ul>	Select an Event Category
Motion - Window 2 Motion - Window 3 Motion - Window 4 Motion - Window 5 IVA - Moving Object IVA - Loiterina Detection	Click to add search criteria
Add Remove	Click to remove search criteria
Time Zone: GMT+08:00 Beijing, Chongging, Hong Kor 💌	<ul> <li>Specify search period of time</li> </ul>
2014/ 6/ 5 ▼ 15:49:42 🚔	
2014/ 6/ 5 ▼     16:49:42 ♀       Display in New Result List     Search	Click to start to search, the results will be shown on the video clips list

User's Manual - 281

# **Query Panel--Bookmark Search Page**

Browsing   Time Search   Event Search   Bookmark Search   4 arm Sea	d
WTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)         Gameras         Mega-Pixel Network Camera         Mega-Pixel Network Camera	Select station(s) that you want to search for bookmarks
Bookmark Name:	Select a name to serach for
Time Zone: GMT+08:00 Beijing, Chongging, Hong Kong, Kuala L	Select a time zone
<ul> <li>♦/ 1/2012 ▼ 14:52:56 €</li> <li>End Time:</li> <li>8/ 1/2012 ▼ 15:52:56 €</li> </ul>	Specify search period of time
Search	Click to start to search, the results will be listed on the video clips list

# Query Panel--Alarm Search Page

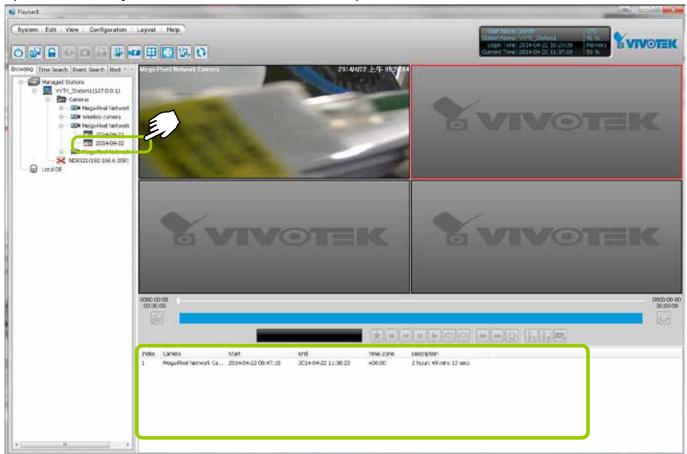
V Playbeck		
(System Edit View Configuration Layout Help)		
	0	
Time Search   Event Search   Bookmark Search   Abim Search   Log *   *	Index Name Description	
VMS_Station(127.0.0.1)	1 Alarm 2 Alarm 3 Alarm 4 Alarm	<ul> <li>Select station(s) that you want to search for bookmarks</li> </ul>
Fitter           Time Zone:         GMT+08:00 Bejing, Chongging, Hong Kong, Kuab Lu +           2/ Start Time:         2016/ 6/ 1 +         08:59:32 ÷           7/ End Time:         2016/ 7/ 5 +         10:59:32 ÷           Search	Export All Logs	Click to configure the search conditions Select a time zone Specify search period of time Click to export a log files for the occurrences of alarms Click to start to search, the results will be listed on the video clips list

# **Query Panel--Log Viewer Page**

Bookmark Search	Alarm Search Log Viewer		
	Station1(127.0.0.1) aul-Kuo(172.16.4.38)	Select station(s) that you to search for recorded log	
Category:	All Local Logs 🛛 👻	Select a Log Category	
User:		Select a User Account	
Result:	All	Select a Result Type	
Log Type:	All	Select a Log Type	
Log Level:	All	Select a Log Level	
	✓ Including above leve		
Time Zone: GMT	+08:00 Beijing, Chongging, Hong k 🐱		
Start Time:			
2009/11/26 💌	08:50:16		
End Time:		Specify search period of	of time
2009/11/26 💌	09:50:16		
	Search	Click to start to search results will be listed or video clips list	

### Video Clips List Window

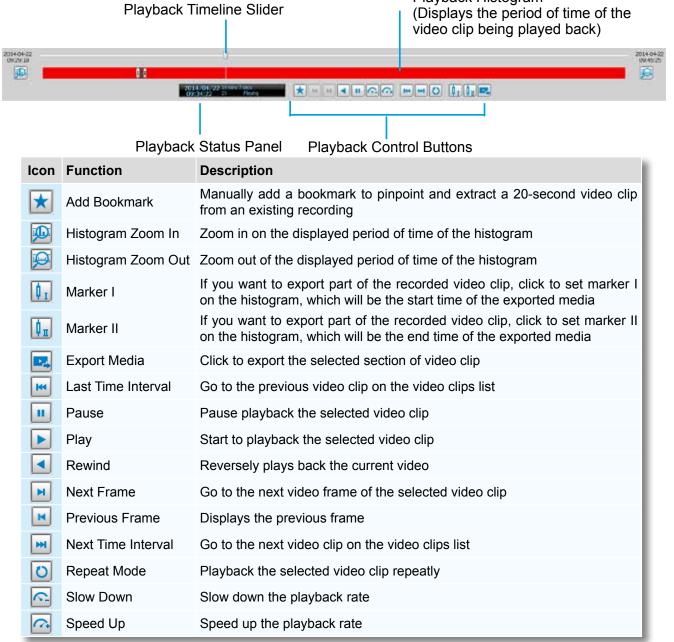
If you select an **option "date"**, the video clips will be displayed in the video clips list window. An option "date" may contain more than one video clip.

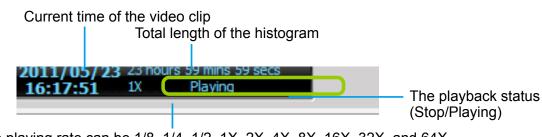


You can hide this panel in order to maximize the single playback view from the View menu.

### **Playback Control Panel**

When you double-click a video clip to play, the playback control panel will be enabled for you to use. Playback Histogram





The playing rate can be 1/8, 1/4, 1/2, 1X, 2X, 4X, 8X, 16X, 32X, and 64X.

#### Rewind

The Rewind function enables users to reversely playback from a specific point in time on a video playback window. Once the occurrence of an event is ensured, this function can facilitate the process of finding the evidences that appeared before the occurrence.

The Rewind function also applies to the Synchronous Playback mode. The following also apply:

- 1. The maximum playback speed is 64x. (I-frame only when speed is higher than 16x)
- 2. When you pull the time slider during the Rewind playback, short interruptions may occur.
- 3. When switching from the playback mode to the Rewind playback, the playback speed remains the same. The same applies when switching from Rewind to the playback mode.

#### Limitations:

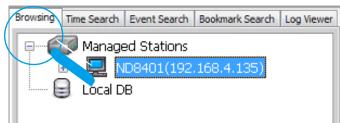
- 1. Short delays may occur when switching from playback to rewind, due to limitations by the hard disk access speed and network speed.
- 2. When doing the forward playback, the previous frame function is not available. When doing the rewind playback, the next frame function is not available.
- 3. The Rewind playback on multiple streams requires system performance resources.

# How to Playback Recorded Video

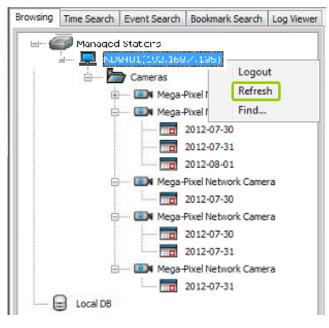
### Select a Recorded Video Clip

Please follow the steps below to select a video clip:

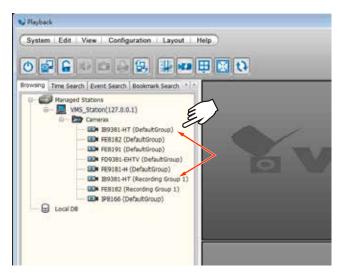
1. On the **Bowsing** page, click the plus sign (+) to expand the hierarchical management tree.



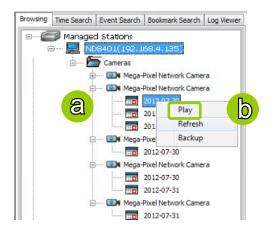
2. **Right-click** a station, device, or option "date" on the hierarchical management tree and click **Refresh** to display the recorded video clips.

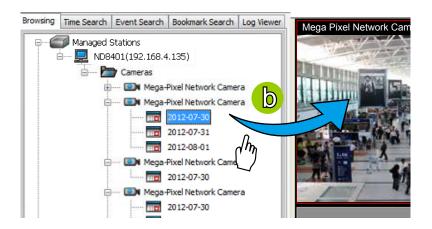


If a camera is configured with Multiple Stream recording, all its recording group configurations will be listed on the device tree.

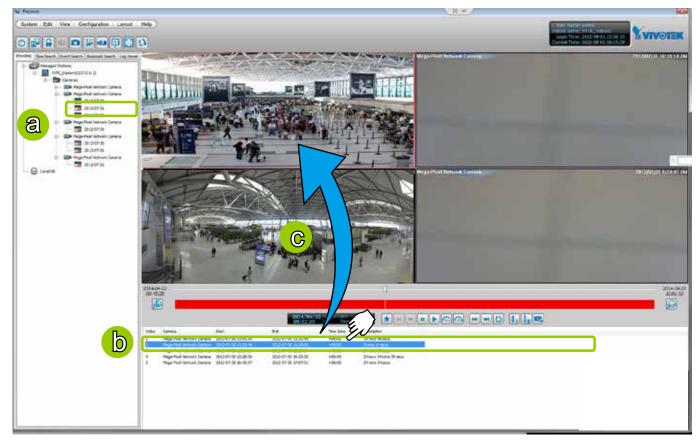


- 3. There are two ways to view the video clips of a date.
  - View all video clips of a date:
    - a. Select an option "date" from the hierarchical management tree.
    - b. Double-click the option "date" or right-click the option "date" and click play, and it will start to play in an available video cell. (You can also directly drag-and-drop the option "date" to a desired video cell in the recorded video playback window. The video clip will start to play.)





- View only one of the video clips of a date:
  - a. Click on a "date" on the hierarchical management tree. The corresponding video clips will be listed in the video clip list window.
  - b. Select a video clip from the video clip list window.
  - c. Double-click the video clip, then it will start to play in an available video cell. (You can also directly drag-and-drop the video clip to a desired video cell in the recorded video playback window. The video clip will start to play.)

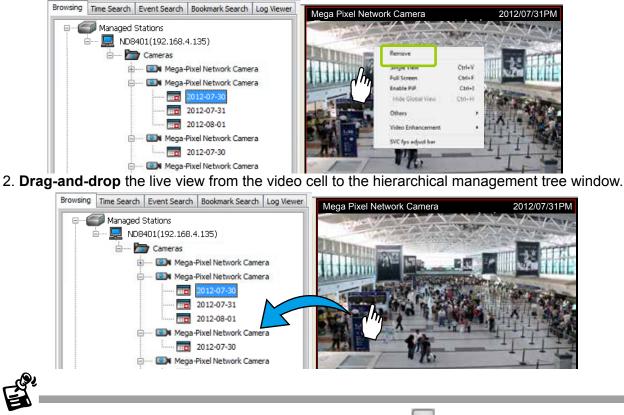


4. Then you can make use of the playback control panel to playback the selected video clip. Please refer to **Playback Control Panel** on page 286.

# **Remove Recorded Video Clips from Video Cells**

There are two ways to remove a recorded video clip from the video cell:

1. Right-click the video cell and select Remove.

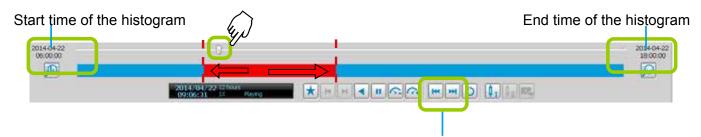


If you want to remove all live videos from the video cells, please click 💶 on the menu bar.



# Timeline Slider Bar and Histogram

The red part of the histogram shows the period of time of a video clip. The timeline slider bar will move forward as the video is on playback. You can manually move forward/backward the **Timeline Slider Bar** to the desired position as shown below.



The current time of the video clip will be displayed on the status panel. It will change according to the current position of the timeline slider bar.

# Zoom in / out of the Histogram Histogram zoomed in Histogram zoom

As the second picture shows, by clicking **Histogram Zoom In**, the total time of the histogram will shorten to half of the original period of time, while the red part of the histogram that shows the period of time of the video clip will extend to twice the original time span.

In addition to clicking we and so to zoom in/ out of the histogram, you can use the mouse directly to drag the histogram to zoom in part of the focused video clip. For example:

a. Drag a section of the histogram. You can drag it to either direction.



b. The section will be extended as shown below.





For more functions of the playback control buttons, please refer to page 286 for detailed description.

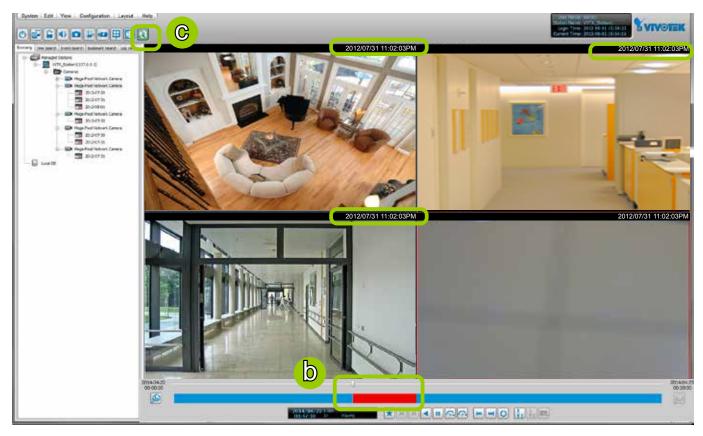
### Synchronous Playback

VIVOTEK VAST Playback supports synchronous playback, which allows you to review up to 16-channel video clips simultaneously during the specific time point. Please follow the steps below to enable synchronous playback:

a. Drag-and-drop the option "date"s to the video cells.



- b. Drag the Timeline Slider Bar to the specific time point.
- c. Click the synchronous playback button 🔯 on the quick access bar. The selected channel will start to sychronously playback as shown below.



- d. You can move forward/backward the Timeline Slider Bar to another time point, and all of the time stamps on the video cells will change accordingly.
- e. If you want to stop synchronous playback, click the non-synchronous playback button 💽 again.



The following illustration shows that during the specific time, there is no recorded video on the camera.

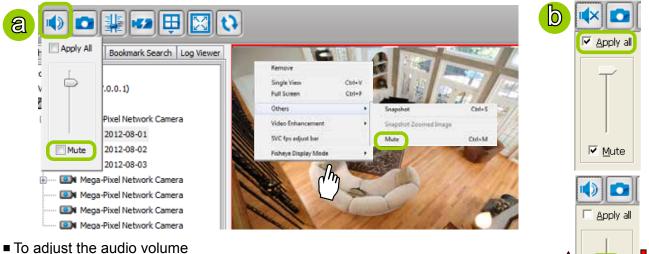


# **Audio Control**



The audio function will be enabled if the device is equipped with an internal or external microphone. Please follow the steps below to adjust the volume or turn on/off the audio of the focused video:

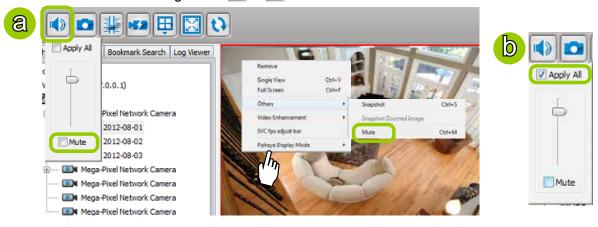
- To turn off the audio (Mute Mode)
  - a. Click Audio On 🚺 on the quick access bar and check Mute. Or you can right-click on the video cell to open the popup menu, then click Others > Mute. The mute option in the popup menu will then be selected.
  - b. If you want to turn off the audio of all live video, select Apply all.
  - c. The Audio icon will then change from 🚺 to 💌.



- a. Click Audio On 💿 on the quick access bar.
- b. Drag-and-drop the slider bar. Slide to a higher position for louder volume.



- To turn on the audio
  - a. Click Mute Mon the quick access bar and uncheck Mute. Or you can right-click on the video cell to open the popup menu, then click Others > Mute. The mute option in the popup menu will then be unchecked.
  - b. If you want to turn on the audio of all live video, select Apply all.
  - c. The Audio icon will then change from 🚺 to 🚺.



# How to Change the Playback Layout

### Changing the Layout of the Recorded Video Playback Window

VIVOTEK VAST Playback supports up to 16-CH simultaneous recorded video playback on a single monitor and allows you to change the layout of the recorded live video playback window based on the number of inserted devices.

### Switch Video Channels

Drag-and-drop a video channel to another empty video window.



To switch two channels, **drag-and-drop** one view to the other, then the two channels will switch positions.



### **Configure Layout Mode**

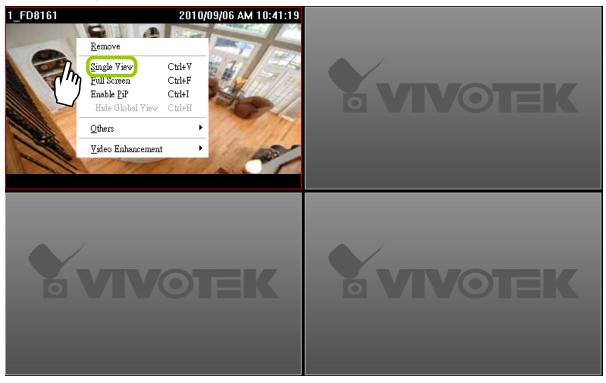
Click the **Layout** button 🖳 on the quick access bar or click **Layout > Change Layout** on the menu bar. Select a desired layout mode and the layout window will change accordingly. Below we illustrate 6 types of layout modes:

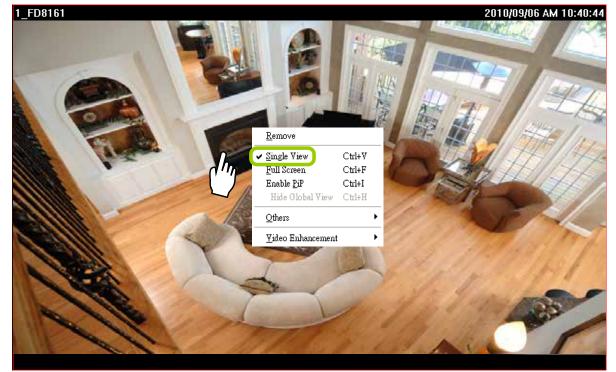
		₩ <b>₩</b> 2 E		ť
😢 Playback		Layout mode	Description	í.
System Edit   View   Configuration	Layout Help	1 x 1		
	2V 3V	2V		
Time Search Event Search Bookmark Search #	2×2 √ 4∨	3V		
Cameras     FP181-H (DefaultGroup)     FP381-EHTV (DefaultGroup)     Outdoor Network Speed Dome Car     Outdoor Network Speed Dome Car	2V+3 1+5 3x3	2 x 2		
- 1 199381-HT (DefautGroup) - 199381-HT (DefautGroup) - 198366 (DefautGroup)	1+12 4x4	4V		
		2V+3		
		1 + 5		
		3 x 3		
		1 + 12		
Jser's Manual		4 x 4		

### Maximize/Minimize the Recorded Video Playback Window

• Single View: to maxmize a video cell to the entire video playback window

**Double-click** the video cell, or **right-click** the video cell and selec **Single View**. The focused video will occupy the entire Playback window as shown below.

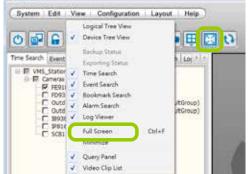




To restore to the original layout, **double-click** the video cell or **right-click** the video cell and uncheck **Single View.** 

Full Screen: to maxmize the video playback window to the entire screen

		the video cell and select Full Screen.
In addition, you can also	click View > Full Screen on the men	nu bar to maximize the recorded video
playback window.	N Flayback	



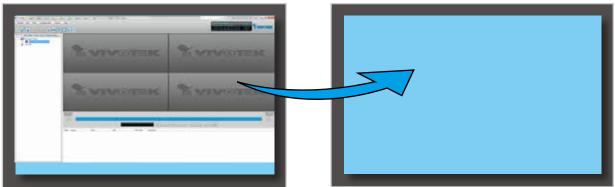
To restore to the original layout, **right-click** the video cell and uncheck **Full Screen**. You also can press the **Esc** button on the keyboard to leave the full screen mode.

Minimize: If you click View > Minimize on the menu bar, the Playback window will minimize to the Windows tool bar.

### **View Recorded Video with Multiple Monitors**

If you have multiple screens in your control center, you can switch the VAST Playback Window among these screens.

If you have two monitors, click Switch Screen so on the menu bar, the Playback window of monitor 1 will switch to monit@Anitor 1
Monitor 2



If you have three or more monitors, a drop-down list will be displayed when you click Switch Screen on the menu bar. The number of options on this list depends on the number of your screens. Select a desired screen from the drop-down list and the Playback Window will then switch to the specified screen.



# How to Backup Recorded Video

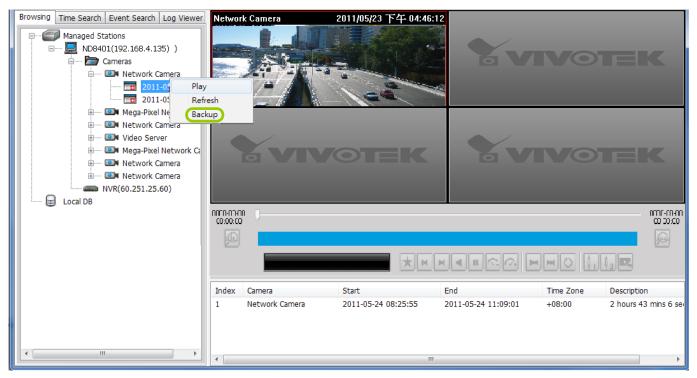
In addition to the Schedule Backup function of VAST LiveClient introduced on page 61, the VAST Playback also features to backup recorded video clips from the **local database**. Please open the **Browsing** page and follow the steps below to backup recorded video:

a. Select the target files.

• <u>To backup all recorded video of a selected device</u>: **Right-click** the device and click **Backup**.



To backup all recorded video of the day: Right-click the option "date" and click Backup (or select the date and click the Backup button below).



To backup part of the recorded video of the day: Select the date and choose the video clip(s) from video clip window. Then right-click the selected option(s) and click Backup. Note: Use the combination of the Shift key and left mouse click to select multiple video clips.

System Edt View Configuration La			Loop Te	ne STAInt) re V/TC_Statest re 2009-11-27 10.09:00 re 2009-11-27 13:39:23	VIVOTER
Revening Time Search   Long Verwer	*vi	IVOT	EK	<b>E viv</b>	otek
■ 2,900-11.25 = 2009-11.25 = 2009-10 = 2009-11.25 = 2009-10 = 2009-10 = 2009-10 = 2009-10 = 2009-10 = 2009-10 = 2009-	81	IVOT	EK (	2 viv	otek
	(090) 399 N				
	Index Camers  L L/272331  2 L/27233  3 L/27233	Start 2007 11 20 12 2008 11 20 12 2008 11 20 12		Time Zone 219 = 40000 205 = 40000 \$99 = 40000	Description 47 mile 25 sets 2 hours 10 miles 1 cet 1 hours 12 miles 49 sets

b. A **Backup Settings** window will pop up. Specify the time span and select a storage path, then click **Backup**. The system will start to backup and popup a window showing the backup status.

Backup Settings	Backup Status	
Start Time: 1/16/2013   00:00:00  End Time: 1/16/2013  23:59:59	Mega-Pixel Network Camera 2013-01-16 00:00:00 ~ 2013-01-16 23:59:59 Backup Mega-Pixel Network Camera has completed.	Close
Save to: E:\Recording\2013-01-16\3		
Backup Cancel		

If you close the status window, you can also open it again by clicking **View > Backup Status**.



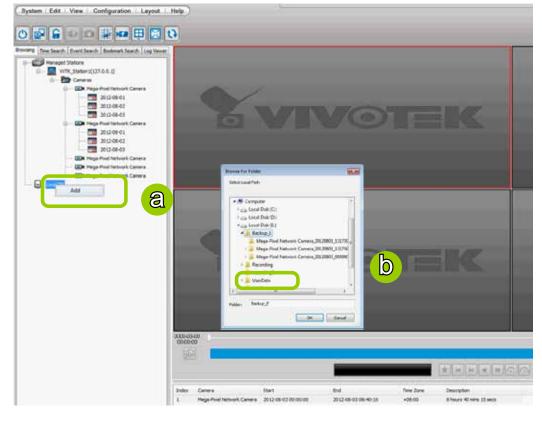
d. When the backup is complete, you will see an information dialog. The recorded data will be restored in the specific folder.

# How to View Backup Files

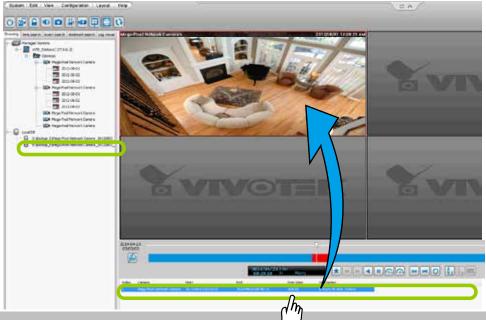
The VAST Playback also allows users to playback backup files, including **Schedule Backup** by VAST LiveClient and **Recorded Data Backup** by VAST Playback.

Please follow the steps below to view backup files:

- a. Right-click Local DB and click Add.
- b. A Load Backup File window will pop up as shown below. Select the \*.dif file to upload.



c. The following is an example of uploaded file, and you can **double-click** it or **drag-and-drop** it to a video cell to playback.





If you want to playback the backup files from the local database, you can also click **Working Offline** in the Login Window without the account information. The VAST Playback will launch as shown below.

📎 VAST Playbac	k X
✓ Log in local sta	ation
Address:	127.0.0.1
Authentication:	Basic Account
User Name:	1
Password:	
Port:	3454 💌 🔲 Use SSL
Proxy Settings	Working Offline
Log in	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> ide <<

### No user account information required

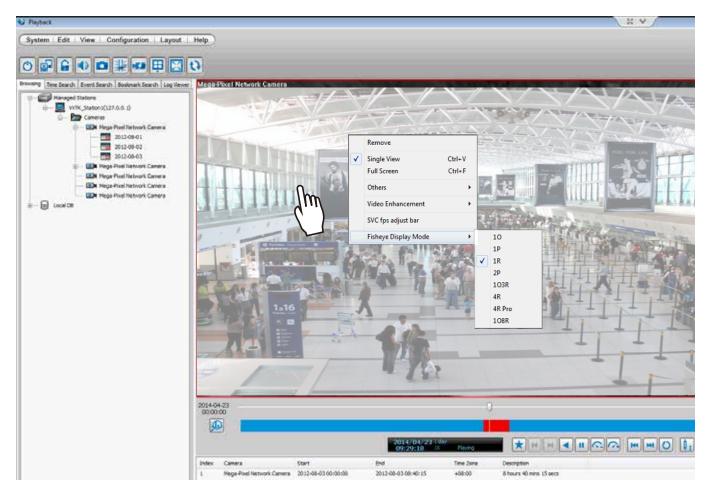


# Model-specific Functions (FE Series Fisheye)

The VAST Playback program offers model-specific functions through a right-click menu. For example, if you playback a video clip made from an FE8171V fisheye camera, a right-click on the playback screen will bring up the Display mode options. You can even exert mouse control while playing a recorded video. You can zoom in, zoom out, and change the view angle as if you are investigating a 3D scenario kept in a recorded point in time.

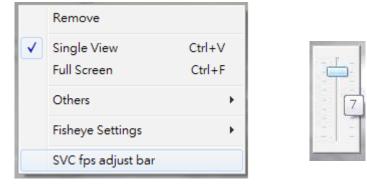
Note that ePTZ functions via the mouse control only takes place in a Regional view, e.g., the 1R or 1O3R mode.

The **Display mode** options and **mouse control** methodologies are identical to those described on page 125 and the following pages.



To configure the SVC-related feature:

1. Right-click on the playback window of an SVC-enabled camera. Select SVC fps adjust bar.



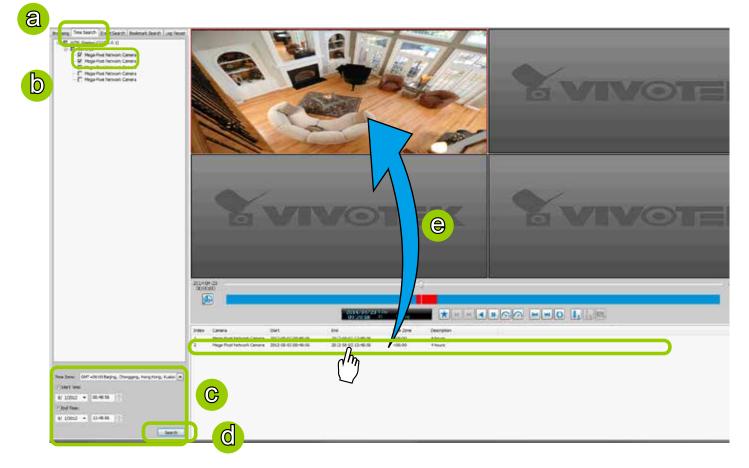
2. A slide bar will appear above the view cell. Click and drag the slide bar. A numeric indicator will display the current selection. See below for the frame rates represented by the numeric indicator. Please refer to page 103 for the introduction of this feature. Changing the SVC vaule takes immediate effect on the number of frames per second shown with the video being played.

Indicator	Frame rate per second (fps)
Maximum	30
7	26
6	22
5	18
4	12
3	8
2	4
1	1
Minimum	1/4

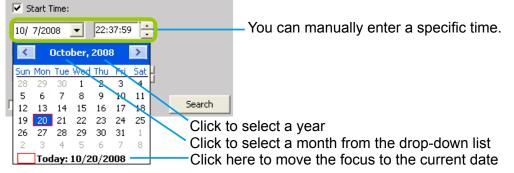
# How to Search for a Video Clip in a Specific Period of time

Please follow the steps below to use **Time Search** function:

a. Open the Time Search page.



- b. Select the target station(s)/device(s) that you want to search for video clips.
- c. Specify the time span. You can choose to set up the start time only, the end time only, or both the start time and end time. The search results will only include the video clips within the time span. If you uncheck both the start time and end time, the search results will include all video clips recorded by the selected device(s).



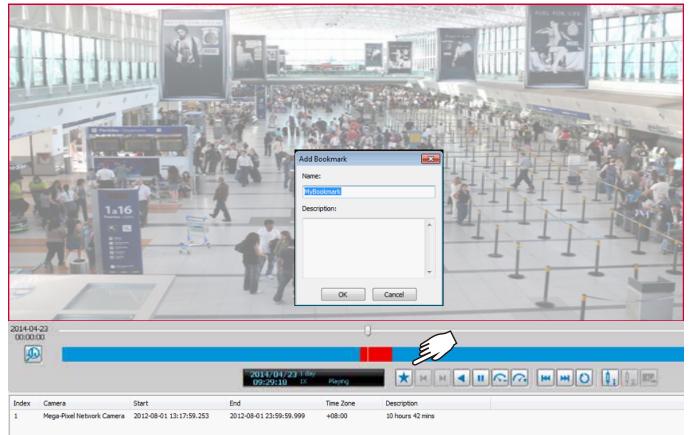
- d. Click **Search** to start time search.
- e. View the retrieved video clips.

# How to Add a Bookmark

Bookmark is a convenient tagging function that allow your to pinpoint and extract a 20-second video clip from out of a video recording. When you see somehting of your interest while browsing through a recorded video

- 1. Click on the 🔀 Bookmark button,
- 2. Enter a name for the bookmark, such as "thief spotted."
- 3. You may enter a short description in the Description field. You may also search for the bookmarks you created later on.

A bookmark comprises a video clip starting from 10 seconds of before and ends at 10 seconds after the point in time you selected.



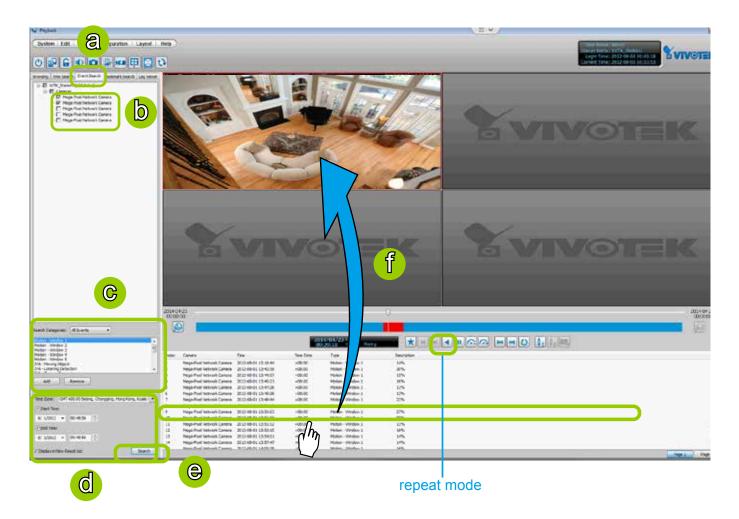
Please refer to page 282 for how to search for bookmarks.

# How to Search for Events

The VAST Playback program offers users an intuitive event search engine for retrieving video clips from the database of recorded videos based on different search criteria such as motion, IVA, or DI events.

Please follow the steps below to search for recorded events:

a. Open the **Event Search** page.



- b. Select the target station(s)/device(s) that you want to search for events.
- c. Specify the **Event Category**. For detailed information, please refer to **Select Event Category** on the following page.
- d. Specify the time span for event search. You can choose to set up the start time only, the end time only, or both the start time and end time. The search results will only include the events within the time span. If you uncheck both the start time and end time, the search results will include all events from the selected device(s). Please refer to step c. on the previous page for detailed information.
- e. Start event search. Please refer to page 311 for detailed information.
- f. View the retrieved video clips. **Double-click** on it or **drag-and-drop** it to the video cell. It will playback in repeat mode.

Note: The length of each video clip will depend on your settings of pre-event time & post-event time for the recording storage. The default setting is **20 seconds**. For more infromation, please refer to page 188 for detailed information.

### **Select Event Category**

The following introduces the event search categories: All Events, All Motion Events, All IVA events, All DI Events, Named DI Events, PIR, Tampering, Tamperature, Video Loss/ Restore, IR Trigger/Normal, and P-PTZ. You can also add or remove customized events from the list.

### **Event Category- All Events**

If you select the **All Events** category, all of the events including motion detection, digital input, and intelligent video analysis, PIR, tamper detection, and tamperature alarm will be listed in the search results. You can click **Add** or **Remove** to change the search criteria options.

Search Categories:	All Events	~	
Motion - Window 1 Motion - Window 3 IVA - Moving Object IVA - Loitering Dete IVA - Camera Tampi IVA - Others	All IVA Events All DI Events Named DI Events ction		
Add Re	move		

### Event Category- All Motion Events

If you select the **All Motion Events** category, all detected motion events will be included in the search. You can click **Add** or **Remove** to change the search criteria options.

Search Categories: All Motion Events 🔽	Customized Events
Motion - Window 1 Motion - Window 2 Motion - Window 3	Event Type: Al Motion Events  Search Criteria Window1 Window2 Window3 Window4 Window5 OK Cancel
Add Remove	con carde

The parameters of the motion detection windows, such as motion percentage and the time of occurrence are also recorded in the database of the server. If you wish to change the parameters of the motion detection windows such as the position, size, detection sensibility, and motion percentage, please link to the camera's Configuration page to modify the values.



Enable motion detection

### **Event Category- All IVA events**

If you select the **All IVA events** category, all detected IVA events will be included in the search. Cameras with embedded intelligent video content analysis are capable of detecting IVA events such as moving objects, loitering, and tamper detection.

The embedded video content analysis, superior to the conventional motion detection function, is capable of distinguishing between creature's motions, static backgrounds or natural movements such as swaying trees, waves or sunsets to prevent false alarms from environmental noises.

With camera tamper detection, it can detect incidents such as camera redirection, blocking or defocusing of cameras, or even spray-paint. Additionally, a suspicious object in the pre-defined detection region will trigger alarms once the dwell time of the object is longer than the given time.

You can click Add or Remove to change the search criteria items.

Search Categories: All IVA Events 🔽	Customized Events
IVA - Moving Object IVA - Loitering Detection IVA - Camera Tampering	Event Type: Al IVA Events 🔹
IVA - Cantera Fampering IVA - Others	Search Criteria
Add Remove	OK Cancel

If you want to change the parameters of IVA, such as the detection region, loitering duration, etc, please link to the camera's Configuration page to modify the values.

Trigger name:	Trigger1	
	Contraction of the second se	
Enable this		
Detection ty	(pe	
_		
<ul> <li>Moving ob</li> </ul>	oject detection	
O Loitering	detection - duration: 10 second	ds [1~90]
O Camera ta	ampering detection	
Detection re	enion	
(TCP-AV)	2008/06/09 1	10000
A STORE OF	2001/00/03 1	
10	GA	
and the second s		
		Sec. 1
A OF		
		To draw a rectangle region, dick on the rectangle button and drag
A.L.	Part ak	on the video area.
	and the	
	A STATE	To draw a polygon region, dick on the polygon button and dick
		several points on the video area.
1000		several points on the video area.
1298	and the second	er.
118	and and the set	
	and the second second	
100 C		
88	L	lelete
(and )	3	
Save Close		

### Event Category- All DI Events

If you select **All DI Events** category, all triggered DI signals will be included in the search. The DI events signify that there is a Digital-Input signal detected by the camera; its corresponding information such as DI-Trigger or DI-Normal signal and the time of occurrence are also transmitted and recorded in the database of the server.

You can click **Add** or **Remove** to change the search criteria options.

3	Search Categories: All DI Events	Cust
	DI - Trigger DI - Normal	Eve
	Add Remove	

Event Type:	All DI Events
Search Drit	teria
Trippi	er 🖾 Normal
OK	Cancel

For more information about DI/DO settings on the connected devices, please refer to page 160 for detailed illustration.

### **Event Category- Named DI Events**

This category allows you to select only **Named DI Events**--the DI device which you have renamed in the LiveClient. Please refer to Association Management on page 160 for more information about how to rename DI device.

Click **OK** and fill in the name you want to search on the left window.

Search Categories: Named DI Events 👻	Customized Events
	Event Type: All DI Events
	Search Criteria
	🗖 Trigger 📄 Normal
Add Remove	OK Cancel

The new search criteria will be displayed in the search categories column as shown below. You can click **Add** or **Remove** to change the search criteria options.

Search Categories:	Named DI Events 💌
Entrance (DI - Trigg	ger)
Add Re	emove

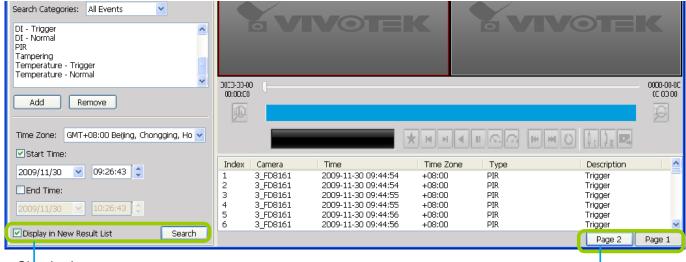
### **Start Event Search**

After you specify all of the search criteria mentioned above, check/uncheck **Display in new result list** and click **Search** to begin event search.

If Display in new result list is unchecked, all search results will be displayed on the original event list window as shown below.

Matrian - Window 3 Matrian - Window 2 Matrian - Window 3	- 10	6 VIV			VIVOI	EK
Add Remove		) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
Time Zone: GMT+08:00 Beijing, Chongging, H Start Time:	6 ×		Annual Annual Annual Annual	and Spanich Grand Spanich Sp		Contraction of Contraction
	Index	Camera	Time	Time Zone	Туре	Description
2009/11/30 😸 09:26:43 😂	1	Mega-Pixel Network Ca		+08:00	Motion - Window 1	19%
End Time:	2	Mega-Pixel Network Ca		+08:00	Motion - Window 1	43%
resources the second se	3	Mega-Pixel Network Ca		+08:00	Motion - Window 1	38%
2009/11/20 10:26:43	4	Mega-Pixel Network Ca		+03:00	Motion - Window 1	37%
		Mega-Pixel Network Ca		+09:00	Motion - Window 1	35%
Display in New Result List Sear	ch S	Mega-Pixel Network Ca		+08:00	Motion - Window 1	28%
		Mega-Pixel Network Ca	2014-09-25 14:18:32	+08:00	Motion - Window 1	39%
						Only one pa

- In the above picture, The Type field in the search result page shows the event category, and the Description field displays the motion percentage of the detection window. Please refer to page 308 for more information about Motion Events.
- If you select **Display in new result list** and click **Search**, the search results will be displayed on a new page as shown below. This allows you to place the search results of each search category on an individual page. You can set up to 5 pages in the event list window.



Checked

You can set up to 5 pages.



The P-PTZ event type refers to those triggered by the Auto Tracking actions.

### **Backup the Event Videos**

Please follow the steps below to backup the evnet videos on the results list:

a. Select the video clips you want to backup. You can select more than one video clip.

b. Right-click the selected video clips and click Backup.

Index	Camera Time		Time Zone	Туре	Description	~
1	3_FD8161 2009-	11-30 09:44:54	+08:00	PIR	Trigger	
2	3_FD8161 2009-	11-30 09:44:54	+08:00	PIR	Trigger	
З	3_F <u>D8161 2009</u> -	11-30 09:44:55	+08:00	PIR	Trigger	
4	3 FI Clear All Results	30 0 <b>) M</b> \55	+08:00	PIR	Trigger	_
5	Backup	30 OS († 6	+08:00	PIR	Trigger	
6	3	- 30 09:44:56	+08:00	PIR	Trigger	~
	Show <u>M</u> illiseconds				Page 2 Page	e 1

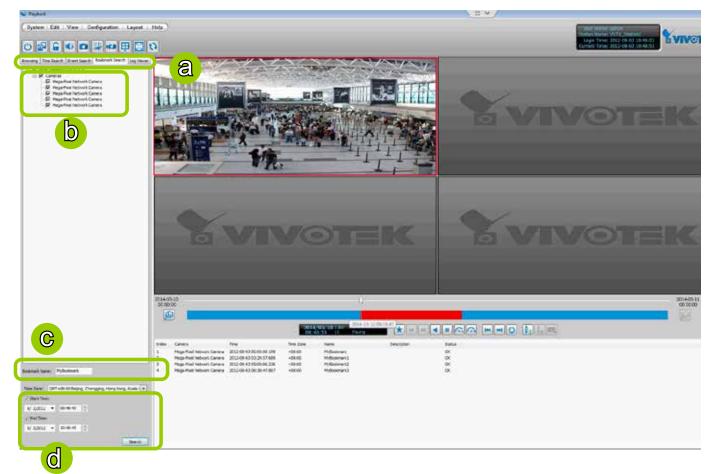
c. A **Backup Settings** window will pop up. For more information about how to set up the Backup Settings, please refer to page 299. For more information about how to view backup files, please refer to page 301 for detailed illustration.

# How to Search for a Bookmark

Please follow the steps below to use **Bookmark Search** function:

a. Click on the tabbed menu to open the Bookmark Search page.

b. Select the cameras which have video clips you have placed bookmarks on.



- c. Enter the name of bookmark.
- d. Specify a range of time during which the video streams were recorded and its points in time were bookmarked.
- Click **search**. You can then click on a bookmark to display the short video clip extracted from within the recorded video.

To remove an existing bookmark, left-click to select an entry, and then right-click to display the Delete button. Bookmarks will be indicated as "Invalid" if the videos where the bookmarks were appended were erased, e.g., when the original recording was erased by cyclic recording.

0:00;						_
<b>M</b>	Camera	Time	Time Zone	703/10 : da 0:53 1X	2014-03-10 08.05.47	Status
a and the		2013-07-04 09:29:30	+09:00	MyGookmark	Cesciptori	OK
	20x Zoom Mega-Pixel	2013-07-04 09:29:30				
3	20x Zoom Mega-Pixel	2013-07-04 10:44:33	+08:00	МуВоокта	Cleer All Results Backup	OK

# How to Search Logs

The VAST Playback program offers a convenient log engine for searching all local logs based on different search criteria such as log category, log type, and log level. The search results will be displayed in the log viewer window along with the detailed log history.

Please follow the steps below to search logs:

- a. Open the Log Viewer page.
- b. Select the target station where you want to search logs.
- c. Specify the Log Category. For detailed information, please refer to Select Log Category on page 315.
- d. Specify the **User Account**. If you have added other user accounts to the station, you can select one to search its login history. For detailed information about user account, please refer to **How to Manage User Accounts** on page 151.
- e. Specify the **Search Result**. Select **All** to display all search results; select **Success** to display successful log activities only; select **Fail** to display failed log activities only.
- f. Specify the Log Type. For detailed information, please refer to Select Log Type on page 315.
- g. Specify the Log Level. For detailed information, please refer to Select Log Level on page 315.
- h. Specify the search time span. You can check the start time only, the end time only, or both the start time and end time. The search will only include the events within the time span. If you uncheck both the start time and end time, the search will include all events saved by the server. Please refer to page 305 for detailed information.
- i. Start the log search and the results will be displayed on the log list window.

Vitris_Dature1[00:366.5.20]         2         Cline11:10:25:00         400:00         System tool         Fight         Second         Local         Bened bases         Local         Bened bases <thlocal<< th=""><th>wang Time Seat</th><th>ch   Event Seech   Log Vever</th><th>Tules.</th><th>True</th><th>Time Zoriet</th><th>Category</th><th>Lord</th><th>Tor</th><th>Result</th><th>User -</th><th>Target</th><th>Desciption</th></thlocal<<>	wang Time Seat	ch   Event Seech   Log Vever	Tules.	True	Time Zoriet	Category	Lord	Tor	Result	User -	Target	Desciption
3         2020 51 2020 42 3 website         website         3 website         2020 51 2020 42 3 website         3 web	-		1.	2010-01-16 10/56-05	+09:00	Sector Log	High	Server Start	Success		Local	Service Name - UAST Recording
+         2000000000000000000000000000000000000	VVTC 9	tation 1/192-160-5-1229	2	2010-01-18 2036-05	+08:00	Sinter: Log	1921	Server Start	54,00095			Service Name=WAST Query Ser.
1       2000-010       2011-201-00       2011-201-00       Constront-201-00       Sccces       974 dama       Local       Frage Constraints/Frage State         9       2010-201-00       50-14-20       +0000       Developing       Sccces       974 dama       Local       Frage Constraints/Frage State         9       2010-21-10       50-14-20       +0000       Developing       Normal       Sccces       974 dama       Local       Frage Constraints/Frage State         11       2010-21-10       50-14-20       +0000       Developing       Normal       Sccces       974 dama       Local       Frage Constraints/Frage State         12       2010-21-10       50-14-20       +0000       Developing       Normal       Sccces       974 dama       Local       Frage Constraints/Frage       Frage Constraints/Frage       Frage Constraints/Frage       Local       Local       Local       Local       Local       Horder Local	1.		3	2010/01/10 10:56 15	+00:00	System Log	high-	Server Start	Success		Local	Service Name+VAST Backup Ce.
1       2       2000-010       2011-21       2011-21       2011-21       <	2		- H			System Log	High	Server Start	Success		Local	
1       2       2020-01-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0       2012-0	$\mathbf{O}$		5									
8     2010.01.6 9.991.40     +06000     Converticity     Success     Tradit Converticity       9     2019.01.6 9.991.40     +06000     Converticity     Success     Tradit       9     2019.01.6 9.991.40     +0000     Converticity     Normal     Logal     Success     Tradit     Converticity       9     2019.01.6 9.991.40     +0000     Converticity     Normal     Logal     Success     Tradit     Cod     Mondellas     Success     Tradit     Success     Tradit     Success     Tradit     Success     Tradit     Success     Tradity     Success     Tradity     Success </td <td></td> <td></td> <td>6</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Login</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			6					Login				
9     2020-01-01 261+35     +0000     Convertion op 10000     Portrage     Society     51 Advin     Local     Frage Conversion op 10000     Frage Conversion op 100000     Frage Conversion op 1000000     Frage Conversion op 100000			2							STAdmin,		
0     2010-1-0 <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>감상가장한</td> <td></td> <td></td>										감상가장한		
11     20200-18/2014/2     +00:00     Constanting Sett     Succes     Succes     Stateminic     Target Chemis Name-1/2033.       12     20200-18/2014/2     +00:00     Constanting Sett     Succes     Stateminic     Target Chemis Name-1/2033.       13     20200-18/2014/2     +00:00     Constanting Sett     Succes     Stateminic     Target Chemis Name-1/2033.       13     20200-18/2014/2     +00:00     Constanting Sett     Succes     Stateminic     Target Chemis Name-1/2033.       13     20200-18/2014/2     +00:00     Constanting Name     Succes     Stateminic     Target Chemis Name-1/2033.       14     20200-18/2014/2     +00:00     Constanting Name     Succes     Stateminic     Constanting Name       15     20200-18/2014/2     +00:00     Constanting Name     Succes     Stateminic     Constanting Name       16     20200-18/2014/2     +00:00     Stateminic     Home     Succes     Stateminic     Constanting Name       17     20200-18/2014/2     +00:00     Stateminic     Home     Succes     Stateminic     Constanting Name       18     40:00     Stateminic     Home     Home     Home     Home     Succes     Stateminic     Home       18     40:00     Stateminic     Home										STAdmin		
12     2010.11:63 (918122)     40500     Coentrolling     Nimel Logari     Screes     Stadem     Incel     (Black) Las Answert/STAd.       12     2010.11:83 (91812)     40500     Coentrolling     Nimel Logari     Screes     Stadem     Incel     (Black) Las Answert/STAd.       12     2010.11:83 (91812)     40500     Coentrolling     Nimel Logari     Screes     Stadem     Incel     (Black) Las Answert/STAd.       12     2010.11:83 (91812)     40500     Coentrolling     Nimel Logari     Screes     Stadem     Coentrolling     Nimel Logari     Screes     Stadem     Coentrolling       12     2010.11:83 (91812)     40500     Coentrolling     Nimel Logari     Screes     Stadem     Coentrolling     Nimel Logari     Screes     Stadem     Coentrolling     Coentroll												
12       2019-01-19       2019-10       2019-01-19       2019-01       30.0000       States       37.40mm       Local       Taget Lefts Name-Order MANA										2000 B		
Prot     Allocating begins from the construction of the cons												
<ul> <li>All numbers of the state of the</li></ul>												
Market Log     9     20100-116 2017-24     +0000     Convertion.ion     Normal     Loginut     Scores     Chadmen     Local     Scheduler User Account -STAL.       12     20100-116 2017-94     +0000     Scient Log     High     Scores     Each     Scores     Scient Name -VAST Rocoding       12     20100-116 2017-94     +0000     Scient Log     High     Scores     Each     Each     Scores     Each     Each     Each     Scores     Each     Each <td< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></td<>												
Price     All conducting     2     2000-10-199 (2014-82)     +0000     Statem Log     High     Statem Log     Local     Statem Log     Stat												
all chailing     2     2     2     0     2     0										A LOUGH BY		
Price     All Local Logs     Screek Start     Scceek     Scceek     Screek Name Voot Start     Scceek     Scceek     Screek Name Voot Start       Price     All     Scceek												
all una logs     25     250 an 0 + 23 + 44     +0000     System Log     Hgs     Server Start     Access     Local     Server Name - VACT Dens Server       22     23     C     13 + 64     +0000     Link a Logs     Secces     Local     Server Name - VACT Dens Server       23     23     C     13 + 64     +0000     Link a Logs     Secces     Local     Server Name - VACT Dens Server       24     25     C     13 + 64     +0000     Link a Logs     Secces     Trading Secret       24     250     C     13 + 64     +0000     Dens Logs     Secces     Trading Secret       24     250     C     13 + 64     +0000     Dens Logs     Secces     Trading Secret       24     250     C     13 + 64     +0000     Dens Logs     Secces     Trading Secret       24     250     250     -0000     Dens Logs     Dens Logs     Secret     Startm     Local     Dens Logs       25     250     10 + 65     -0000     Dens Logs     Dens Logs     Secret     Startm     Local     Dens Logs       26     250     -0000     Startm     Dens Logs     Dens Logs     Startm     Logs     Dens Logs     Dens Logs       26												
21     23     24     <												
All Local Logs       22       23       Color 34-6       v0000       Event Log       Hgs       Conversion Conversion Status       Success       Local       Trapet Convers Name-1_97003         All Local Logs       4       25       4.0       Open 4000       Destitution       Success       Trapet Convers Name-1_97003         All Local Logs       4       25       25.0       0.0       Destitution       Success       Trapet Convers Name-1_97003         All Local Logs       4       25       25.0       0.0       Destitution       Success       Trapet Convers Name-1_97003         All       20       25.00       0.0       Destitution       Open 4000       Success       Trapet Convers Name-1_97003         All       20       25.00       0.0       Destitution       Open 4000       Success       Trapet Convers Name-1_97003         All       20       25.00       0.0       Destitution       Open 4000       Success       Trapet Convers Name-1_97003         All       20       25.00       0.0       Destitution       Destitution       Success       Trapet Convers Name+1/3714       Destitution       Destitution       Destitution       Destitution       Destitution       Destitution       Destitution       Destitution       D				Carlos Alexandre Carlos Alexandre								
All brink loging     Source (All Processor)     Source (All Proceso			25									
Al     2020     <	OTV:	Allocation .			08:00		HIGH	Camera Recording Shirt	Success		Local	
All     Constraint			24	2010	0.00	Operation Log	Nome	Login	Success	STAdmin	Local	(DveClent) User Account-GTA
All     27     20100/10/9/3272     4000     Control     Name     Screek     Statem     Code     New (but later screek) the A.       Mile     40     27     20100/10/9/15/712     4000     France     Screek     Statem     Code     (Heyk) Use Accurt+STAL.       Mile     30     2000/10/9/15/712     2100/10/9/15/712     4000     France     Screek     Statem     Code     (Heyk) Use Accurt+STAL.       Mile     31     2000/10/9/15/712     2100/10/9/15/712     4000     France     Screek     Statem     Code     (Heyk) Use Accurt+STAL.       Mile     32     2010/10/20/9/16/712     31/25     4000     France     Screek     Statem     Code     Heyk Use Accurt+STAL.       Statem     32     2010/10/20/9/26/9     4000     Statem Log     Screek     Statem     Code     Heyk Use Accurt+STAL.       Statem     32     2010/10/20/9/26/9     4000     Statem Log     Statem Stat     Scceek     Local     Server Mark       Statem     32     2010/10/20/9/26/9     4000     Statem Log     France State     Scceek     Local     Server Mark       Statem     32     2010/10/20/9/26/9     4000     Statem Log     France State     Scceek     Local     Server Mark		-			9.07	Coerston Log	Normai	Lopeut	Success	STAdmin	Local	
No.         No. <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td><u>" « (</u></td> <td>Operation Log</td> <td>Norrial</td> <td>Login</td> <td>Success</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>					<u>" « (</u>	Operation Log	Norrial	Login	Success			
No.         No. <td></td> <td>al</td> <td>27</td> <td></td> <td>408</td> <td>0"Log</td> <td></td> <td>Invort Liker</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>		al	27		408	0"Log		Invort Liker				
Nome     M     Construction     Constrution     Constrution     Construction	7		28		+00.0	25 😡						
at     33     2010(1):20 00:20 07     40:00     Statut     Statut     Statut     Statut     Other Constant     OtherConstant     Other Constant <td>vinici</td> <td></td> <td>29</td> <td>2010-01-19 10:25 12</td> <td>+08:00</td> <td>0</td> <td>Notrié</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	vinici		29	2010-01-19 10:25 12	+08:00	0	Notrié					
Mail         Mail <th< td=""><td>1999 - C</td><td></td><td>00</td><td>EVEN-01-11 00:00 10</td><td>****</td><td>- L /</td><td>~ 1</td><td></td><td></td><td>STAdmin</td><td></td><td></td></th<>	1999 - C		00	EVEN-01-11 00:00 10	****	- L /	~ 1			STAdmin		
State         Off-100.00 Segreg. Changeng, Hung Kang, Kasek Langur, Hung Kang, Kasek Hung Kang, Kasek Langur, Hung Kang, Kasek Langur, Hung	and i	4				S .4	$( \cap     )$					
4     2000/30 09/38 10     +08/00     Share Log     Share Suit     Success     Local     Share hear+VST Recording       4     2000/30 09/38 10     +08/00     Share Log     Han     Share Suit     Success     Local     Share hear+VST Recording       4     2000/30 09/38 10     +08/00     Enert Log     Han     Share Suit     Success     Local     Share hear+VST Recording       50     2000/30 09/38 10     +08/00     Enert Log     Han     Camera Longely Stat     Local     Share hear+VST Recording       70     2000/30 09/38 10     +08/00     Enert Log     Han     Camera Longely Stat     Local     Trajet Camera Name-VST Recording       70     2000/30 09/38 10     +08/00     Enert Log     Han     Camera Longely Stat     Local     Trajet Camera Name-VST Recording       70     2000/30 17/39 10     +08/00     Enert Log     Han     Camera Longely Stat     Local     Trajet Camera Name-VST Recording       70     2000/30 17/39 17/30 10     +08/00     Enert Log     Han     Camera Longely Stat     Local     Trajet Camera Name-VST Recording       70     2000/30 17/39 17/30 10     +08/00     Enert Log     Han     Camera Longely Stat     Local     Trajet Camera Name-VST Recording       70     2000/30 27/30 20     +08/00			15									
Approx         Attraction         Approx         App							$\sim$					
Open         Offf+03.03 Being, Chargeng, Hang Kong, ReisLangur, +         30         201001-20 0928133         +00:00         tent Log         Han         Cateral comes/lecting fails         Local         Target Canes Name-1, PESD.           Lat Teme         39         201001-20 0028133         +00:00         tent Log         Han         Cames According Stat         Success         Local         Target Cames Name-1, PESD.           At Teme         39         201001-20 002813         +00:00         tent Log         Han         Cames According Stat         Success         Local         Target Cames Name-1, PESD.           39         201001-20 12713 29         +00:00         tent Log         Han         Cames According Stat         Success         Local         Target Cames Name-1, PESD.           39         201001-20 12713 29         +00:00         tent Log         Han         Cames According Stat         Success         Local         Target Cames Name-1, PESD.           30         201001-20 12713 29         +00:00         tent Log         Han         Cames According Stat         Success         Local         Target Cames Name-1, PESD.           41         201001-20 127120         +00:00         tent Log         Han         Cames According Stat         Success         Local         Target Cames Name+1, PESD.												
Care         Control         C												
at Term         State         2010/0.01171159         468:00         Event Log         Han         Camera Recording Stap         Success         Local         Faget Camera Name+1_PRS00           27 M 2 #         06101/20170150         +6000         Event Log         Han         Camera Recording Stap         Success         Local         Faget Camera Name+1_PRS00           27 M 2 #         06101/201701         +0000         Event Log         Han         Camera Recording Stap         Success         Local         Faget Camera Name+1_PRS00           14 201001/20170100         +0000         Event Log         Han         Camera Name+1_Eventson         Success         Local         Faget Camera Name+1_PRS00           14 201001/20170100         +0000         Event Log         Han         Camera Name+1_Eventson         Local         Faget Camera Name+1_PRS00           12 201001/20170100         +0000         Event Log         Han         Camera Name+1_Eventson         Local         Faget Camera Name+1_PRS00           12 201001/20170100         +0000         Event Log         Name         Logaut         Success         Stadmin         Local         Faget Camera Name+1_PRS00           12 20101/201701         +0000         Comeration Log         Name         Logaut         Success         Stadmin	Date: . Office	08:00 Beijing, Changging, Hang Kong, Kusle Lumpur, 💌	22									
Mill         Op         2210 01:23 1273 12         Op         Concept         Logar         Taget Cancer Name - 1, PROD.           7         V 2:0         00:01:23 0         00:01:02         Hant Cancer         Hant Cancer         Locate         Taget Cancer Name - 1, PROD.           9         2210:01:23 1273 12         00:01:02         Hant Cancer         Hant Cancer         Locate         Taget Cancer Name - 1, PROD.           9         2210:01:23 1270:00         40:00         Event Log         Hant Cancer         Sccces         Locat         Taget Cancer Name - 1, PROD.           11         2010:01:23 1270:00         40:00         Event Log         Hant Cancer         Locate         Taget Cancer Name - 1, PROD.           12         2010:01:23 1270:00         40:00         Event Log         Hant Cancer         Sccces         Locat         Taget Cancer Name - 1, PROD.           12         2010:01:23 1270:00         40:00         Coverton Log         Name         Logaut         Sccces         Stacker         Taget Cancer Name - 1, PROD.           12         210:01:23 128:13         40:00         Coverton Log         Name Logaut         Sccces         Stacker         Taget Cancer Name - 1, PROD.           12         210:01:23 128:13         40:00         Coverton Log <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>												
V 2 #         0813 21         0         0         2000/32 1/38/20         40800         temet log         Hgm         Camera factoring Start         Soccess         Local         Taget Camera Name-1_28000           of me.         41         2010/32 1/38/20         40800         Exert Log         Hgm         Camera factoring Start         Soccess         Local         Taget Camera Name-1_28000           42         2010/32 1/38/20         40800         Deertining         Name         Logan         Soccess         Startin         Local         Due/Gert User Acmuni-STAL           42         2010/32 21 4/30/21         40000         Deertining         Name         Logan         Soccess         Startin         Local         Due/Gert User Acmuni-STAL           42         2010/32 21 4/30/21         40000         Deertoning         Name         Logan         Soccess         Startin         Local         Due/Gert User Acmuni-STAL           42         2010/32 21 4/30/21         40000         Deertoning         Name         Logan         Soccess         Startin         Local         Due/Gert User Acmuni-STAL           42         2010/32 23 3/38 13         408.00         Operationing         Name         Logan         Startin         Local         Due/Gert User Acmuni-STAL </td <td>Left Telet</td> <td>and the second second</td> <td></td>	Left Telet	and the second										
M // 2         Color         Color <t< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></t<>												
V 2 V 2 V 092121 2 44 2000/22 24313 +02:00 Operation Q Name Login Success Station Logi Underly Us Accurate Station Logi Construction Name Login Success Station Logi Underly Us Accurate Station	0.11.5 0											
V 2 V 2 V 092121 2 44 2000/22 24313 +02:00 Operation Q Name Login Success Station Logi Underly Us Accurate Station Logi Construction Name Login Success Station Logi Underly Us Accurate Station	of Free									STadmin		
of 27 2 9 99-11 21 44 2010-01-22 54-91 11 +00:00 Operationing Name Login Success STation Local Deedlert Use Account-STA . 2010-01-22 52/56 13 +00:00 Operationus Name Login Success STation Local Deedlert Use Account-STA .	a rene.											
20000102233833 +08.00 Operationics Name Local Succes STahm Local Under() We Account/STA.	0 21 2 1 0	9/1/21										
Search Council Search Council Search Micros Logis Advect	and a solution		-		+08:00							
		Starth	Core A		1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1	and the function of the second second						

# Select Log Category/Log Type/Log Level

The following table shows the breakdown of log category, level, and type. The search results will be different according to your selections.

Log Categories	Log Levels	Log Types
Operation Log	Normal	Login / Logout Insert User Update User Name Update User Password Update User Password Update User Privilege Delete User Insert Station Update Station Information Update Station Information Delete Station Insert Camera Update Camera Information Delete Camera Set Recording Group Insert Recording Schedule / Update Recording Schedule / Delete Recording Schedule Insert Event Management / Update Recording Group / Delete Recording Group Insert Recording Group / Update Recording Group / Delete Recording Group Insert Recording Path / Update Recording Group / Delete Recording Group Insert Recording Path / Update Recording Group / Delete Recording Path Insert Recording Path / Update Recording Group / Delete Recording Path Insert Camera to the Recording Group Update Camera information in the Recording Group Delete Camera from the Recording Group Move Recording Path Move Camera to another Recording Group Insert Layout / Update Layout / Delete Layout Set Digital Output Update Scheduled Backup Update Scheduled Backup Update Scheduled Backup Update Scheduled Backup Set DDNS Server Create Directory / Rename Directory / Delete Directory Insert SMTP Server / Update SMTP Server / Delete SMTP Server Insert SMTP Server / Update SMTP Server / Delete SMTP Server Insert SMTP Server / Update SMTP Server / Delete SMTP Server Insert Network Storage Device / Update Network Storage Device / Delete Network Storage Device Set GSM Modem Set DI/DO Rename Set DI/DO Rename Set Relay Settings Update License Information Insert Matrix Recipient / Insert Matrix Recipient Information / Delete Matrix Recipient
	High	Manually Begin Recording Manually Stop Recording
	Low	Camera PTZ, Iris, Focus, Pan, Patrol Control Click on Image Select Preset Location
System Log	High	Server Start / Server Stop Trial Expired Key Dongle Lost Virtual Memory Low Network Lost / Storage lost

Log Categories	Log Levels	Log Types
Event Log	High	Camera Disconnected from the Server / Camera Connected to the Server Parent Station Connection Lost / Parent Station Connection Restore Sub-station Disconnected / Sub-station Connected Camera Recording Start / Camera Recording Stop Start Scheduled Backup / Stop Scheduled Backup Event Trigger

### Search All Local Logs

			Log Cate	gory						
				Log Lo	evel					
					Log Type					
Index	Time	Time Zone	Category	Level	Type	Result	User	Target	Description	^
1	2009-12-09 09:50:54	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Stop	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Backup	
2	2009-12-09 09:50:54	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Stop	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Event S	,
3	2009-12-09 09:50:55	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Stop	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Query S	
4	2009-12-09 09:50:55	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Stop	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Recordi	
5	2009-12-09 09:50:55	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Stop	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Configur	. =
6	2009-12-09 09:50:56	+08:00	Event Log	High	Camera Disconnecte	Success		Local	Target Camera Name=1_PZ7	
7	2009-12-09 09:50:56	+08:00	Event Log	High	Camera Disconnecte	Success		Local	Target Camera Name=2_IP8	
8	2009-12-09 09:51:42	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Start	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Recordi	
9	2009-12-09 09:51:44	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Start	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Query S	
10	2009-12-09 09:51:47	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Start	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Event S	. —
11	2009-12-09 09:51:48	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Start	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Backup	
12	2009-12-09 09:51:50	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Start	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Configur	
13	2009-12-09 09:51:51	+08:00	Event Log	High	Camera Connected t	Success		Local	Target Camera Name=2_IP8	
14	2009-12-09 09:51:51	+08:00	Event Log	High	Camera Connected t	Success		Local	Target Camera Name=1_PZ7	
15	2009-12-09 09:51:52	+08:00	Event Log	High	Camera Recording Stop	Success		Local	Target Camera Name=3_FD8	~
Clear A	All Results Trace Login	Activities	Export All Logs					Local Lo	ogs Login History Login Activi	ities

Click to export all search results from the list Click to remove all search results from the list

### Search Login History

Select **Login History** from the log category field and click the **Search** button below, the search results, including all login logs, will be displayed on the Login History page.

Browsing Time Sea	arch Event Search Log Viewer	Index	User	Logn Time	Logn Result	Logout Time	Logout Result	Time Zone	Description
VVTK_Station1(192.168/5.122)			STAdmin STAdmin STAdmin STAdmin	2010-02-01 09-41-30 2010-02-01 11:05-53 2010-02-01 11-40:55 2010-02-02 09-31:04	Success Success Success Success	2010-02-01 11-0652 2010-02-01 20:16-21 2010-02-01 20:16-15	Succes Succes Succes	+00:00 +00:00 +00:00 +00:00	Playback LiveGlent Playback LiveGlent
Category:	Login History 5	8							
User:		8							
Result:	Al	8							
Log Type:									
Log Level									
	Canada and we								
Time Zone: GMT	+08:00 Beging, Chongging, Hong Kong, 🐱								
Start Time:									
2010/ 2/ 1 💌	08:31:21								
End Time:									
2010/ 2/ 2 💌	09:31:21								
	Search	Gear	All Results	Tilsos Logn Activities	Sport Al Logs			Local	Logs Logn History Logn Activities

### **Search Login Activities**

This function allows you to search the operations the user performed during the login period of time. You can search for login activities on the Local Logs or Login History page.

- Search Login Activities on the Local Logs page:
  - a. Click on the Local Logs page.
  - b. Select a login/logout option from the list.
  - c. Click **Trace Login Activities** (or you can **right-click** the selected login/logout option on the list, then click **Trace Login Activities**).

Index	Time	Time Zone	Category	Level	Туре	Result	User	Target	Description	^
1	2010-01-18 10:56:05	+08:00	System Log	High	Server Start	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Recording	-
2	2010-01-18 10:56:05	+08:00	System Log	High 🗖		Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Query Ser	
3	2010-01-18 10:56:16	+08:00	System Log	High	ver Start ver Start	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Backup Se	
4	2010-01-18 10:56:18	+08:00	System Log	High	ver Start	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Event Ser	
5	2010-01-18 10:56:21	+08:00	System Log	High	- Start	Success		Local	Service Name=VAST Configurati	
6	2010-01-18 11:26:30	+08:00	Operation Log	Normal	Login	Success	STAdmin	Local	(LiveClient) User Account=STA	
7	2010-01-18 13:11:22	+08:00	Operation Log	Nomal	Logr Clear All Re-	mits DESS	STAdmin	Local	(Playback) User Account=STAd	
8	2010-01-18 16:14:24	+08:00	Event Log	dh	Came Ince Login	Activities		Local	Target Camera Name=1_IP8330	
9	2010-01-18 16:14:25	+08:00	Operation Log	(וייין)	Inser	Activities C	STAdmin	Local	New Camera Name=1_IP8330,	
10	2010-01-18 16:14:25	+08:00	Event Log	l J	Came Show Millise	conds		Local	Target Camera Name=1_IP8330	
11	2010-01-18 16:14:27	+08:00	Event Log	$\smile$	Camera recording to	overs ousdess		Local	Target Camera Name=1_IP833	
12	2010-01-18 19:58:22	+08:00	Operation Log	Normal	Logout	Success	STAdmin	Local	(Playback) User Account=STAd	
13	2010-01-18 19:58:41	+08:00	Operation Log	Normal	Update Layout	Success	STAdmin	Local	Target LMS Name=Default Map,	
14	2010-01-18 19:58:41	+08:00	Operation Log	Normal	Logout	Success	STAdmin	Local	(LiveClient) User Account=STA	
15	2010-01-18 19:59:12	+08:00	Operation Log	Normal	Login	Success	STAdmin	Local	(LiveClient) User Account=STA	
16		08:00	Operation Log	Normal	Logout	Success	STAdmin	Local	(LiveClient) User Account=STA	
17	2010-01-19 09:33:42	08:00	System Log	High	Server Start	Success		in the	Service Name=VAST Query Ser	$\sim$
Gear A	I Results Trace Login	Activities Expo	rt All Logs					a	Local Logs Login History Login Activit	ties
Clear A	I Results Trace Login	Activities Expo	rt All Logs					all	Local Logs Login History Lo	gin Activit

d. The search results of the login activities will be displayed on the Login Activities page as shown below.

Index	Time	Time Zone	Category	Level	Туре	Result	User	Target	Description
1	2010-01-18 11:26:30	+08:00	Operation Log	Normal		Success	STAdmin	Local	(LiveClient) User Account=STA
2	2010-01-18 16:14:25	+08:00	Operation Log	Normal	Insert Camera	Success	STAdmin	Local	New Camera Name=1_IP8330,
3	2010-01-18 19:58:41	+08:00	Operation Log	Normal	Update Layout	Success	STAdmin	Local	Target LMS Name=Default Map,
4	2010-01-18 19:58:41	+08:00	Operation Log	Normal	Logout	Success	STAdmin	Local	(LiveClient) User Account=STA

Clear All Results Trace Login Activities Export All Logs	Local Logs Login History Login Activities
Search Login Activities on the Login History page:	

- a. Click on the **Login History** page.
- b. Select a login/logout option from the list.
- c. Click **Trace Login Activities** (or you can **right-click** the selected login/logout item on the list and click **Trace Login Activities**).

		C						
Index	User	Login Time	Login Result	Logout Time	Logout Result	Time Zone	Description	
1	STAdmin	2010-02-01 09:41:38	Success	2010-02-01 11:48:52	Success	+08:00	Playback	
2	STAdmin	2010-02-01 11:05:53		All Results (16:21	Success	+08:00	LiveClient	
3	STAdmin	2010-02-01 11:48:55		Login Activities	Success	+08:00	Playback	
4	STAdmin	2010-02-02 09:31:04				+08:00	LiveClient	
			Show 1	<u>M</u> illiseconds				
		L.	$\checkmark$ —					
								a
Closer (	I Results	Trace Login Activities	Export All Logs				Local Logs	Login History Login Activities
Clear			Export All Logs					
		C						

d. The search results of the login activities will be displayed on the Login Activities page as shown below.

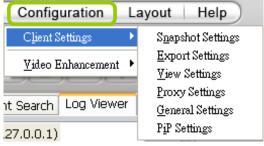
	Time Zone	Category	Level	Type	Result	User	Target	Description
2010-02-01 11:05:53 2010-02-01 20:16:21	+08:00 +08:00	Operation Log Operation Log	Normal Normal	Login Logout	Success Success	STAdmin STAdmin	Local Local	(LiveClient) User Account=STA (LiveClient) User Account=STA
							Local	Logs Login History Login Activitie
I Results Trace Login A	tivities Expor	t All Logs						
2								
	-							
	Il Results       Trace Login Ac         Il results       Trace Login Ac         Il you       select All	Il Results       Trace Login Activities       Export         Il vou select All in the Log	Il Results       Trace Login Activities       Export All Logs         Il route       You select All in the Log Level field	2010-02-01 20:16:21       +08:00       Operation Log       Normal         Il Results       Trace Login Activities       Export All Logs         Il results       Trace Login Activities       Export All Logs         Il vou select All in the Log Level field, the second seco	2010-02-01 20:16:21       +08:00       Operation Log       Normal Logout         Il Results       Trace Login Activities       Export All Logs         a       you select All in the Log Level field, the search result.	2010-02-01 20:16:21       +08:00       Operation Log       Normal Logout       Success         Il Results       Trace Login Activities       Export All Logs         a       you select All in the Log Level field, the search results will include	2010-02-01 20:16:21       +08:00       Operation Log       Normal Logout       Success       STAdmin         Il Results       Trace Login Activities       Export All Logs         Il results       Trace Login Activities       Export All Logs         Il vou select All in the Log Level field, the search results will include all log	2010-02-01 20:16:21 +08:00 Operation Log Normal Logout Success STAdmin Local Il Results Trace Login Activities Export All Logs

Log Level field and select Including above level as shown in the picture on the left below, the search results will include all levels of logs. But if you select Normal in the Log Level field and select Including above level as shown in the picture on the right below, the search results will only include Normal-level and High-level logs.

Log Level:	All	~	Log Level:	Low	<b>*</b>
		✓ Including above level			Including above level

# How to Configure Client Settings

On Client Settings, you can configure Snapshot Settings, Export Settings, View Settings, Proxy Settings, and General Settings. It allows you to save snapshots and media files on the local computer.



### **Snapshot Settings**

When you play a recorded video, VAST Playback also allows you to take snapshots. For detailed information about **Snapshot Settings**, please refer to page 230.

### **Export Settings**

When you playback a recorded video, the VAST server allows you to export part of the recorded video in EXE, 3GP, or AVI format to your local computer. Before exporting a media file, please set up Export Settings first. For detailed information about how to set up EXE, 3GP, and AVI **Export Settings**, please refer to Record Settings on page 232.

The default exporting path is: C:\ProgramData\VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\Client\PlayBack\Export

### Limitations

- 1. The size of exported footage depends on the file size limitation. When the limitation is reached, files will be concluded regardless of the length of your selection.
- 2. The Export button will not be available when there is another exporting task.
- 3. If the time settings on camera and VAST server are inconsistent, the export task will generate files of unexpected length.
- 4. The minimum export length is 1 minute. The maximum is 150 minutes. However, due to the embedded limitation, the approximate max. file size is 3.7GB.

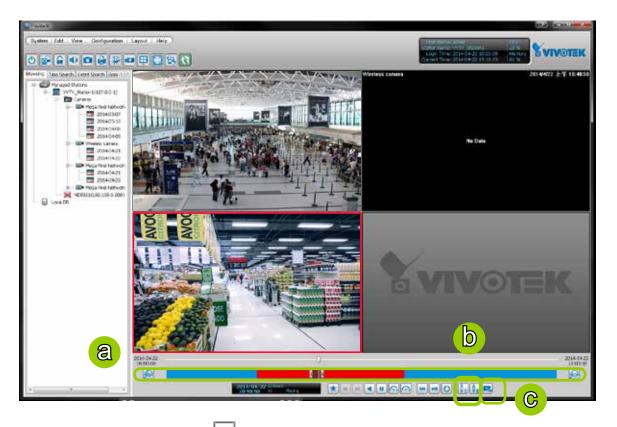
### Export an EXE/3GP/AVI File

Please follow the steps below to convert part of an EXE/3GP/AVI file of recorded video:

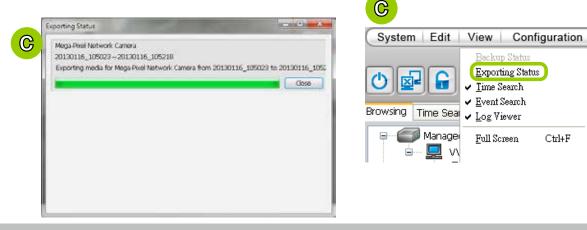
- a. Playback a video clip from which you want to export a media file.
- b. Set a period of time. Move the timeline slider bar to the desired start time and click Marker I  $\downarrow_{I}$ . Move the timeline slider bar to the desired end time and click Marker II  $\downarrow_{I}$ .



Currently exporting video files from the NVR series is not supported.



- c. Click Export EXE/3GP/AVI Link, the server will start to export the data and popup a window showing the exporting status. If you close the status window, you can also open it again by clicking **View > Exporting Status**.
- d. When the export is complete, you will see an information dialog. The exported data will be restored in the preset storage folder on your local computer (C:\ProgramData\Documents\VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\ Client\PlayBack\Export).



### **View Settings**

This section allows you to set up the display mode of video cell. For detailed information about **View Settings**, please refer to page 238.

### **Proxy Settings**

Please refer to page 256 for detailed illustration.

### **General Settings**

### System Settings

Please refer to page 241 for detailed information.

### **Display Settings**

Enable de-interlace function: Select this option if your connected device does not support de-interlace function. For example: VS7100.

🕈 General Settings 🛛 🔀				
System Settings				
Retrieve RTSP stream on specified port. 554				
Connect substation streaming via relay				
Display Settings				
Enable de-interlace function				

### How to Configure Video Enhancement

The Playback also allows you to enable post-image enhancement and defog for video viewing. Please refer to page 260 for detailed information.

# How to Search for a Device on the Hierarchical Management Tree

The Playback also allows you to conveniently search for an inserted device. Please refer to page 265 for detailed information.

### How to Print a Video Image

The Playback also allows you print out an image of live video. Please refer to page 266 for detailed information.

# How to Lock VAST Playback for Security Concerns

If you happen to be away from your computer, for security reasons, we suggest you lock the program. When VAST Playback is locked, the user must enter the correct password to unlock and access the program again.

- To lock Playback, click Unlock on the quick access bar or click System > Lock on the system menu. The Unlock icon will then turn into Lock .
- To unlock Playback, click and enter the correct password in the popup window.

😢 Playback	💽 Confirm
System   Edit   View   Configuration	The application is locked. Please enter the password for admin.
Launch System Manager Logout Exit	OK Cancel

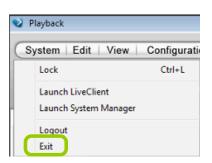
# How to Log out from the VAST Server

To log out from the current server, click the station and click **Logout** and the quick access bar or click **System > Logout** on the menu bar. You can also **right-click** the station and click **Logout**. A confirmation window will pop up. Click **OK** to confirm or **Cancel** to return to the VAST Playback window.

Lock Chi+L Launch LiveClient	Browsing Time Search Event Search Bookmark Search Log Viewer	Contem
Launch System Manager	Managed Stations	This will terminate the current connection. Are you sure you want to continue?
	Refresh Find 2012-08-02	
	2012 00 02	

# How to Exit VAST Playback

To exit VAST Playback, click **Exit** on the quick access bar or click **System > Exit** on the menu bar. A confirmation window will pop up. Click **OK** to confirm or **Cancel** to return to the VAST Playback window. When you exit the program, your user account will be automatically logged out from the current server.



😢 Confin	m 💌
	Are you sure you want to exit the program?
	OK Cancel

# Import and Export Utility

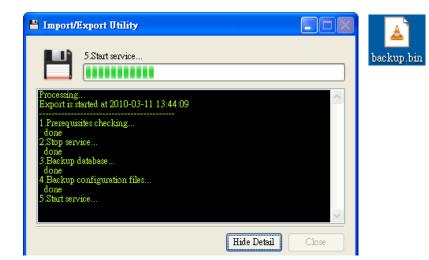
VAST supports import and export utility for user to keep record of all server settings. You can use the export file to copy the configuration on another host.

# **Export Utility**

Please follow the steps below to export the server settings:

- a. Under Microsoft Windows, choose "Start > All Programs > VIVOTEK Inc > VAST > Tools > Importexport Utility."
- b. The **Import/Export Utility** window will pop up. Click **Export** and select a target folder. The system will start to export a .bin file.

pticas		
Export current s	A 200 F.J	
Configuration a	thage .	
Import previous	settings	
Restore	Copy withings	
a summer	C Cotty scores	
	N	lext Cancel
		lext Casel



# **Import Utility**

Please follow the steps below to import the server settings:

- a. Under Microsoft Windows, choose "Start > All Programs > VIVOTEK Inc > VAST > Tools > Importexport Utility."
- b. The **Import/Export Utility** window will pop up. Click **Import** and select the export file. The system will start to import the file.

You should then select the Restore or Copy settings options.

**Restore**: If this is selected, the VAST server GUID will also be restored. This option applies when you need to restore as crashed server.

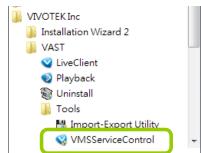
**Copy Settings**: This applies you use the exported profile to duplicate your configuration to multiple computers. A new server GUID will be generated.

	Warning	
	⚠	Import will drop all current settings in the station. The system will still recycle the video files in the original paths when the new settings with new paths is imported. Would you like to continue?
Configuration artings     Configuration artings     Reduce     Reduce     Next     Concel		Import/Export Utility          3.Stop service         Processing         Import is started at 2010-03-11 14:22:17         Nerify import file(C:\Documents and Settings\vitall\\东面\backup.bin)         done         2.Frequisites checking         done         3.Stop service

## VAST Service Control Tool

VAST service control tool is a tool for server control and for user to be aware of the VAST Server status. It starts up as Windows OS startup.

Under Microsoft Windows, choose "Start > All Programs > VIVOTEK Inc > VAST > Tools > VMServiceControl."



You may also find it in the system tray icon of the tool bar, which indicates that the service is running: 💕

It shows a disconnection icon when the service is stopped:

A menu for the service control tool will pop up when you **right-click** on the icon:

Open VAST Service Control	VAST Service Control
Start Service	Service Status
Stop Service Restart Service	Version: 1.12.1.4 Status: Running
Exit	Start Stop Restart
	Close

Here you can manually start, stop and restart the service.

## Appendix A Failover Server Configuration

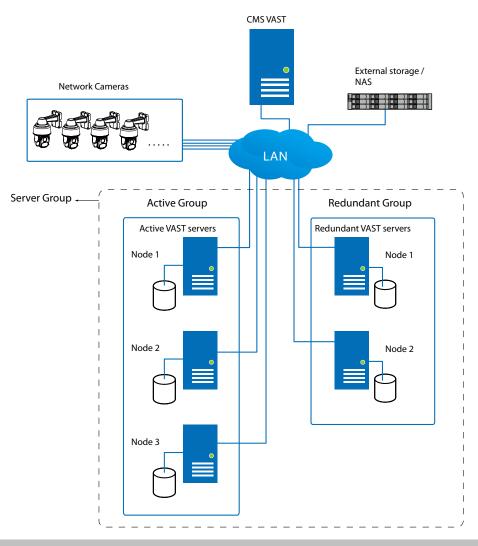
VAST servers can be configured into two groups: Active and Redundant. The Active group performs daily recording and monitoring tasks, while the Redundant group acts as the standby servers. In the event of server failures, the Redundant group becomes active, and takes over the recording task.

The Redundant server group configuration consists of the following:

- 1. One VAST server designated as the **CMS** (Central Management server) VAST central management server.
- 2. At least one VAST server in the Active group.
- 3. At least one VAST server in the Redundant group.
- 4. Gb/s network or higher-speed connection among the servers. All Active and Redundant groups can reside in different subnets, provided that static IPs are configured for these servers.

#### **IMPORTANT:**

For a Redundant server configuration, you must first enlist VAST servers in the **Sites** configuration page before configuring the Redundant server groups. See the **Sites** configuration page.



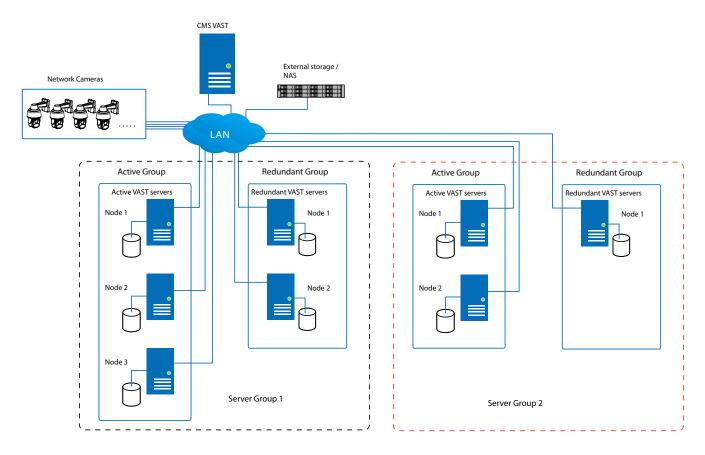
Below are the definitions of server roles:

- 1. **CMS** VAST server: The main access portal for the configuration.
  - 1-1. CMS server is where the **Failover** configuration takes place.
  - 1-2. CMS continuously polls to check the hearbeats to monitor the statuses of all Active and Redundant servers.
  - 1-3. CMS regularly backs up the configurations on Active servers.
  - 1-4. CMS assigns redundant server(s) to the takeover of a failed Active server.
  - 1-5. In a Redundant server configuration, the CMS is supposed to be up and running at all time. If the CMS server fails, the server failover and failback operation will not take place. It is therefore preferrable to install the CMS server at a high up-time environment, such as on a VMWare configuration.
- 2. Active servers: Active VAST servers are the work horses that perform recording and monitoring tasks.
- 3. **Redundant** servers: The Redundant servers are actually active-standbys. They participate to continue video recording in the event of active server failures. It is recommended for the Redundant server to have an equivalent or higher processing power than the Active servers. The same applies for the storage volume and write performance.

Note that you cannot configure a Redundant server by opening a local console.

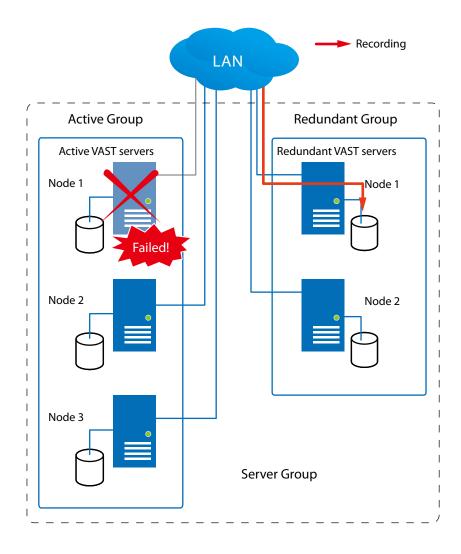
The conditions during the failover are illustrated below:

Multiple Active and Redundant groups can be created.

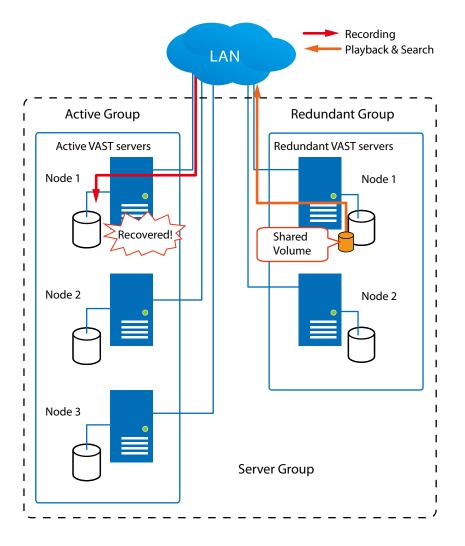


Each Redundant server can serve as the backup for ONE Active server. Depending on the number of the Active and Redundant servers, if the number of failed servers exceeds the number of Redundant servers, the failover will be abandoned. For example, if 2 Active servers failed, and there is only 1 Redundant server available, the second Active server that failed will be abandoned.

In the event of a server failover, a VAST server in the Redundant group takes over the recording task. Note that depending on the network environment, the takeover can take up to 5 minutes.



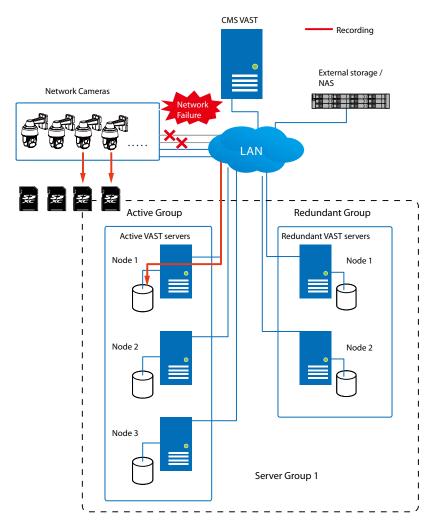
Once the server in the Active group is restored to normal operation, and a CMS server requests for the recordings and data occurred during the time the active server failed, the requests will be fulfilled by a shared volume on the redundant server. Due to the concerns with network bandwidth and processing power, the restored active server does not synchronize its recording pool with that on the redundant server.



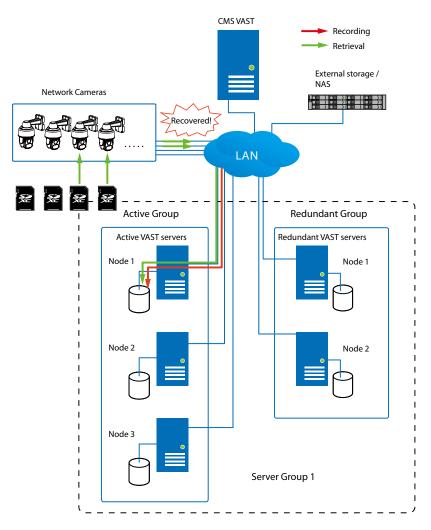
The recovery path should be available in the network neighborhood, with a name that looks like the following: ActiveServer1\_91AAF3D06B6C47\_\RecGroup1.

If an Active server has 3 recording groups, then each Redundant server will have 3 recording paths accordingly.

In terms of network failure, the VAST2 configuration supports Seamless Recording. For cameras equipped with an SD card, video is recorded to the SD cards in the event of network failure. Of course, the camera must be powered by a secondary power source, such as a DC 12V input. In cases such as the only PoE switch or PoE mid-span fails, power is lost.



Once the network connection is restored, the VAST2 servers resume the recording task and also retreive video segments from the SD cards. The video segments recorded during the network failure will be stitched up with those occurred before and after the network failure. The retrieval speed varies depending on the available network bandwidth and CPU resources.



To enable Seamless recording, find the associated option in **Configuration > Camera Management > Camera Update**, and select the Seamless recording checkboxes. Camera models that support the Seamless recording option will have it listed.

Camera Management for VMS_Station - Update						
Camera List	Brand:	VIVOTES	-			
B— WMS_Station(127.0.0.1) FE9391-EV(192.168.4.161)	Camera Name:	FE9191-v2				
- (2) FE0101-v2(102.168.4.171) - III 3_192.168.4.124(192.168.4.124)	Address:	192.168.4.1	171	95	Name of Contract	
SD9161-H(192.168.4.164)	Model Name:	FE9191-V2			6 VIVOTE	
	MAC Address:	0002015AD	18F			
					Connecto	on Tes
	Connection Set	tings Record	ing Set	tings		
	Storage Group:	DefaultGrou	ap 👻			
	Basic Settin	gs				
	Recording St	ream: 1	4		Enable seamless recording	
	Pre-event Ti	me; 10	*	seconds(3-15)		
	Post-event T	ime: 10	4	seconds(10-60)		
	Activity Ad	aptive Strea	m			
	E Active					
					Update	Close

### **Failover Configuration Process**

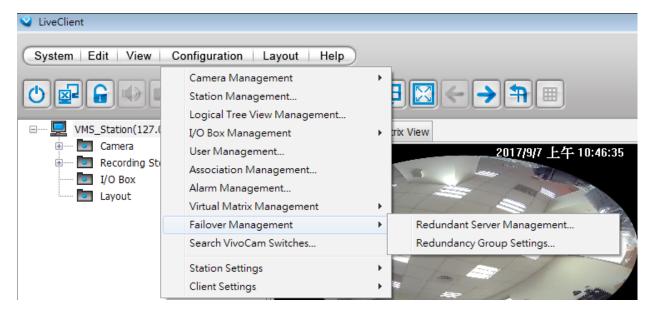
Before Failover configuration, you need to add other servers to your Failover configuration.

- If you are adding a Redundant server, enter the "Redundant Server Management" screen.
- When adding a Redundant server, you can provide a Windows account 802.1x domain user name and password. A Redundant server requires this because a full access to the recorded data is required during the failover and failback process.

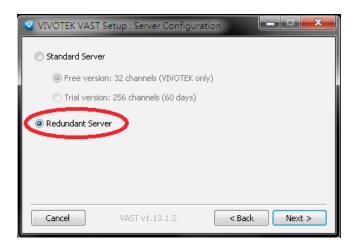
To configure Redundant servers,

- 1. Install VAST server on a server chosen as the active standby.
- 2. On the server chosen as the VAST CMS server, open Configuration > Failover

#### Management > Redundant Server Management.



Note that it is a must for the Redundant server to be installed differently by selecting a "**Redundant server**" checkbox during the installation process.



3. Enter the IP address and Windows AD credentials for access to the Redundant server. Click the Add button when done, and click the Done button to leave this page.

Name		Address	Port
/ VMS_	Station	192.168.4.156	3454
dundant	Server In	lo	
ddress:			
ort: 3	454	🕀 🖾 Use SSL	
	Account (	optional) t information to access rec	ordings
	me: Host		
Domain Na			
Domain Na User Name	c gues		

An Active server must have a CMS password configured for the hierarchical configuration.

Note that on the Active servers, you should configure them as the subordinates to your CMS VAST server. On a web console with these servers, open the Site management page, and select **"Allow CMS connection**." Create a common password for the CMS hierarchy.

💜 Relay Settings	
Allow CMS connection	
Relay Authentica	tion
Password:	•••••
Confirm Password:	•••••
ок	Cancel

Two agents will be running on the Active and Redundant servers, "stunnel" and "VMSWebServer." Make sure they are not blocked out by your firewall. These agents can be found in the default folders below:

C:\Program Files (x86)\VIVOTEK Inc\sTunnel\stunnel.exe C:\Program Files (x86)\VIVOTEK Inc\VAST\Server\VMSWebServer.exe

🕆 💣 x. Cantral Panali x. System and						-2
	d Sacurity + Windows Frawall + Allowed apps			 Search Cornel Pa	M	1
r Edit View Tools						
	Allow apps to communicate through Windows Firew, To skill, choipt, or serve allowed span and posts, sick Change skill Wat as the sale of allowing an applicatements the	nga.	and stream			
	Although apps and fishawi:					
	Name SI 9-442 Statement (LD Statement ICP Security) SI 9-442 Disconting Moderation (LDP Security) SI 9-442 Disconting SS/U LDP Security) SI 9-442 Disconting SS/U LDP Security) SI 9-442 Tap Si 9-442 Tap Si 9-44 Si 9-44 S	Proste 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20	Rook *			
		D. Contraction (				
		Allan a	information			

4. Enter Configuration > Failover Management > Redundant Group Settings. Enter the

OK Carcel

Group name, Description, and click on the Edit button 🧖.

roup List	Group Information
B- by VMS_Station	Name:
- En Groups	Falover group
B Unused Servers	Description:
	Fallover server stel: CMS server 192.168.4.165; jective server 192.168.4.167; redundant server 192.168.4.157
	Members:
	Redundant Server
	Network Interrupt Settings Reply threshold: 30 👘 seconds (5~3600)
	Svnc Update Add

5. Select the Active and Redundant servers and move them to the list of Selected servers. The Active and Redundant servers you enlisted should all be listed below. Select the members of the Redundant group, and click OK to complete.

💙 Redundancy Group Settings	Σ
Crown List	Crown Information
Select Group Members	
Availabe	Selected
	OK Cancel

The default for the network disconnection timeout is 30 seconds. It is not recommended to configure a very short timeout, e.g., 5 seconds, because if doing so, a temporary network disorder can make servers consider the Active server(s) have failed.

Using the failover function requires Failover license. On the CMS server, you can check the number of channels in Help > Failover license. Below are the requirements for running a failover configuration:

1. In a Redundant server group, the number of licensed channels = No. of Active server channels x No. of Redundant server(s).

For example,

There are 3 Activer servers with 100, 125, and 165 channels.

There are 2 Redundant server.

The number of failover license channels are:  $165 \times 2 = 330$ .

ystem Falover Loc	al			
	Purchased	Used	Unused	
Falover	64	0	64	
		Import License	Generate License Update Request	Close

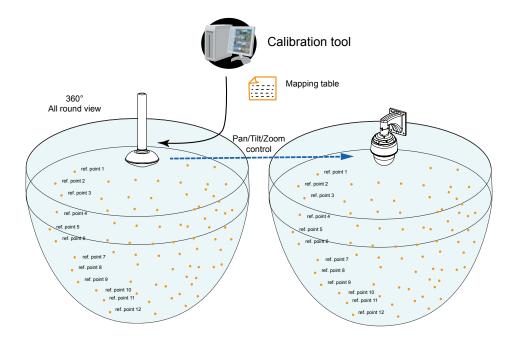
2. Error prompts will display if there are not sufficient failover channels when you create a Redundant server group.

V Information	
[CMS_VMS_Station-12.205] The following features exceed the *Failover Number	e number allowed by the license. Please contact our sales representatives to upgrade.
	ОК
Information	
The following features exceed the *Camera Number *Failover Number	e number allowed by the license. Please contact our sales representatives to upgrade.
	<u>O</u> K

# Appendix B Panoramic PTZ (P-PTZ) Configuration

### **Enable Panoramic PTZ on VAST**

The process of configuring two cameras (1 fisheye and 1 speed dome) into the Panoramic PTZ configuration takes place on a PC using the calibration tool. The Auto Tracking feature is configured using a web console with the fisheye camera. A Panoramic PTZ package should comprise two cameras running specific firmware for this application and a software CD containing all necessary utilities. For configuration details, please refer to the **Panoramic PTZ Installation Guide**.

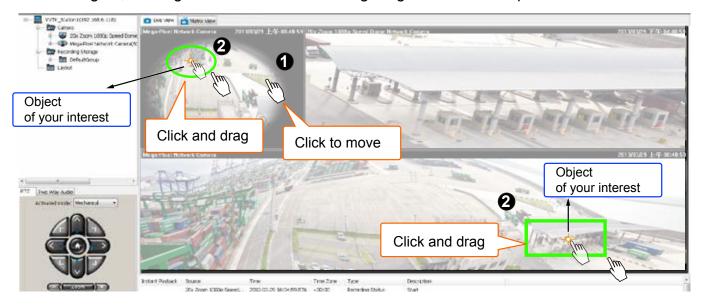


To exert Panoramic PTZ control on VAST:

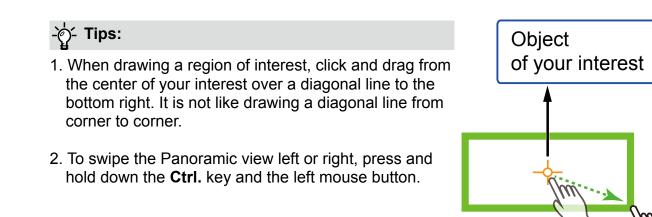
- 1. Once these two cameras are configured into an interactive pair, insert these cameras into your VAST configuration.
- 2. Select a preferred layout using the Layout 🕒 button. The 1P+2, 1P+6, and 1P+8 layouts are specifically designed for the Panoramic PTZ configuration.
- 3. Taking the 1P+2 layout as an example, once they are listed on the device list, click and drag the fisheye camera to the upper left and the bottom view cells. Place the speed dome in the upper right view cell.

Fisheye 10	Speed Dome
Fishe	ye 1P

- 4. Right-click on the fisheye's view cell to change its Display mode either into the 10 (Original) or the 1P (Panoramic) mode. Note that the Panoramic PTZ control does not take effects on the "R" (Regional) mode and the combinations of other display modes.
- 5. There are two different ways to quickly exert Panoramic PTZ control. The pan, tilt, and zoom actions are made from the fisheye's 360° hemispheric overview:
  - 5-1. Click on a spot on the fisheye's Original or Panoramic view where you detected a condition of your interest. The speed dome will aim its lens at the corresponding position to cover that field of view.
  - 5-2. Click and drag a region of interest either on the Original or on the Panoramic view. The speed dome will move to that region and zoom in to fill the same proportion of view into its view cell.
    - On the Original view, click-and-drag creates a circular region of interest.
    - On the Panoramic view, a square region.
    - If you draw a small region, the speed dome will zoom in on the scene. The smaller the region, the larger the zoom-in ratio. A large region makes the speed dome to zoom out.



The speed dome camera automatically performs optical zoom in/out to best fit the selected field of view until the maximum and minimum zoom ratio is reached.





- The fisheye and the speed dome are made into an interactive pair using the calibration tool. The VAST software provides the control interface only. If the cameras have not been properly configured, the Panoramic PTZ function will not take effect.
- 2. If the password of the speed dome camera has been changed, you will need to open a web console with the fisheye camera to change the coordinate password.
- 3. You may need to reset the fisheye camera if the speed dome camera is powered on after you started the VAST software.
- 4. The precision level of the interactive positions between the view cells of the fisheye and the speed dome is determined by the mapping table. Make sure you have inserted a sufficient number of reference points and make good association of these points using the calibration tool.
- 5. Currently the associated event trigger by Auto Tracking is not supported on VAST. The associated event triggering is configured through a web console with the fisheye camera:

General settings	Import/Export files	5		
Enable Panora	amic PTZ			
Enable Auto tr	acking			
hites states				
- Auxiliary c	amera informati	on	2	
IP addr	ess:	172.16.90.172		
HTTP p	ort:	80		
Controller came	era account			
User na	ime:			
Passwo	ird:			
				Test
Associate the a	uto tracking event wi	th the auxiliary camera's ma	anual trigger 📃	1 2 3
				Save

5-1. You should then create an event setting using the manual triggers as triggering sources.5-2. When Auto Tracking takes place, the pre-configured event settings on the speed dome camera can take associated actions, e.g., taking a snapshot, recording to SD, or triggering the DO pins.

- 6. The Panoramic PTZ function is currently not available on the Matrix or web console mode in VAST.
- 7. If the interactive camera pairs (Panoramic PTZ cameras) are managed under VAST substations, then all of the VAST instances, such as the primary VAST server, the substations, and the client side must be running the revision that supports P-PTZ.

### Panoramic PTZ - Event Trigger

The P-PTZ-related event types include: "triggered" and "returned to normal" when Auto Tracking takes place. Below are the configurable options with the event configuration:

 When configuring a recording schedule, the Auto Tracking actions can be selected as one of the event triggers. The configuration is found in Configuration > Station Settings > Recording Schedule Settings.

hedule List: Det	ault Schedule 🔹	Add I	ename	Delete	Load Template	Save as Template
ine frame List						Recording Settings
Timo Frame Always PPT2		ting (Car-based) ting (Car-based)				Pacording Mode: Event ● Triggers IV Hoton V DVA V PR IV Tampering V PPT2 Digital Input IV Trigger State V hormal State
amera List Name Mega-Poel Ne		Group DefaultGroup	Schodule Yes	1.	Mega-Pixe N 20x Zoom M Mega-Pixe N	etwork Camera ega-Rusk Speed Come Network Camera etwork Camera
amera List Name Mega-Poel Ne 20x Zoom Me Mega-Pixel Ne	Address 192.168.6.228 192.168.6.101	Group DefaultGroup DefaultGroup DefaultGroup			Mega-Piter N 20x Zoom M Mega-Poter N 20x Zoom 10	etwork Camera equi-Finel Speed Dome Nartwork Camera

2. When Auto Tracking is enabled, its actions are considered as one of the system event types. In Configuration > Event Management, P-PTZ is configurable as a Trigger Type in Event Management > New Event > Trigger. This event trigger can be associated with different actions, such as Email, recording, moving to a preset location, GSM message, HTTP, Client notification, etc.

Event Ma	nagement	-	1100		💙 New Event	A DESCRIPTION OF THE OWNER OF THE	>
n event is dit an exis Event Lie	ting one.	on of triggers, action	s, and schedule. You	a can add a new event or	General >>	Trigger >> Action >> Schedule	>> Detai
Enable	Name	Triggers	Actions	Schedule		Add Event	
0	Event 1	DI-2 (Trigger)	Send clent noti	Always			
0	Event 2	P.PTZ (Trigger)	Start to record	Always		Add Event by: 🔘 Device 💿 Trigger Type	
0	Event 3	P-PT2 (Trigger)	Send client noti	Always		Category: Camera Events 🗸	
						Type: Motion	
						Type: Motion	
						DI-1	
						DI-2 DI-3	Remove
	970 S					DI-4 DI-5	
Now	Edi	t Remove	Detal >>	Close		Bai DI-6 DI-7	Cancel
						DI-7 DI-8	
						DO-1 DO-2	
						DO-3	
						DO-4 DO-5	
					Time Zone	Type DO-6	
						DO-7 DO-8	
						Video Loss/Restore PIR	
						Tampering	
						Temperature IR	
						IVA - Moving Object	
						IVA - Loitering Detection IVA - Camera Tampering	
						P-PTZ	

Auto Tracking can also function as a Device type in the Event Management configuration.

✓ Trigger list					
Select the trigger(s) from the following list.					
□▼ 🛄 VVTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)					
🖶 🖳 💷 Mega-Pixel Network Camera(192.168.6.228)					
🗌 💭 🥌 Motion					
🗖 💭 💭 DI-1					
Tampering					
🗄 🖳 🗖 🌌 20x Zoom Mega-Pixel Speed Dome Network Camera(192.					
🖃 🐨 🐼 Mega-Pixel Network Camera(192.168.6.127)					
🗹 🧁 Motion					
DI-1					
DO-1					
Tampering					
B 20x Zoom 1080p Speed Dome Network Camera(192.168.					
B I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I					
□ ND8401(192.168.6.128)					
۲					
OK Cancel					

Once triggered, the P-PTZ Trigger and P-PTZ Normal events will create two short videos for a length of 30 seconds.

Note that the P-PTZ event is not triggered by Panoramic PTZ control on the view cells, it is triggered by Auto Tracking. Auto Tracking takes place when a moving object enters the preconfigured region of interest. Please refer to the **Panoramic PTZ Installation Guide**.

3. Events triggered by Auto Tracking are also recorded into system logs.

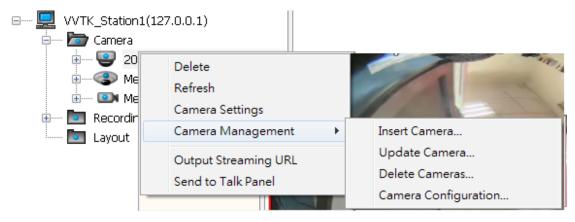
	1	Contraction of the local division of the loc				
	the second se		a second s			
and the second s			Section 2.			2
			6 ·			
						1000
11	-				2013/5/16 下午 08:15:	37
Instant Playback	Source	Time	Time Zone	Tyne	Description	
Instant Playback	Source SF8172	Time 2013-06-19 15:41:47.087	Time Zone +08:00	Type P-PTZ	Description Normal	
	SF8172	2013-06-19 15:41:47.087	+08:00	P-PTZ	Normal	
Instant Playback	SF8172 IP7160	2013-06-19 15:41:47.087 2013-06-19 03:41:43.821	+08:00 +08:00	P-PTZ Motion - Window 1	Normal 13%	

4. As the result, in **Playback** > **Event Search** panel, Auto Tracking (P-PTZ Trigger/Normal) is also a search condition.

Search Categor	ies:	All Events	;	•		
Video - Loss Video - Restori IR - Normal IR - Trigger P-PTZ - Trigge P-PTZ - Norma	r					·
Add	Re	move				
Time Zone:	GMT+	-08:00 Bei	ijing, Ch	ongging,	Hong Kor	ng, Kuala 💌
🗹 Start Time:						
2013/ 7/ 3	•	13:52:05	*			
End Time:						
2013/ 7/ 9	-	14:52:05	A.V			
Display in Ne	w Re	sult List				Search

### **Enable or Disable the Panoramic PTZ Functions**

You can manually enable or disable the Panoramic PTZ function in **Configuration > Camera Management > Camera Configuration**:



- 1. Select the fisheye camera by a single click, and then open the panoramic PTZ panel from the tabbed menu.
- 2. You can enable or disable the panoramic PTZ or the Auto Tracking functionality using the checkboxes.
- 3. Click the Save button, and the saving progress window will prompt.

mera List	Midaa	1					1
	Video	Audio	Remote Focus	NTP Setti	ngs	Panoramic PT7	
VVTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)	Video :	stream:			Strea	m 1	
Mega-Pixel Network	Codec	tunos					
Mega-Pixel Network	Couec	type.			SVC		
····· 🏹 Mega-Pixel Network	Frame	size:			1056	x1056	
Mega-Pixel Network							
😍 Mega-Pixel Network	Maxim	um frame	rate:		15 fp	s	
	Video	quality:			C		and as
	- Haco	quanty.			Cons	tant bit rate 🔹	4 Mbps

4. Click Close to end the configuration process.

# Appendix C ONVIF Support

ONVIF is supported in an environment where the VAST server can detect and record video streams from the cameras made by other manufacturers.

The following are supported.

1. ONVIF camera icons on the device tree.

Brand name selection is also available on the configuration window.

Camera List	Brand: VI	VOTEK .		
VYTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)     VYTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)     V20 Zoom Mega-Pixel Spe     Vega-Pixel Network Came     Mega-Pixel Network Came     Mega-Pixel Network Came	Module: Or Camera Name: Address: 19 Model Name: P	2 168.6.219 VC	<b>XVIV</b>	OTEK
	Connection Setting User Name: Configuration Protocol Streaming Protocol Initial Viewing Streaming		Password: Configuration Port: Channel:	Connection Test
	Automatically add	camera into recording st		sort Dose

- 2. Insert/update/delete camera from the device tree.
  - 2-1. Detect ONVIF cameras.
  - 2-2. Connection test.
  - 2-3. camera password authentication.
  - 2-4. Supports HTTP and HTTPS streaming protocol.
  - 2-5. Supports multiple streaming.
- 3. Live view/recording/playback.
  - 3-1. Audio G.711 support.
- 4. Mechanical PTZ support with the exception of Focus, Iris, Pan, Patrol, and preset location operation.

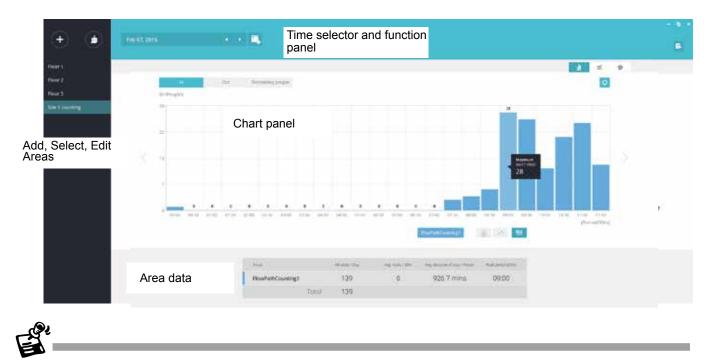
#### Limitations:

The following limitations apply to ONVIF cameras made by other manufacturers. Some features may be implemented in later releases of software.

- 1. Users should ensure that your other brand cameras support ONVIF.
- 2. The connection statuses of the other brand cameras will not be displayed on the device tree.
- 3. For mechanical PTZ cameras, the Focus, Iris, Pan, Patrol, and preset locations functions will not be supported. The associated buttons and control elements on the UI screen will not be disabled.
- 4. Does not support the Batch Insert Camera function.
- 5. Does not support Camera Configuration.
- 6. Does not support Active Adaptive Stream (AAS) function.
- 7. Does not support Event related functions, including event recording, event management, instant playback, event search, etc.
- 8. Does not support camera DI/DO.
- 9. Does not support Two Way Audio.
- 10. Does not support Auto Stream Size.
- 11. The ONVIF user authentication (account and password) may not comply with those configured via a web console.
- 12. The number of multiple profiles can vary.
- 13. The number of accessible profile can vary. Some might have only one profile to be connected.
- 14. Does not support Click on Image.

## Appendix D VCA Report

The VCA Report utility is started from **System** menu > **Launch VCA Report**. The VCA Report utility provides comprehensive graphs and line charts for quick access to the data collected through VIVOTEK's People Counting modules, such as the SC8131 stereo camera. Statistical results is refreshed by hour or minutes, and you can compare the results acquired through different time periods or among different surveillance areas. These data help figuring the customer flow in retails so that shop owners can optimize the arrangement of store layout, or mange queues more efficiently.



The configuration of detection methods in People Counting still occur on a web console with individual cameras. It is not configurable through the VAST LiveClient.

#### **Prerequisites:**

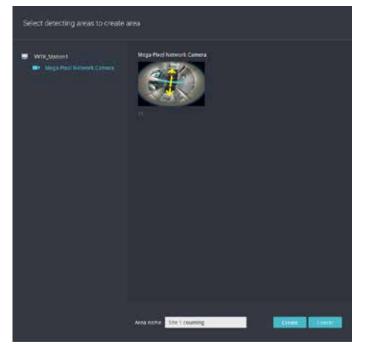
The prerequisites for using the VCA Report are:

- 1. Cameras running the VCA utilities have been configured and added into the VAST deployment. The instances of available VCA rules will be listed in the **Area** panel.
- 2. The life expectancy of VCA records is 5 years.
- 3. Currently the utility supports Windows XP, 7, and 8.
- 4. The latest revision v.1.12 supports Seamless Recording, in order to retrieve collected data and recording during Ethernet disconnection. Provided that an SD card is installed on the SC8131 camera, the VAST station gradually retrieves data from the SD card after the connection is restored.

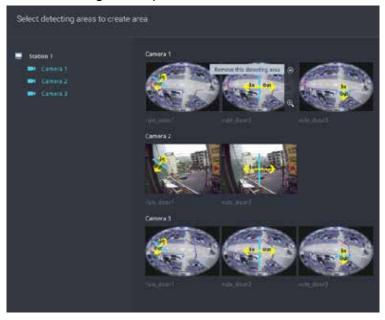
To begin using the VCA report:

#### **Create Areas**

- 1. Click on the **Add** button in the **Area** panel. Cameras running the VCA utilities will be listed. Click to select cameras. Those running multiple detection rules will be displayed on screen. Data collected for these rules is kept in camera's flash memory.
- 2. Click to select one or more cameras.
- 3. Enter a name for the area, and then click the **Create** button.
- 4. The Areas thus added will be listed on the Area panel on the left side of the screen.



If you have multiple detection rules on cameras, you can manually remove some of them from the list by mouse-overing the rules. After you configured an area, you can still right-click on an area to configure its parameters.



If only one camera is selected, its name will apply as the Area name. If not, enter a name for the area. 5. Click to select one or multiple areas. Those selected will be highlighted in a different color.

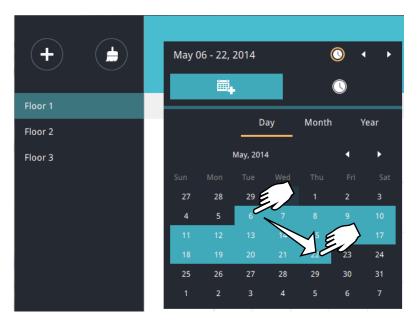


### Select Date & Time

6. By default, the time displayed on the calendar is the current system time on the client

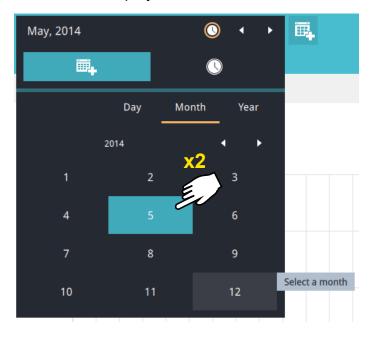
computer running the utility. Select from the **Date** selector \_\_\_\_\_ on top.

- 7. Select a date or span of time from the calendar or use the and **Time** Selector to select a span of time.
- > Single-click to select a date or click and drag to select multiple dates.
- You can select a month or a year using a single click. If you select a month, the timeline unit will be days within the month. If you select a year, the timeline units will be the months in a year.
- In the Month or Year panel, single click to select the entire month or an entire year. Doubleclick to select sub-units, e.g., days within a month. If you double-click on a Month panel, you will enter the Day panel.



You can select a different month in the **Month** or **Year** panels. The **Calendar** panel disappears if left unattended for 2 seconds.

On a **Month** panel, double-click to select a month, and the **Day** panel for that particular month will display.

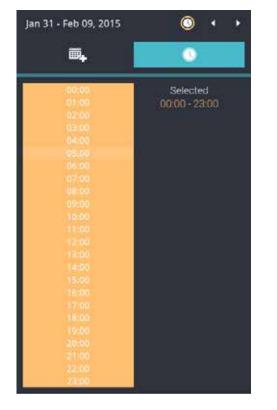




- When a date is selected, the Date and Time panel will not automatically close, and the configuration changes will not take effect until it is closed. You can click on the outside of the panel to leave the panel.
- You can select multiple days to form a span of time. Select one date with a single click and select multiple dates by draging your cursor across the screen to a preferred end date.
- To select a year, click to open the **Year** panel. Single click to select a year. Multiple years can be selected using the click and drag method.

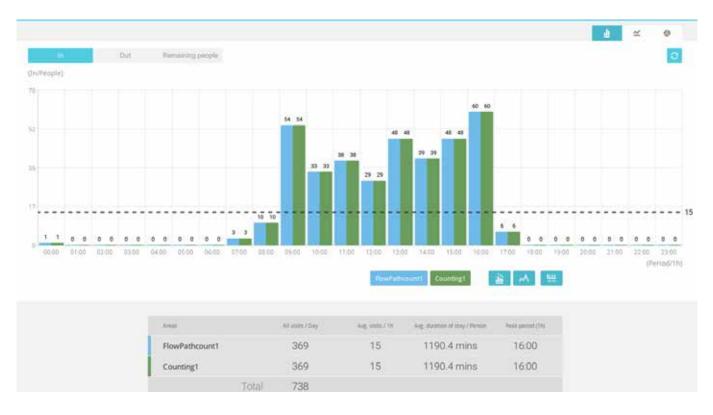
8. Select the hours to be included in the statistical poll using multiple clicks on the chart.

Single-click to select an hour or click and drag to select multiple hours.



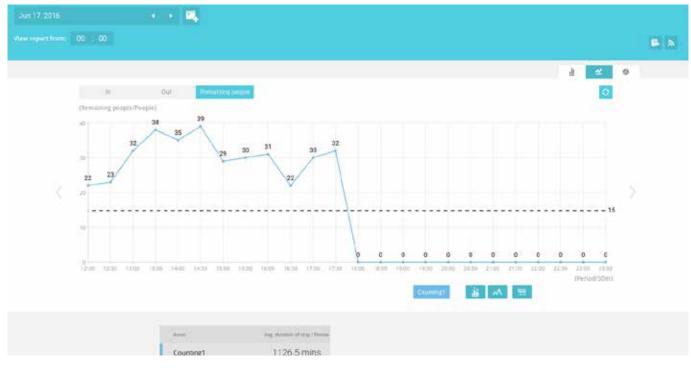
Note that you can only compare the counting results from two spans of time if you select only one Area. If you selected multiple Areas, you can not compare the results from multiple time spans.

9. Click outside the Calendar panel. The statistical results will display. The default display is the bar chart. Below is a sample screen showing the results polled from 3 areas. Up to 8 areas can be selected in one view.

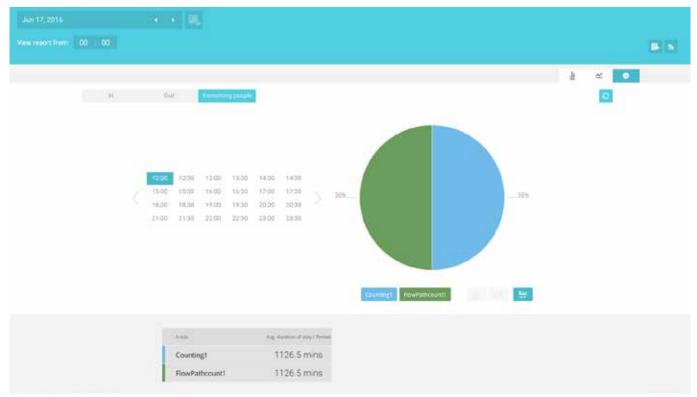


Select different display modes using the **Bar**  $\stackrel{!}{=}$ , **Line**  $\stackrel{\checkmark}{=}$ , or **Pie**  $\stackrel{\diamond}{=}$  chart buttons.

### Line chart.



#### Pie chart.



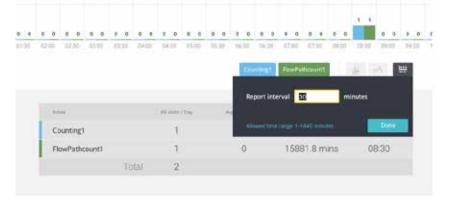
Note that the timeline units can vary depending on the span of time you selected on the Calendar panel. If a date was selected, hourly data will display in chart. If a year was selected, monthly data will display in chart.

Use the following functional buttons to change the display parameters

Show data on chart \_\_\_\_\_: Displays the collected numbers on chart.

Average : Displays the average number per time span unit (e.g., per hour). If the interval is changed to 30 mins, the average number will be halved comparing to the number acquired by every hour.

**Report Interval** : Configure the intervals for polling data from the camera. The default for displaying results is by every hour. If you enter 30 minutes as the display interval, all data will be listed on the basis of the 30 minutes time span. The configurable range is 1 to 1440 mins.



Use the **Refresh** button

to poll the latest data from camera.

Use the time selector on the **View Report from** pane to select the start time of your statistics view window. Data collected before that time will not be displayed.

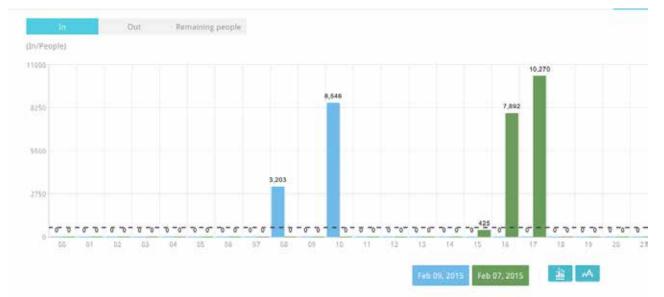




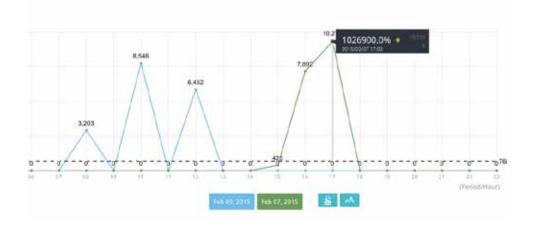
If you selected only one area, you can use the Shift key to select multiple areas (or two spans of time). You can select multiple dates in the Calendar panel.

Data on a time line will be generated. To close the window, use the close button on the second date information. Equivalent spans of time can also be used for comparison. For example, you can compare the data in a span of 4 days against another span of 4 days.

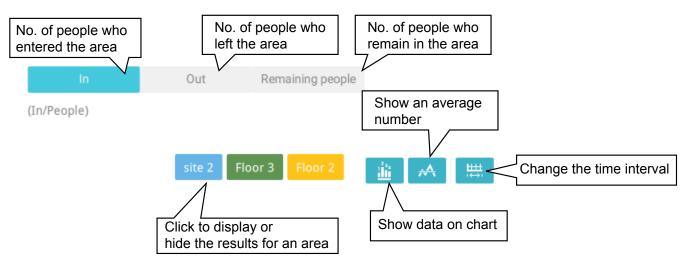
Note that the Compare function only applies when you select to display only one area on screen.



In a comparison result displayed in a line chart, mouse over to the peak value to display the percentage of an increase or decrease rate.



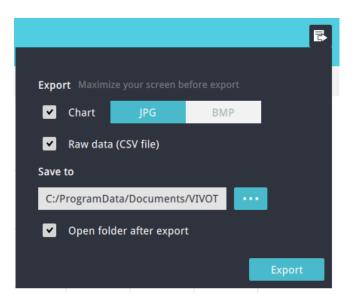
See below for the functions of buttons on screen.



In addition to the charts, a summary of displayed data will be listed below showing the areas involved, visits/Day or Month, Average visits / Hours / Days, Average duration of stay / person, and the Peak hour.

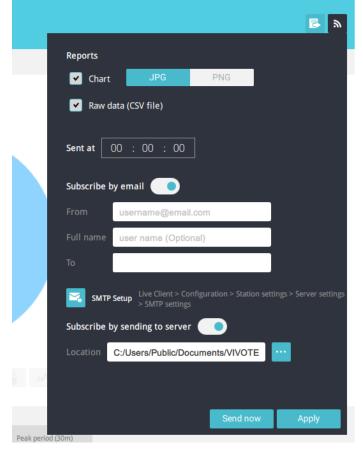
0/924		All Violanz A days	Arg Hills / Day.	Avg. duration of x0y / Person	Prink day
Floor 3		490,870	122,718	106.3 mins	12/04
Floor 2		959,482	239,870	105.9 mins	12/02
site 2		3,873,510	968,378	108.0 mins	12/01
	Total	5,323,862			

10. When done with displaying the results, you can use the **Export** button to produce an image file to preserve the current results. Both a spreadsheet and a graphic chart will be produced.



11. Click the Reports Subscription button to configure the regular report sent to your Email account or a specific location on the server itself. Select the report chart image in JPEG or PNG, and CSV data files. Slide the email button to enable the Email notification.

Select the time to deliver your mail notification. Enter valid Email addresses as the sender and receiver addresses and make sure the SMTP mail server configuration has been properly configured on your VAST server. This VCA mail notification utilizes the mail service on VAST for regular notification. You can then receive Email notification every day on your Email account. You can enter up to 5 recipient addresses.



Note that the notification contents is your current field of view, including a Bar, Line, and Pie chart combined into one image file. The In/Out/Remaining results will be generated into 3 charts. Each Area will generate one CSV file, and each CSV data file will contain In/Out/Remaining/Summary information.

The generated file names will look like this: 20160226\_test02\_Remain.jpg for charts and 20160226\_Summary.csv for CSV files. The Email subject will be "VCA Daily Report - 2016/02/26."

Note that if you manually export a report, the default is sending the data collected until one hour before the manual export. For example, if you generate the report at 14:07, the report will only cover the data collected until 13:59. You may use the Refresh button to manually

immediate data inputs (those occurred between 14:00 and 14:07).

Below are the messages with the Email test function.

SMTP Setup Live Client > Configuration > Station settings > Server settings > SMTP settings
SMTP Setup Live Client > Configuration > Station settings > Server settings > SMTP settings

- If changes have been made to the VCA People Counting configuration through a web console, Refresh the connection with a network camera from the Device Tree. You can left-click to select a camera and right-click to display the **Refresh** command.
- The object height information detected by cameras is displayed on screen. You can select to display such information in centimeters or inches in Configuration > Client Settings > View Settings.

🧐 View Settings		×
Display Locatio	n	
Display Area 1:	Camera Name	Camera Name      2016/6/14 上午 09:19:03
Display Area 2:	Server Date & Time	This is a sample screen.
Display Area 3:	Video Title	
Display Area 4:	No Display	Video Title
Date and Time	Format	Font Settings
Same as Local	Computer	Font: System -
Specify		Color:
Date Format:	YYYY/MM/DD 👻	Size: 10 🔻
Time Format:	Default Time Format 👻	
Video Display M	lode	
Hide borders	◎ Keep top/down borders ◎ Keep th	he aspect ratio
Show motion v	windows when triggered	
Display the con	nnecting message when video is lost	
The screen go	es blank when video is lost	
VCA		
Show VCA rule	·S	
VCA extra informa	none	
	cm inch OK	Cancel

## Appendix E Support for Digital I/O Modbus TCP Modules

This revision, rev. 1.9, supports Advantech's I/O Modbus TCP Modules 6000 series. The VAST server can receive digital inputs and trigger digital outputs via the I/O modules.

The Advantech I/O modules come with configuration utilities, such as the Adam/Apax.NET. Connect the DI/DO wires to the module and the Ethernet wire from the module to the local network.

Proceed with the following to configure the I/O module:

1. Use the Search function to locate the I/O module on the network.

🔀 Adva	antecł	h Ac	dam/Apax .NET Utility (Win32) Vers	ion 2.05.06	-	
File	Тоо	ls	Setup Help	_		
8 🖪		Se	arch Device			
	Vireles CO	Gro Tei Prin Ma Ma Ma S Sez	d Devices to Group oup Configuration minal for Command Testing int Screen ponitor Stream/Event Data ponitor Peer to Peer ponitor GCLIO Data Message ponitor APAX msor Networks	ting Network setting: MAC address: IP address: Subnet address: Default gateway:	00-D0-C9-F0-EF-3B 172.18.100.22 255.255.0.0 172.16.0.1	Apply change

2. It is recommended to configure a static IP for the I/O module.

3. You may then test the DI/DO device connectivity using the software utility.

[ Serial	-					
COM1	ADAM-6052 16-ch source type	DIO module				
Ethemet	Chennel setting Modbus					
- 69 254 107 20 - 69 254 45 127			The second second second second			
192.168.6.139	the 😜	744 (S)	DO 4			
192.168.6.1.36-[ADAM6052]	Distances in the second		Charles Co. Charl			
B 6052 OCL		- 117 🕥	DO 5			
Q 192.168.6.135	212 1	DOO C RV	D06 0 T RV			
i Others Fevorale Group						
ADAM4500_5510Secies	(i)	DO 1 💮 🗂 HEY	D0 7 💮 🦳 KSY			
The COM1 Wireless Sensor Networks	in the second second	and the second				
COM1	114	DO 2 TRV				
	10.5	DO 3 0 F 95Y				
	MYC NO	() / L (M)				
	The Fed Safe Value (FSV) o					
	Fight DO will nestch to the R FSV checked Logic High 3	V if the module's WDT is enabled and it g tate, FSV unchecked - Logic Low State.	Apply FSV			
	Communication WDT	P2PA9CL WDT	apporter			
	DOS-DOD Source:	D07-D04 Source: Done				

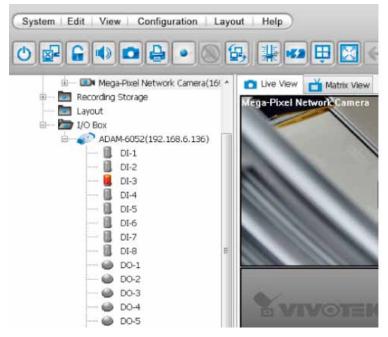
4. To configure the I/O modules in VAST, open the **Configuration** > **I/O Box Management** > **Insert I/O Box Device** window.

System Edit View	Configuration Layout Help	
Ů፼₽₽₩	Camera Management  Station Management I/O Box Management	
UVTK_Station1(12	User Management Association Management Alarm Management Virtual Matrix Management	Update I/O Box Device Delete I/O Box Devices
Image: Provide the second	Station Settings       >         Client Settings       >         Video Enhancement       >	

5. Select the Module model name, enter IP address, User Name, Password, and then click the Insert button.

O Box List					
VVTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)	Brand:	Advantech +			
	Module:	ADAM-6052 •			
	Device Name:	ADAM-6052			
	Address:	192.168.6.136	Port:	502	1
	User Name:	admin			
	Password:				
	Number of DI:	8	DI Name:	(	7
	Number of DO:	8	DO Name:	[	

6. Click Close to close the window. The I/O module and its DI/DO entries should be listed on the device tree under the I/O box sub-directory. As shown below, once a DI is triggered from the I/O module, the associated DI icon will be lighted. Audible notification can also be heard from the VAST server.

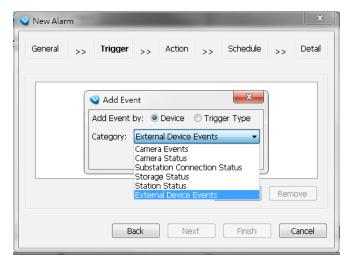


7. You can also double-click on a DO icon to manually trigger the digital output. Double-click again to cancel the trigger.

System   Edit   View	w Configuration Lay
Ů₽₽₩	
🗄 🚥 💷 Mega	a-Pixel Network Camera(16! 🔺
🗄 🔤 Recording	Storage
🛄 Layout	
🖮 🗁 I/O Box	
	M-6052(192.168.6.136)
- <u>I</u>	DI-1
- <u> </u>	DI-2
- <u> </u>	DI-3
- <u>I</u>	DI-4
- <u>I</u>	DI-5
- <u>I</u>	DI-6
- II	DI-8 XZ
	DO-1
	DO-2
	DO-3
	DO-4
🧼	DO-5
- 6	DO-6
🍅	DO-7
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	DO-8
	•
•	- F

8. You can also implement the digital inputs and outputs from the I/O module in your alarm setting. For example, a DI can be wired to an intrusion detector; and when the DI is triggered, an associated DO can be used to sound an alarm.

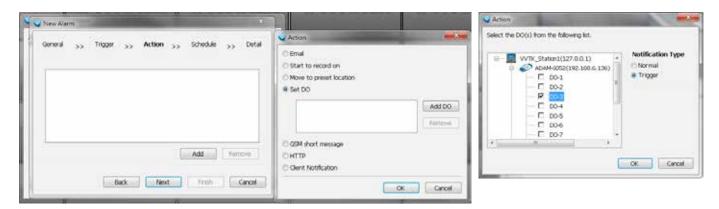
To configure the Alarm setting, enter the **Configuration** > **Alarm management** window. Configure a new alarm. On the Trigger window, select the Trigger Category as **External Device Events**.



9. The DIs and DOs on the I/O module will be listed. You can then select one or more DIs as the triggers.

	🖌 Trigger list	
	Select the trigger(s) from the following list.	
	⊡ 🗹 📃 VVTK_Station1(127.0.0.1)	
	🔽 🥌 DI-1	
	🗔 🔴 DI-2	
	🗹 🥥 DI-3	
	🗹 🥚 DI-4	
	🗖 🔴 DI-5	
	🗖 🥚 DI-6	
	🗖 🥌 DI-7	
	🗖 🥌 DI-8	
	🗖 🥌 DO-1	
	🗖 🥌 DO-2	
	🗖 🥌 DO-3	
	🗖 🥌 DO-4	
	🗖 🥌 DO-5	
	🗖 🥌 DO-6	
	🗖 🥌 DO-7	
		l
	OK Cancel	1
Ľ		1

10. On the Action panel, you can select to trigger DOs, for example, as the reacting actions



Note that once a DO is triggered, you should manually disable the DO.



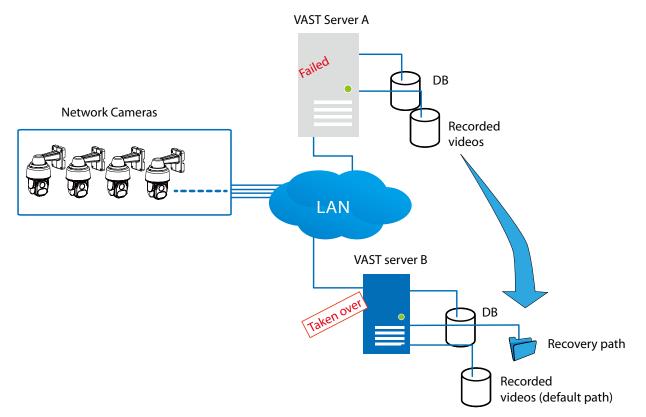
If an I/O module is started later than the VAST server, you may not be able to access the I/O module. You should then re-start the VAST service.



### Appendix F Database Merge Function

The Database Merge function applies in the following scenario:

1. A VAST server A failed or was intentionally depleted. The precondition is that the disk drives containing the recordings remain intact.

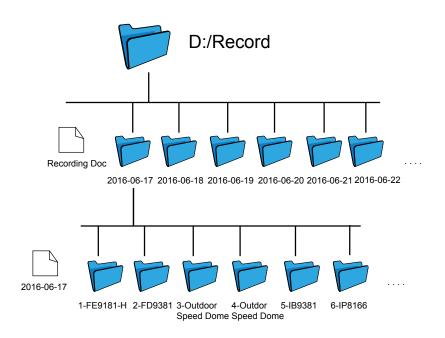


2. The VAST server B is used to continue video recording. The previous recordings on server A can be retrieved by attaching the hard disk(s) to server B or manually copying to a storage device on server B. You can then designate the location of these files as the "Recovery path" from server B. An administrator can then use the VAST Playback to access the past recordings.

Note that you can also configure a separate recycle policy for that Recovery path.



- It is **IMPORTANT** to move or copy the entire storage group folder, e.g., D:/recording/2016-06-17/1-FE9181-H..., which is a root directory configured by VAST server as the recording folder. The default recording folder contains file folder structure, video files, and database metadata. If you copy the video files only, the database data will not be synchronized, and you will not be able to access the recordings using the VAST Playback utility.
- The video streams received from cameras will not be recorded on to the Recovery path folder. It is designed to maintain previous recordings. The Recovery path folder becomes static.



 It is also a good habit to export and preserve your VAST system configuration to prevent losses in the event of system failure. In case you want to migrate or upgrade your VAST server, you can use the Import-Export utility to duplicate your VAST configuration to another server. Copy the configuration file and import the configuration from another VAST server.

VIVOTEK Inc Installation Wizard 2 VAST VAST VIVEClient Playback Uninstall Tools Minport-Export Utility VMSServiceControl	
H Import/Export Utility	
Options Export current settings Configuration settings	
Import previous settings Restore Control	py settings
C:\Users\eric.lu\Desktop\20160630_back	up.bin
	Next Cancel

When the file folder is ready for server B, designate the location of recovered files from another VAST server, go to Configuration > Station Settings > Recording Storage Settings.

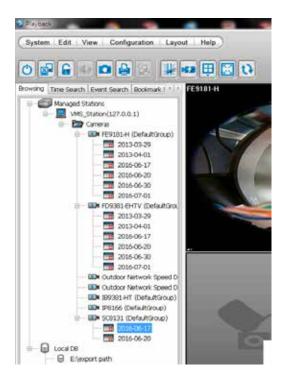
Select the recording folder that contains the recordings from the counterpart VAST server. Select the **Recovery Path** check circle and click **OK**.

		2 Select Local Path	123
Recovery	Storage Path Cl/Record-1	recording2_2014     Recording_backup     Reference     Release.pW     Root-192_168_4.105_28x Zoom Speed Dome Network Camera_     shared_Rta     Spansh_UM     storage_export     System Volume Information     temp     temps	
	ecorded data older than Storage Group Comeras:	Add Delete Renam	-
Group	Name FE9181-H FD9381-EHTV Outdoor Network Sp Outdoor Network Sp II9301-HT II98166 SC8131	Path: EI\ OK Cancel Type: © Storage Path & Recovery Path Storage Information Total: 1862.09 GBytes Reserved: 186 C GBytes OK Can	n

### Click the Apply and Close button.

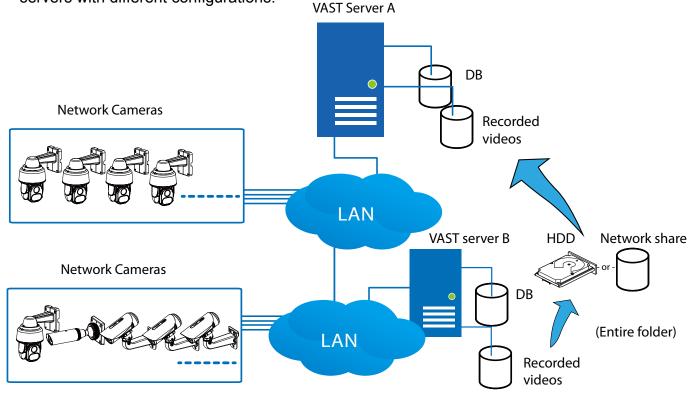
iths in Sti	orage Group					
Recovery	Storage Path			Storage Info		
	C:\Record-1			Total:	1862.89	일감 같아
× .	E/Vecovery_path			Reserved:	186.00	GBytes
Delete n	ecorded data older than 7	day(s)				
meras in	ecorded data older than ( <u>/</u> Storage Group Cameras:	irri day(s)		Added Camera	as (7/256):	
meras in vailable (	Storage Group	Address		Added Camera FE9181-H FD9381-EHTV	as (7/256):	
meras in vailable ( iroup	Storage Group Cameras: Name FE9181-H	Address 192.168.6.105		FE9181-H FD9381-EHTV Outdoor Netw	ork Speed Dom	
meras in vailable ( iroup	Storage Group Cameras: Name FE9181-H FD9381-EHTV	Address 192.168.6.105 192.168.6.109		FE9181-H FD9381-EHTV Gutdoor Netw Outdoor Netw 189381-HT		
meras in vailable ( iroup	Storage Group Cameras: Name FE9181-H	Address 192.168.6.105		FE9181-H FD9381-EHTV Outdoor Netw Outdoor Netw	ork Speed Dom	
meras in vailable ( iroup	Storage Group Cameras: Name FE9181-H FD9381-EHTV Outdoor Network Spe Dutdoor Network Spe IB9381-HT	Address 192.168.6.105 192.168.6.109 192.168.6.169 192.168.6.169 192.168.6.170		FE9181-H FD9381-EHTV Outdoor Netw Outdoor Netw IB9381-HT IP8166	ork Speed Dom	
meras in	Storage Group Cameras: Name FE9181-H FD9381-EHTV Outdoor Network Spe Outdoor Network Spe	Address 192.168.6.105 192.168.6.109 192.168.6.169 192.168.6.169	-	FE9181-H FD9381-EHTV Outdoor Netw Outdoor Netw IB9381-HT IP8166	ork Speed Dom	

If you are running the **Playback** utility, close and re-start the Playback utility. Open the device tree, and you should be able to see previous recordings listed under each camera. This indicates previous recordings can be accessed from the recovery path and the databases on the two VAST instances have been synchronized.

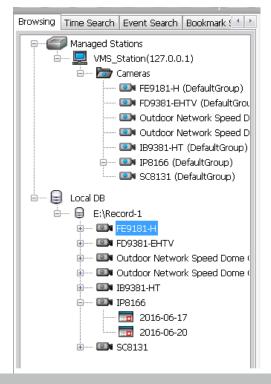


In addition to the use of Recovery path, if you need to access the recordings made by a different VAST server, you can also manually copy the entire storage group folder, such as D:/recording, to a hard drive or a network share, and then avail the recordings on the new server.

Different from the use of Recovery Path (Database Merge), this scenario applies to two VAST servers with different configurations.



On the Playback window, right-click the Local DB icon to display the **Add** command. Select the folder where the recordings reside. The recordings should be listed under each of the cameras.



Note that as the folder structure remains intact, you can still manually remove some of the video files within, if they are not of your interest.

The **Export Storage** is another backup function.

To export video recordings to a specific target folder, enter Configuration > Station Settings > Recording Storage Settings. Click the Browse button to select a target folder.

Select the default storage group, click on the **Export** button **b**. Select all cameras (default) or manually select specific cameras from the list. If you want to select individual cameras, use the arrow buttons to move cameras to the right column. Select the time span of the export using the selectors below. The minimum span is one day. Click OK to proceed.

Note that the videos thus exported can not be indexed in the Playback utility's device list. Each video clip should be watched individually.

				Storage In	formation			
Recovery	Storage Path C:\Record-1			Total		GBytes		
~	Edrecovery_path	Export Storage		1.1.1.1				-
÷	E:(storage_export	Output Folder						
		Destination Path: Select Export S	-					Browse
Delete re	corded data older than 7		Selected Carner	95				
ameras in s	Storage Group	Name	Address	Group				
vallable C	ameras:	SC8131	192.168.40.1					
Group	Name	IP8166 A IB9381-HT	192.168.6.160					
~	FE9181-H		192.168.6.169					
¥.	F09361-EHTV	4	192.168.6.169		1411			
~	Outdoor Network Spe		192.168.6.109					
4	Outdoor Network Spe	1 FE9181-H	192,168.6.105	2001/2001/2017				
¥.	IB9381-HT	2 *	H)			_		
4	P8166	<sup>1</sup> Select Time Per	iod					
4	SC8131	1 Start Time: 201	6/30 101		End Time	2016/ 6/	30 101	
							OK	Caricel

Depending on the length of time span and the number of selected cameras, the export process may take several minutes or longer to complete.



- If the members of the original VAST configuration (cameras) have been changed, the VAST server will not be able to locate the original MAC addresses, and may not be able to retrieve past recordings.
- The **Export Storage** function only takes effect on the VAST server local console. It is not available on a web console.

### Appendix G Other Parameters

Disable background decode:

Administrators can choose to disable the background decode for other view cells when entering a single view of a specific camera. This can help reduce the CPU load on a server short of system resources.

This function can be evaluated in two aspects:

- 1. For a server with abundant system resources, there is less stress when disabling and enabling background decode. When a user leaves a single view and enters a multi-cell view, the background decode starts again, and a powerful server handles this process more smoothly.
- 2. For a server with less resources, this feature can reduce CPU load. However, latency can occur during the process when returning from a single view back to a multi-cell view.

This feature is enabled by editing the ClientSetting.ini file in C:\ProgramData\VIVOTEK Inc\ VAST\Client\LiveClient.

64	📮 [GeneralSetting]
65	AutoFullScreen=0
66	AutoAddCam=1
67	SSE=1
68	EnableRTSP=0
69	RTSPPort=4543
70	StreamingRelay=1
71	SubscribeCamera=0
72	SortCamera=0
73	LiveEvent=1
74	LocalAlert=0
75	EventWindowType=0
76	RotateSec=10
77	AutoRotate=0
78	DeInterlace=0
79	SyncAudioVideo=0
80	AutoStreamSize=1
81	AutoStreamSizeMode=0
82	InstantReplay=1
83	DefaultPlaybackLength=1
84	BufferTime=0
85	GDIOnly=0
86	GPUDecode=0
87	GPUDecodeMaxNumber=0
88	MinPTSpeed=-1
89	MaxPTSpeed=-1
90	LDisableBackgroundDecode=1